

Cornell University Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 1924 074 483 664







GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY
AND GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, Ph.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

A REVISION OF THE EDITION BY

C. M. LOWE, Ph.D., AND J. T. EWING, M.A.

CHICAGO—NEW YORK
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1907
BY
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

P. F. PETTIBONE & Co.
Printers and Binders
Chicago

PREFACE

In its general plan the present edition of Caesar is based on that of Lowe and Ewing, first published in 1891. It retains the features which gave distinction to that book, the most important of which are thus described in its preface:

“The vocabularies, notes, illustrations, and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student’s time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self-reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the class room, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I, chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable and less familiar matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books.”

While the general plan of the earlier edition has been followed, in all details the book has been rewritten from beginning to end. In its preparation three definite purposes have been kept steadily in mind:

1. To help the pupil to follow the narrative understandingly.
2. To give the pupil, especially at the beginning of his reading, a systematic drill on all the common syntactical principles.
3. To exclude all bits of antiquarian and grammatical lore which, however valuable in themselves, have no direct bearing on an appreciation of Caesar’s language or story.

THE STUDY OF CAESAR’S NARRATIVE. It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let a pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. These things he must learn as a preparation for further reading, it is true, and the language must be his chief study; but there is danger that

a year of grammar only will not tempt him to the further reading for which he has been preparing. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. The universal testimony of the ages to the greatness of his writing is not founded on a universal love for grammar. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is wrong on principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign,—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations.

SYSTEM IN GRAMMAR REFERENCES. An attempt has been made to facilitate and even insure, early in the study of Caesar, a systematic drill on the more important case and mode constructions. In the notes on Book I, 1-29, it is believed that references are given for all the most common constructions. In general, the cases are emphasized during the earlier chapters, and the modes during the later. To each construction reference is made three times, two

sets of references being given close together, that they may reinforce each other, and the third after a few chapters, that the point may be clinched by review. And these references are made not only to the grammatical Appendix given in this book, but also to five leading grammars.

In Book II the same references are given, as nearly as possible in the same order; but the references for each chapter are grouped together after the notes of that chapter. In this way opportunities for the same grammatical drill are afforded, whether the class begins with Book I or Book II; but, if the class begins with Book I, these references in Book II may be omitted as unnecessary.

With such a system it is natural and right to postpone to later chapters or books the consideration of certain constructions. Thus, conditions and the details of indirect discourse are postponed to Book I, 30-54, tenses to Book III. If the teacher does not like the order of presentation he can easily supply needed references; but if he will insist on the study of the references as they come in the notes, it is believed that he will find the necessary ground covered thoroughly and systematically.

EXCLUSION OF NON-ESSENTIALS. Many things are known or are guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find useful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accompany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped, much less expected, that all teachers would draw the line where the editor has drawn it.

Beginning with Book II. The most dreaded portions of Caesar are his indirect discourse, and unfortunately the majority of the speeches are found in the first book. Though the fear of indirect discourse is largely traditional, and though the construction is not really difficult for one who is properly grounded in the essentials of Latin, yet it is clearly a misfortune that the pupil should en-

counter its full difficulties at a time when the ordinary narrative gives him trouble enough. Moreover, it is questionable whether it is worth while to drill the pupil on all details of the construction, since he will see very little indirect discourse elsewhere in his preparatory course. For these reasons many teachers seek to make the pupil's path easier by reading the second book before the first, or by omitting chapters 30-54 of the first book, in which chapters the construction chiefly abounds. In preparing this edition everything possible has been done to make feasible either of these plans, without throwing any obstacles in the way of a consecutive reading from the first. But the editor feels strongly that Book I, 1-29 should be read first. The latter part of the book may well be omitted entirely, and one or more of the very interesting annotated portions of the last three books may be substituted for it.

No editor of Caesar can escape a debt of gratitude to Mr. T. Rice Holmes for having discussed with such impartiality and thoroughness the geographical and military questions of the Gallic War. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, by Mr. Holmes, should be in the hands of every teacher of Caesar. Though the present editor has found it impossible to agree with all its conclusions, the book is so fair in its discussions that he is under equal obligations whether he agrees or disagrees with the author.

The text of the Lowe and Ewing edition was Kraner's. In the present edition Meusel's readings have been substituted for the most part, but not completely. The quantities are marked in accordance with the revised edition of Lane's Grammar. A few doubtful words were submitted to the decision of Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale University, who prepared the chapter on Sound in that Grammar. For his ready assistance, thanks are due.

It would be impossible to mention by name all who have assisted the editor by suggestion and in various ways. The labor of preparing the Vocabulary was largely performed by Mr. Earl W. Murray, a former graduate student, now Assistant Professor in the University of Kansas. Mr. Murray also prepared the first draft of the systematized references for Book I, 1-29, and Book II. For the

preparation of the Index the editor is indebted to Miss Martha Whitney. Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, gave the early part of the book the benefit of a most searching and helpful criticism. From beginning to end the editor has been under deep obligations to the editors-in-chief of the series.

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
Preface	1
List of Maps and Illustrations	8
Introduction	9
I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns	9
II. Life of Caesar	11
III. Chronological Table	17
IV. Caesar as General	18
V. Caesar as Author	19
VI. The Gauls	20
VII. Caesar's Army	23
A Brief Bibliography	38
List of Abbreviations	40
Book I, 1-29	41
Book I, 30-54	115
Book II	160
Book III	215
Book IV	252
Book V	292
Book VI	329
Book VII	356
The Direct Form of the Indirect Discourse in Books I and II . . .	412
Grammatical Appendix	423
Vocabulary	
Index	

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
General Map of Gaul	<i>Front Cover</i>
Caesar (Bust in British Museum)	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Pila	24
Gladius and Vagina	24
Roman Soldiers	<i>Facing</i> 27
Plan of a Roman Camp	29
Camp on the Axona	29
Vallum and Fossa	30
Roman Officers and Gauls	<i>Facing</i> 31
Gallic Wall	33
Storming a City	<i>Facing</i> 34
Agger	34
Plutei	34
Musculus	34
Vinea	35
Catapulta	35
Prow of Galley	36
Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29	<i>Facing</i> 42
Fortifications on the Rhone	70
Battle with the Helvetii, first stage	104
Battle with the Helvetii, second stage	108
Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54	<i>Facing</i> 117
Battle with Ariovistus	153
Campaign Map for Book II	<i>Facing</i> 162
Battle on the Axona	177
Battle on the Sabis	191
The Town of the Atuatuca	207
Campaign Map for Book III	<i>Facing</i> 217
Galba's Camp	219
Operations against the Veneti	232
Campaign Map for Book IV	<i>Facing</i> 254
Caesar's Bridge	272
Pile-driver	273
Second Invasion of Britain	294
Caesar's Geography	305
Caesar's Lines around Alesia	392
Details of Fortifications around Alesia	396
Stimulus	398

INTRODUCTION

I. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE GALLIC CAMPAIGNS

The Commentaries on the Gallic War are Caesar's own story **1** of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman state; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

Effect on Rome. Rome was the governing nation of ancient **2** times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul; and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," *Prōvincia* (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having.

Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3 Effect on Gaul. But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4 Effect on Caesar. In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman state was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.

II. LIFE OF CAESAR

Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was 5 born in the year¹ 102, B.C., on the 12th day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor. Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his ambition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. When he was only fifteen Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 83, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

Overthrow of Caesar's Party. But the power of the Demo- 6 cratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithradates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to

¹ Or perhaps in the year 100 B.C.

pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

- 7 Weakness of Opposite Party.** But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.
- 8 Revival of Caesar's Party.** When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pompey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithradates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.
- 9 Development of Caesar's Powers.** During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty-two he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much sought for ally in political scheming; and at the earliest age permitted by law he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test

of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

Caesar's First Military Command. But in spite of his ability 10 and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him anxious for a larger field of operations.

Caesar's Consulship. Caesar now wanted the consulship, the 11 highest office in the state: if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithradates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus too had a grievance against the Senate. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisal-

pine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

- 12 Caesar's Command in Gaul.** In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the province and the state (cf. 2 and 3), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (cf. 10), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the Commentaries; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined, veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.
- 13 Outbreak of Civil War.** It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march toward Rome.
- 14 Weakness of the Constitutional Government.** But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party

had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander-in-chief. In about two months from the time when Caesar marched into northern Italy, Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar's hands.

Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest 15 fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey's strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar's enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar's magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey's army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated this army too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar's victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was 16 from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition.

He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the state, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party: hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

- 17 Assassination of Caesar.** Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be overthrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the state the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.

III. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

B.C.	Caesar's Age.		
102		Birth of Caesar, July 12. Marius defeats the Teutoni.	18
101	1	Marius defeats the Cimbri.	
87	15	Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter.	
86	16	Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.	
83	19	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.	
82	20	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.	
80	22	Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.	
78	24	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.	
76	26	Caesar sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.	
74	28	Caesar is elected Military Tribune and Pontifex.	
70	32	Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.	
68	34	Caesar is Quaestor.	
65	37	Caesar is Curule Aedile.	
63	39	Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed.	
62	40	Caesar is Praetor. Pompey returns from the East.	
61	41	Caesar is Proprætor in Farther Spain.	
60	42	Caesar is elected Consul. "First Triumvirate" is formed.	
59	43	Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.	
58	44	Caesar becomes Proconsul of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.	
57	45	Caesar conquers the Belgæ. Recall of Cicero.	
56	46	Caesar's campaign in Brittany.	
55	47	Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are joint Consuls for the second time.	
54	48	Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.	
53	49	The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain.	
52	50	General revolt of the Gauls. Alienation of Pompey.	
51	51	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.	
50	52	The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.	
49	53	Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.	
48	54	Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."	
47	55	Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.	
46	56	The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.	
45	57	The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.	
44	58	Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15th.	

IV. CAESAR AS GENERAL

19 The Commentaries present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

20 **Characteristics as General.** The Commentaries reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it best suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

21 **Power over his Men.** Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw

to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendancy over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

V. CAESAR AS AUTHOR

Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no **22** less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero, and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his Commentaries have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

Purpose in Writing the Commentaries on the Gallic War. 23
Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose

he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it can not be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

- 24 Caesar's Other Writings.** In addition to the Commentaries on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. THE GAULS

- 25 First Appearance of the Gauls in History.** Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.
- 26 First Decline of Gallic Power.** But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was

hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls **Prōvincia** (see 2).

Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion 27 of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time. In Caesar's 28 time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome, although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar's task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers.

Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact 29 nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul

was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar's time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar's time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles, or equites as Caesar calls them. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30 Caesar's Use of the Gallic Factions. This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31 Gallic Civilization. The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar's time the Gauls

were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the Commentaries, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well built walls.

VII. CAESAR'S ARMY

THE LEGIONS

The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When 32 the enemy met him in hand to hand battle the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow, foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

Organization of the Legion. In theory a legion consisted of 33 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

century [centum, hundred]	= 100 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple	= 200 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort	= 600 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion	= 6000 men

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.

EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(Plate I)

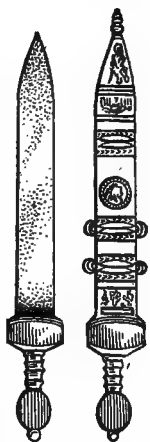
- 34 Clothing.** *a.* A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.
b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.
c. Shoes or sandals.
d. A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.
- 35 Armor.** *a.* A helmet of leather (*galea*) or metal (*cassis*).
b. A leather coat (*lōrica*), strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.
c. A curved wooden shield (*scūtum*), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.

d. Perhaps a greave on the right leg, though Caesar does not mention it. This was very much like a foot-ball shin-guard, but made of metal.

Arms. *a.* A heavy wooden javelin (*pīlum*, Fig. 1), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (*gladius*, Fig. 2), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting. Its scabbard (*vāgina*) hung from a belt (*balteus*) which passed over the left

36

FIG. 1
PILAFIG. 2
GLADIUS AND
VAGINA

shoulder. The sword was thus on the right side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

Individual Baggage. Besides his personal belongings each 37 soldier carried his share of the picks, spades, baskets, etc., used in entrenching the camp; cooking utensils; and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (*sarcina*) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. While thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be (*impediti*). If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then (*expediti*).

OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS

Lēgātus. All governors of provinces were given several 38 (*lēgātī, deputies or assistants.*) These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

Quaestor. The quaestors were financial officers, elected 39 yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

Praefectus Fabrum. The chief of engineers had charge of 40 such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of

ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41 Tribūnus. No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42 Centuriō. The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the **primipilus**. He and a few others, just how many is not known, were called centurions of the first rank (**centuriōnēs primōrum ordinum**, or **primi ordinēs**), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

STANDARDS AND SIGNALS OF THE LEGIONS

43 Aquila. Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (**aquila**), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a



1. funditor

3. legionarii

5. signiferi

7. tubicen

2. levis armaturae milites

4. vexillum

6. aquilifer

8. bucinator

ROMAN SOLDIERS

man of conspicuous strength and bravery, the **aquilifer** (Plate I, 6).

Signum. Each cohort had its own standard (**signum**), 44 carried by a **signifer** (Plate I, 5). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his standard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are **signa inferre**, **signa referre**, etc.

Musical Instruments. There were no bands, and the only 45 use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the Gallic War is the **tuba**, a straight brazen trumpet, blown by a **tubicen**, but others were probably used as well (Plate I, 7, 8).

BAGGAGE OF THE LEGION

The heavy baggage (**impedimenta**) consisted of tents, pro- 46 visions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (**iumenta**). These were driven or led by the drivers (**mūliōnēs**) and camp servants (**cālōnēs**), who were probably slaves.

AUXILIARY INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

Infantry. The light armed infantry (Plate I, 1 and 2), 47 which Caesar usually calls **auxilia**, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (**funditōrēs**) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (**sagittārii**) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light armed infantry was drawn from friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting, but made them

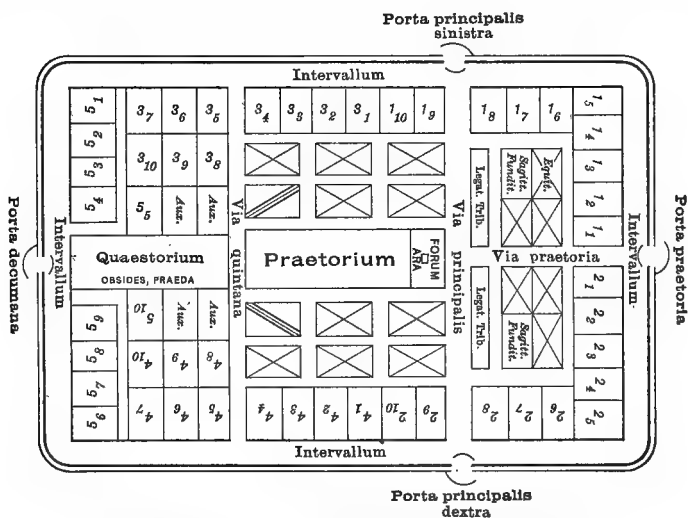
useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy's attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (praefecti). Their standard was a banner (vexillum, Plate I, 4) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

- 48 Cavalry.** Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy's cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were *praefecti*, and their standards were *vexilla* (cf. 47).

THE CAMP

- 49** A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (*castra*) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.
- 50 Location and Form of Camp.** Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 3 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 4 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar's camps. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every manipule had always the same location. Fig. 3 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.

Fortifications of Camp (Fig. 5). The size of the trench 51 (fossa) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven



1₂ First Legion
Second Cohort

This camp is for five legions with
cavalry and auxiliary troops

FIG. 3. PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP (Rüstow)

deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets, was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall (vāllum). This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (fascines), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer

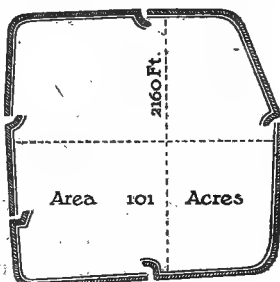
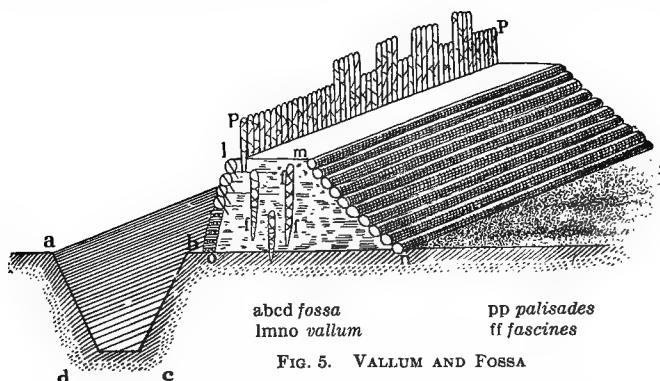


FIG. 4. CAMP ON THE AXONA

edge of the top stood a row of palisades (*vālli*), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the



enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (*turrēs*) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

- 52 Gates of Camp.** Usually there was one gate (*porta*) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 4 there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 4 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.



1. *imperator* 2. *legatus* 3. *centurio* 4. *lictor*
5. *Gallic warrior* 6. *Gallic standard bearer* 7. *Gallic chief*

ROMAN OFFICERS AND GAULS

THE MARCH

Line of March. The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry 53 and light armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

Length of March. The length of a day's march of course 54 varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry from forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks of forced marches (*magna itinera, maxima itinera*), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

THE BATTLE

Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the 55 line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought out at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from

a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56 Line of Battle. The line of battle was commonly triple (*triplex aciēs*), though sometimes only double (*duplex aciēs*). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

57 Orbis. When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (*orbis*), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS

58 A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 6). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs

would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

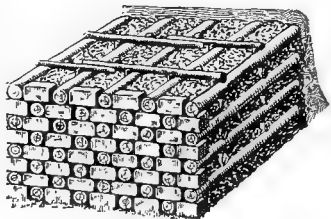


FIG. 6. SECTION OF GALLIC WALL

59

Blockade (obsidiō). A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War.

Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentina). If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a *testūdō* (tortoise, Plate III, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (*crātēs*, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (*scālae*, Plate III). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

Formal Siege (oppugnātiō). The favorite method was by the use of the agger and tower (*turris*). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the lower stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across

it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 7). Sometimes, if the wall was

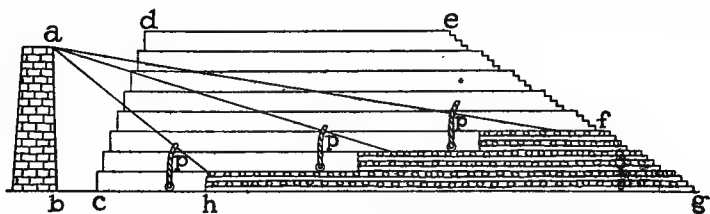


FIG. 7. SIDE VIEW OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION

a b, the enemy's wall. *f g h*, part already constructed. *c d e f h*, part to be constructed. *a b c d*, part to be filled in with earth and rubbish at the last moment. *p p p*, lines of plutei protecting the workmen. The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the plutei.

low and the ground about it level, no causeway was built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate III illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town.

62 Means of Protecting the Besiegers. In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall:

hence they made use of several forms of protection.

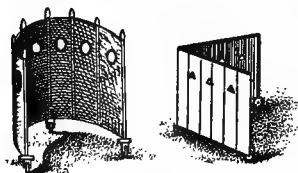


FIG. 8

immediately behind it; and it could be moved forward at pleasure.

b. The **musculus** (Fig. 9) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the

a. The **pluteus** (Fig. 8) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and it could be

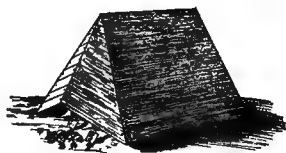
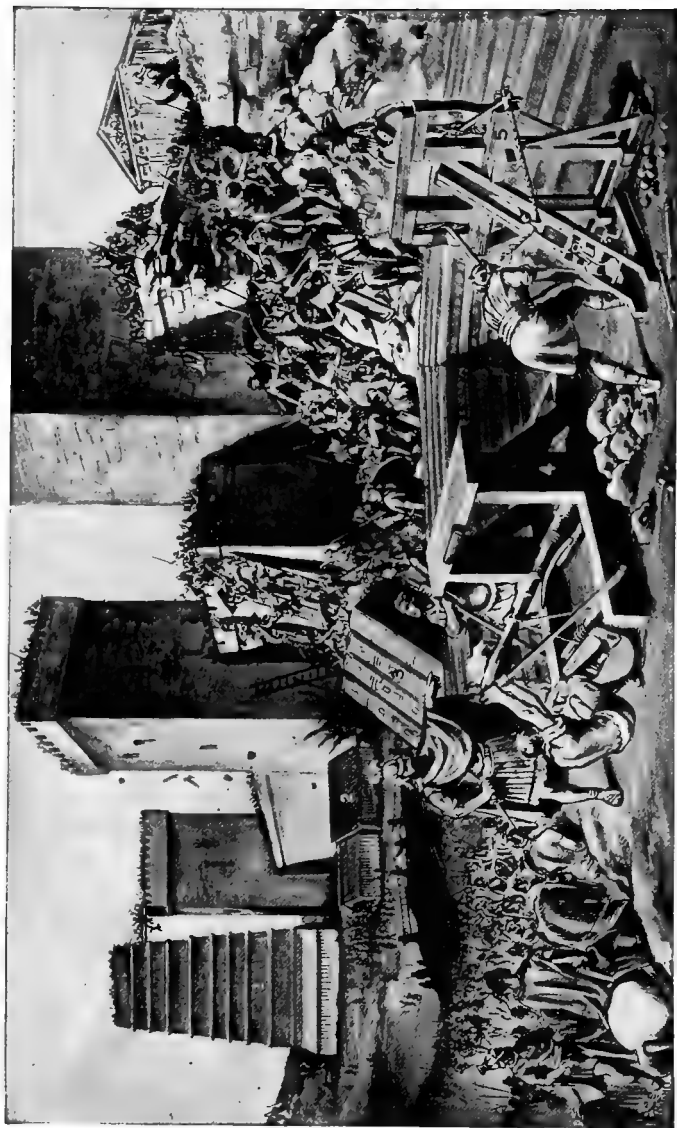


FIG. 9

PLATE III



1. turris 2. testudo arietaria 3. testudo 4. onager 5. ballista

shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The *testūdō arietāria* (Plate III, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (*ariēs*), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

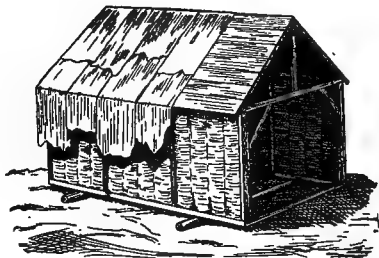


FIG. 10

d. The *vīnea* (Fig. 10) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the *musculi*, *testūdīnēs*, or *plutei*.

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

The Artillery.—Caesar had with him engines of war, the purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery.

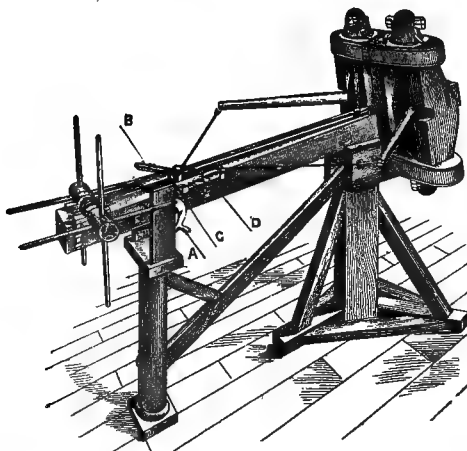


FIG. 11. CATAPULTA

They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle: hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name *tormenta* is derived from *torqueō*, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horse-hair ropes.

a. The *ballista*

(Plate III, 5) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal.

b. The catapult (*catapulta*) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 11 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long sliding carriage, on the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (c) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger; the block (c) was withdrawn and the rear end

of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.

c. The *scorpiō* was a small catapult.

d. The *onager* (Plate III, 4) threw stones, like the ballista, but was of different construction.

THE FLEET

The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legionaries, put tribunes and centurions in command of indi-

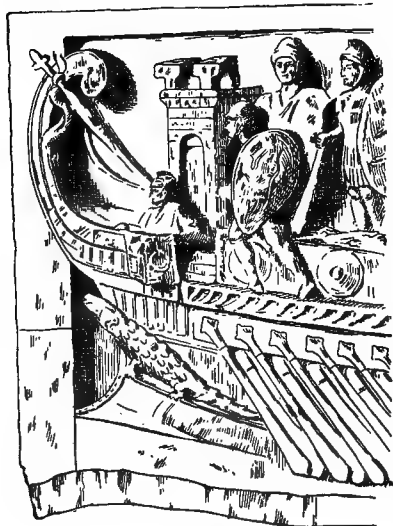


FIG. 12

vidual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called *nāvēs longae*, in distinction from the transports (*nāvēs onerāriae*), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Fig. 12) were armed with metal beaks (*rōstra*), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy's ships and board it.

A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

A. Holder. (Freiburg and Tübingen, 1882.) This may be useful for its (inaccurate) index of words, which is intended to be complete.

H. Meusel. (Berlin, 1894.) The critical edition is the best text edition of the Gallic War. No explanatory notes.

H. Rheinhard. (Stuttgart, 1896.) Useful for its illustrations.

Of the following English editions the first two are useful:

C. E. Moberly. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1878.)

A. G. Peskett. (Cambridge, 1878-1882.)

St. George Stock. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1898.)

Usually good when it follows good authorities.

Caesar's Life and Campaigns

Col. T. A. Dodge. *Caesar*. (Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1894.) Useful if Napoleon can not be obtained, but without much independent value.

W. Warde Fowler. *Julius Caesar*. (G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1892.) The best life of Caesar.

J. A. Froude. *Caesar: a Sketch*. Interesting, but grossly partisan and inaccurate.

T. Rice Holmes. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. (Macmillan

& Co., London, 1899.) The best discussion, in any language, of the military and geographical problems.

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar*. (Out of print, but can be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Volume II gives a more complete narrative and explanation of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul than can be found elsewhere, but without much discussion of disputed points.

C. W. C. Oman. *Seven Roman Statesmen*. (Edward Arnold, London, 1902.) The characterization of Caesar is too violent a reaction against the views of Mommsen and Froude.

Plutarch's Lives. Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Anthony Trollope. *The Commentaries of Caesar*. (In the series, Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

Much that is valuable will be found in the following histories: Duruy. *History of Rome*.

Long. *The Decline of the Roman Republic*. This is especially good in its treatment of Caesar's campaigns.

Merivale. *History of the Romans under the Empire*.

Mommsen. *History of Rome*. The chief defect of this extraordinary work is its too great partiality for Caesar.

Miscellaneous

H. P. Judson. *Caesar's Army*. (Ginn & Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico*. (Leipzig, 1890.)

W. Rüstow. *Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg*. (Stuttgart.)

A. Van Kampen. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae*. (Gotha.)

REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following Book VII); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in plain-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, 2, 11 = Book III, chapter 2, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. * indicates that the word is used 5 or more times in those books.

For the explanation of some other details, see p. 2 of the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

abbr. = abbreviation.
abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
act. = active.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb, adverbial.
card. = cardinal.
cf. = *cōnfer*, compare.
chap. = chapter.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
dat. = dative.
def. = defective.
dem. = demonstrative.
dim. = diminutive.
distr. = distributive.
e.g. = *exempli grātiā*, for example.
encl. = enclitic.
etc. = *et cētera*, and so forth.
f. = feminine.
fig. = figure, figuratively.
freq. = frequentative.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive.
i.e. = *id est*, that is.
imp = imperative.
impers. = impersonal.
impf. = imperfect.
incept = inceptive.
ind. = indicative.
indecl. = indeclinable.
indef. = indefinite.

inf. = infinitive.
int. = introduction.
interrog = interrogative.
intr. = intransitive.
irr. = irregular.
l., ll. = line, lines.
lit. = literally.
m. = masculine.
neg. = negative.
n., neut. = neuter.
n. (in grammatical references) = note.
nom. = nominative.
num. = numeral.
ord. = ordinal.
p., pp. = page, pages.
part. = participle.
pass. = passive.
pers. = personal.
pf. = perfect.
pl. = plural.
plupf. = pluperfect.
poss. = possessive.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pron. = pronoun.
reflex. = reflexive.
rel. = relative.
sc. = *scilicet*, supply.
sing. = singular.
subj. = subjunctive.
sup. = superlative.
tr. = transitive.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29. WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of

the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates the part of Transalpine Gaul which belonged to Rome when Caesar entered upon his command.

Red indicates the states whose submission Caesar secured by conquering them in battle. The Boii are shown in the homes given them after their defeat. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi lived across the Rhine and are not shown on this map. The Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges were forced to permit the passage of the army, but were probably not reduced to submission, and are therefore left uncolored.

Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. In chap. 30 we are told that envoys from "nearly all Gaul" came to Caesar as a result of his victory over the Helvetii. It is certain that Celtic Gaul is meant; therefore Aquitania and Belgium are left uncolored. In chap. 31 we are told that Ariovistus held a part of the territory of the Sequani; this is left uncolored. In II, 34 we are given a list of states which did not submit till 57; these also are left uncolored. All the rest of Celtic Gaul may be supposed to have submitted at the close of the war with the Helvetii; it is therefore colored blue.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions. It also shows the route of the Helvetii after they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Crossed sabers indicate battlefields. Colonel Stoffel's identification of the main battlefield (*Histoire de Jules César: Guerre Civile*, II, 439-453) is almost certainly right and is indicated on this map.



Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29

MANE, ORI.

C. IULI CAESARIS

BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam

1. Gallia, -ae, f., Gallia (gāl'i-a), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. See map. *

sum, esse, fui (App 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with *gen.* in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with *dat.* of possessor, have. *

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl.* as noun, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl.* as noun, all possessions or goods. *

dividō, dividere, divisī, divisum, tr. divide, separate; **divisus, pf. part. as adj.**, divided. *

in, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc. (1) of motion, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon: (2) of time, till, into; for; on, at: (3) other uses, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; **in diēs**, from day to day; **in fugam concidere**, put to flight; **in Caesarem incidere**, meet with Caesar;

summum in cruciātum venire, be severely punished. With *abl.* (1) of rest or motion within a place, in among, over, within, throughout; on, upon: (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on: (3) other uses, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; **in Ararī**, over the Arar; **in eō**, in his case; **in ancoris**, at anchor; **in opere esse**, be engaged in the work. *

pars, partis, f., part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. *

trēs, tria, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj., three. *

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see quis), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of dem., this, that; **quam ob rem**, wherefore; **quem ad modum**, in what manner, how, as; **quō**, with comparatives, the; **quō . . . eō**, the . . . the. *

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, gen. ūnius (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. *

Chap. 1. A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.

1. Gallia: in translating, proper names should always be pronounced like English words. The pronunciation is always indicated in the vocabulary. The values of the vowel markings are shown in the table on p. 2 of the vocabulary at the end of the book.

omnis, "as a whole," shows that *Gallia* here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

divisa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.

quārum ūnam, "one of which (parts)." **ūnam:** case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. The grammar references should al-

*The asterisk, in the vocabulary, shows that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV. A figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, similarly placed, is used when the word occurs less than five times.

incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna

2. incolō, -colere, -colui, —, tr. and intr. [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. *

Belgae, -ārum, m. (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. *

alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius (App. 32), another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; *in pl.*, some . . . others. *

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (āk'wi-tā'nī), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. *

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. *

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59), intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; *as adj.*, very; *in gen.*, his, her, its, or their own. *

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language. 3.

3. Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better, the Celts. 1.

nostrer, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. *

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic; *pl. as noun*, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. *

appellō, 1, tr., accost, address, call by name, name, call. *

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than **is**; this, this man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* **hōc**, on this account; in this respect; the (*with comparatives*); **hic . . . ille**, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. *

institūtum, -ī, n. [instituo, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. 3.

4. lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment. 4.

inter, prep. with acc. (*sometimes following its noun*), (1) of place, among, between; (2) of time, during, within, for; (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with; (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action (App. 186), with, to, or from each other or one another, *as*, **inter sē differunt**, differ from one another; each other, one another, *as*, **co-**

ways be looked up and studied. In the notes on I, 1-29, for each of the most common principles of syntax grammar references are given three times, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

2. Belgae: it is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar's story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can easily be found.

aliam, tertiam: sc. *partem incolunt*.

quī = īī quī; a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.

ipsōrum linguā, "in their own language." **linguā:** case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. Celtae, Galli: case? App. 95, a: G.-L. 205; 206: A. 283; 234: B. 167; 168, 2, b: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 393, 8.

linguā, institūtis, lēgibus, "in language, institutions, and laws." Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either "a, b, c," or "a and b and c," while English usually says "a, b, and c." For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

4. Garumna flūmen: sc. *dividit*. **flūmen:** case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2, a: H. 393.

flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium 5 fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercā-

hortātī inter sē, encouraging one another. *

sui, sibi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. pron. of 3d person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; inter sē, see inter and App. 166. *

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, tr. and intr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. 1.

ā (before consonants), ab (before vowels and some consonants), abs (before tē, and in some compounds), prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duobus, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after. *

Garumna, -ae, m. (DEcd), the Garumna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. 3.

5. flūmen, -inis, n. [fluō, flow], river, stream. *

Matrona, -ae, m. (Bef), the river Matrona (māt'rō-na), now the Marne. 1.

et, conj., and; also, too, even; et . . . et, both . . . and. *

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wa-na), better, Seine. 1.

6. fortis, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. *

proptereā, adv. [propter, because of], on this account; proptereā quod, because. *

quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of quī, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, inasmuch as; because; quod sī, but if; proptereā quod, because. *

cultus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. 2.

atque, ac (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. *

hūmānitās, -tātis, f. [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2.

7. prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. *

longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant; longē lātēque, far and wide. *

absūm, abesse, āfui, intr. [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. *

minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least,

5. Matrona . . . dīvidit: the two rivers formed one boundary, and the verb is therefore singular: App. 180, b: G.-L. 285, 2: A. 317, b: B. 255, 3: H.-B. 331, 3: H. 392, 4.

hōrum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367;

372: A. 346, a, 2: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 442.

7. prōvinciae: see Int. 2, 26.

quod absunt: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I. minimē saepe, "very seldom."

tōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs
 pertinent important, proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns
 10 Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

very little; by no means, not at all. 4.

-que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; **que . . . que, or que . . . et,** both . . . and. *

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward; (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, at, by, near: (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for: (4) with numerals, up to, about: (5) of time, up to, until; at, on: (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. *

is, ea, id gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; **is locus quō, a, or the, place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eō, with comp., the; eō magis, all the more; eō . . . quō, with comparatives, the . . . the.** *

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercor, trade], merchant, trader. *

8. saepe, adv., often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepe numerō, often, time and again, frequently;** comp. **saeptius, oftener, more frequently;** time and again; too often. *

commēō, 1, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with **ad, resort to, visit. 1.**

mercātōrēs: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.

8. quae . . . pertinent; notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last: everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

effēminō, 1, tr. [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 1.

animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animī causā, for amusement; in animō habēre, intend. *

9. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; **eōdem pertinēre, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. ***

importō, 1, tr. [in + portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. 3.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with acc. (App. 122, b), next to. *

Germānī, -ōrum, m., the Germani (jēr-mā'nī), better, Germans. *

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. *

10. Rhēnus, -ī, m. (ABCīgh), the river Rhene (rē'nūs), better, the Rhine. *

cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. *

continenter, adv. [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. 3.

bellum, -ī, n., war. *

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on,

ad effēminandōs animōs, "to weaken the courage"; the gerundive construction will be treated later.

9. proximī Germānīs, "next to the Germans": case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, III: H. 434, 2.

10. quibuscum: use and position of cum? App. 140: 60, b: G.-L. 392: 413, 1: A. 413, b: 150, d: B. 222: 142, 4: H.-B. 418, a: 419, 4: H. 473, 1: 182, 2.

Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus

perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. *

11. *dē*, *prep.* with *abl.*, originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. *

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (*legal*) case, cause; *causam dicere*, to plead a case; *causā*, following a *gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. *

Helvētīus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyī), Helvetian; as *noun*, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. *

quoque, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*relinquō*, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n.* as *noun*, remainder, rest. *

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [*vir*, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. *

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr.* [*cēdō*, go], go before; surpass, excel. 1.

12. *ferē*, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cotīdiē*,

daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. *

proelium, -li, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; *proelium committere*, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. *

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.* and *intr.* [*tendō*, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. *

13. *cum*, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; *cum . . . tum*, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; *cum primum*, as soon as. See App. 238-242. *

aut, *conj.*, used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or. *

suus, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj.* referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a) [*suī*, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; *sua*, *n. pl.* as *noun*, one's property; *suī*, *m. pl.* as *noun*, their men (*friends or countrymen*). *

finis, -is, *m.*, boundary, limit, border, end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [*habeō*, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. *

11. *quā dē causā*, "(and) for this reason." The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using "and" or "but," if we like: App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

Helvētīi: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters.

virtūte: ablative of specification.

12. *proeliis*, "in battle"; but it is an ablative of means.

13. *suis finibus*: the reflexives *suī* and *suus* regularly refer to the subject:

bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dic-
tum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Ga-
rumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab
Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septen-
triōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; perti-

14. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold, retain, pos-
sess, maintain; acquire, obtain. *

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, *tr.*, say,
tell, speak, express, mention; name,
appoint; causam dicere, plead a case;
iūs dicere, administer justice. *

15. initium, -ti, *n.* [ineō, go into],
beginning, commencement, origin; edge
of a country, borders. *

capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, *tr.*,
take, capture, seize, catch; take in,
beguile, induce; take up (*arms*); choose,
select (*a place*); form, adopt (*a plan*);
reach, arrive at (*a place*); make (*a begin-
ning*); collem capere, take position on
a hill; fugam capere, take to flight. *

Rhodanus, -i, *m.* (CDfg), the river
Rhodanus (rōd'a-nūs), better, Rhone. *

contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold together;
hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; con-
tain; sē continēre, with *abl.*, remain
in, on, or within. *

16. Ōceanus, -i, *m.*, the ocean; as
adj., with *mare*, the ocean. *

atingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāc-
tum, *tr.* [ad+tangō, touch], touch or
border on, reach, extend to, arrive at,
attain. *

etiam, *conj.*, and also, also, even,
yet. *

17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or be-
longing to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*,
Sēquani (Cf.), the Sequani (sēk' wa-
nī). *

vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, look or
lie towards, be situated; slope. 3.

septentrionēs, -um, *m.* [septem,
seven + triōnēs, plough oxen], the
seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great
Bear, hence the north. *

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of*
exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost,
farthest, extreme; the farthest part of;
extrēmī (*as noun*), the rear; ad extrē-
mum, at last, at the end; as a last
resort. *

orior, oriri, ortus sum, *intr.*, arise,
begin, spring up, rise, start; be born,
descend; oriēns sōl, the rising sun,
sunrise; the east. *

uis therefore refers to the Helvetii.
For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A.
400; 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1;
and notice that the preposition *ab* is
often used in the same sense, as in *ab*
Aquitānis, I. 4.

eōrum refers to the Germans. For
case see App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B.
198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

14. eōrum refers back to the Gauls
as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have
just been mentioned.

quam is the object, Gallōs the sub-
ject of *obtinēre*: App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2:
A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. The
infinitive clause, quam . . . ob-
tinēre, is the subject of *dictum est*:

App. 266: G.-L. 343, 2; 650: A. 580: B.
314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 642. The whole
may be freely translated, "which,
as has been said, the Gauls occu-
py."

15. ā flūmine, "at the river." There
are many phrases in which we feel "at"
or "on" to be the appropriate preposi-
tion, but in which the Romans seem to
have thought of a starting-point and
consequently used *ab* or *ex*, which lit-
erally mean "from."

16. ab Sēquanīs, "in the direction
of" or "on the side of." Cf. the preced-
ing note.

18. extrēmīs finibus: i. e. those
farthest from the Roman province.

ment ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēni; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flumine ad Pyrēnaeos montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, regnī cupi-

19. **inferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower; inferior; **ab inferiōre parte**, below, down stream; *sup.*, **infimus** or **imus**, lowest, last; *with collis*, the base of; **ad infimum**, **ab infimō**, at the bottom. *

spectō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of speciō*, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. 3.

20. **sōl**, **sōlis**, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun or west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun or east. *

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (āk'wī-tā'nī-ā), southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. *

21. **Pyrēnaeus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pyrēnaei montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pīr'ē-nē'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. 1.

mōns, **montis**, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. *

22. **Hispānia**, -ae, *f.* (Eabed), Hispania (his-pā'nī-ā), better, Spain. 2.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**occidō**, fall, set], falling down, setting; *with sōlis*, sunset; the west. 4.

1. **apud**, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. *

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**nōscō**, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. *

dives, **divitis**, *adj.*, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, **ditissimus**. 1.

2. **Orgetorix**, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'ō-riks), a chief of the Helvetii. * **M.**, *abbr. for* **Mārcus** (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Messālā, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mār'kūs vā-lēr'i-ūs mē-sā'lā), consul, 61 B.C. 2.

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pī-ūs pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā'nūs), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. 2.

cōsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. *

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [**rēx**, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. *

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [**cupidus**, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. 3.

19. **in septentrionēs . . . sōlem**: i. e., toward the northeast.

22. **ad Hispāniam**, "near Spain"; the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

inter occāsum . . . septentrionēs: i. e., toward the northwest.

Chap. 2-4. The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.

Chap. 2. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to invade Gaul.

1. **nōbilissimus**: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

2. **M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus**, "In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso." Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B. C., three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

regnī: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

ditate inductus coniuratiōnem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: 5 Perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae

3. **inducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. 4.

coniuratiō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. 3.

nōbilitās, -tātis, f. [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. 3.

faciō, facere, fēci, factum, tr. and intr.: tr., make, construct, form, do, execute (commands, etc.); give (opportunity, etc.); with ut, bring about, cause: intr., do, act. *Pass.*, **fiō, fieri, factus sum** (App. 83), with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally, result, happen, come to pass. *

civitatī, -tātis, f. [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. *

3. **coniuratiōnem:** the real purpose of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix king, although the Helvetii, like most Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int. 29. His real reasons for wishing the people to emigrate were (1) that by making himself leader of the emigration he could get power enough to make himself king; and (2) that as king he wished to conquer the other states of Gaul.

civitatī: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (b): H. 426, 2. The list of verbs given in this rule should be committed to memory.

4. **ut exirent:** mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, (a): H. 563, 1; 565.

copis here includes the women and children.

5. **perfacile esse . . . potiri** is indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *persuasit*. Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in

4. **persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, tr. and intr.** [suādeō, advise], advise prevailingly; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; **sibi persuādēri**, be convinced. *

ut and utī, adv. and conj., (1) as *interrog. adv.*, how? (2) as *rel. adv. and conj.*, as, in proportion as, just as; inasmuch as; as if: (3) as *conj.* (a) with *ind.*, when, after; (b) with *subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; after words of fearing, that not. I, 2.

cōpia, -ae, f., supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. *

exeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [eō, go, App. 84], go from or out, depart from, leave. 2.

5. **perfacilis, -e, adj.** [facilis, easy], very easy. 2.

Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to details of the construction will be given in I, 1-29. The most essential fact to grasp is that when a declarative sentence is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648; 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, *perfacile est . . . potiri*, "it is very easy to get control." The *est* has become *esse*, but the English equivalent is "(saying) that it was very easy to get control."

cum . . . praestarent, "since they excelled all in valor." **virtute:** case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480. **omnibus:** case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 1: H.-B. 376: H. 429. **praestarent:** mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

imp̄eriō potirī. Id hōc facilius iis̄ persuāsīt, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, **praestat**, it is better or more advisable. *

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. *

6. imperium, -rī, n. [imperō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *

potior, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. *

facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius**; *sup.*, **facillimē** (App. 41). *

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; **obsidum locō**, as hostages. *

tōtius . . . potirī: i. e., the Helvetii were to do what the Haedui and the Sequani were trying to do. See Int. 29. **imp̄eriō**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

6. id . . . persuāsīt, lit. "he persuaded this (id) to them more easily on this account (hōc)" = "he persuaded them to this course the more easily." **hōc**: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

iis: cf. *civitatī*, l. 3.

quod continentur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554: 555: H. 588, I. See the map for the details that follow.

7. loci: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, I.

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. *

ē (only before consonants), **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), *prep.* with *abl.*, originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; **ūnā ex parte**, on one side: (2) of time, from, after, since; **ex itinere**, immediately after the march: (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; **ē regiōne**, opposite. *

8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive. 4.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun*, the deep, the sea. *

ager, agri, m., field, land; district, territory. *

9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (of two); second; the one: **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other; **alterī . . . alterī**, the one party . . . the other. *

Iūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (Jūra) mountains. 3.

nātūrā: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

8. ā Germānis: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 1, a: H. 461. We have learned in 1, 12-14, that the Rhine did not prevent frequent battles with the Germans. Later in his work Caesar implies that the pressure of the Germans was one of the reasons for the emigration of the Helvetii. On the other hand, the certainty that Germans would occupy Helvetia was one of the reasons why Caesar would not let the Helvetii emigrate. See Int. 3.

9. alterā ex parte: "on a second side." Notice how often a monosyllabic preposition stands between an adjective and its noun.

10 Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus latē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem

10. lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake. 3.

Lemannus, -ī (*with or without lacus*), *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better, Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. 3.

12. rēs, rei, *f.*, of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frumentāria, supplies; rēs militāria, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs publica, state; rēs actae, deeds, achievements; quam ob rem, see quī and quis. *

minus, *adv. comp.* [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. *

latē, *adv.* [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longē latēque, far and wide. 4.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. *

13. inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causā illātā, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. * possum, posse, potui, —, (App. 80).

10. tertiā: sc. *ex parte*. The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

11. his . . . fiēbat, lit. "by these things it was brought about" = "the result was."

12. ut vagārentur: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

minus, "less" than they desired.

finitimis: for case cf. *omnibus*, 1.5.

intr. [pōtis, able+sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; *with quam and sup.*, as possible, e.g. *quam plūrimās possunt*, as many as possible; *multum posse, plūs posse, and plūrimum posse*, see *multum*. *

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. *

bellō, 1, *intr.* [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. 3.

14. cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. 2.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (*voice*); high (*tide*); magni (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. *Comp.*, maior; *sup.*, maximus. *

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. 3.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ad+faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficere, to annoy greatly. 3.

prō, *prep. with abl.* [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in

13. quā ex parte, "and on this ground": use of relative? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hominēs . . . cupidī, "being men who were desirous of fighting." bellandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 426; 428: A. 502; 504: B. 338, 1, b: H.-B. 611; 612, I: H. 624; 626.

14. prō . . . hominum, "considering the great size of the population."

hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē 15
finēs habere arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum
CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctoritāte Orgetorigis permōti

return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written prō, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. *

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. *

autem, *conj.*, but (a weak adversative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. *

15. glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. 2.

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. 1.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in angustō, in a critical condition. *

16. habēō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with orationem); in animō habere, intend; rationem habere, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an ut clause); cōsilium habere, form a plan; in numerō hostium habere, consider as enemies; aliter sē habere, be otherwise or different; for habere with *pf. pass. part.*, e.g. vectigalia redēpta habere, see App. 286, b. *

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [arbitrator, umpire], decide; think, believe. *

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [longus, long], length, extent; long duration. 1.

mille, *indecl. num. adj.*, a thou-

sand; *pl. as noun*, milia, -ium, *n.*, thousands (usually followed by genitive); milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. *

passus, -ūs, *m.* [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches (five Roman feet); mille passus or passuum, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. *

17. ducenti, -ae, -a (CC), *card. num. adj.* [duo, two+centum, hundred], two hundred. *

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, forty. 2.

latitūdō, -inis, *f.* [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. *

centum (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. 4.

octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [octō, eight], eighty. 3.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. 4.

1. adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. *

auctoritās, -tātis, *f.* [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. *

permovere, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. *

15. sē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

angustōs finēs, "(too) narrow limits." finēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Caesar has somewhat overstated the size of Helvetia, because he had to depend on the re-

ports of the Gauls. It comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to chap. 29 the population was 263,000, while Switzerland now has a population of about 3,000,000.

16. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertīnērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxē-

2. cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). *

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *intr.* [*cf.* prōficiō, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. *

comparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. *

3. iūmentum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. 2.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. *

quam, (1) *adv.*, (*a*) *interrog.*, how? (*b*) *rel.*, as; *with sup.* and *with or without posse*, as . . . as possible, very; quam diū, as long as; (2) *conj. with comp.*, than; prius . . . quam, before; post . . . quam, postea . . . quam, after. *

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of magnus*, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. *

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; in numerō, *with gen.*, among, as. *

coēmō, -emere, -ēmi, -ēptum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy, buy up. 1.

4. sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], sowing. 1.

iter, itineris, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. *

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. *

5. suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *intr.* [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. 2.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; favor. 2.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.* [amicus, friend], friendship. *

cōfirmō, 1, *tr.* [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. *

6. cōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish

Chap. 3. The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.

2. ad proficiscendum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

comparāre, coēmere, facere, cōfirmāre all depend on cōstituērunt; "they decided to get ready . . . , to buy . . . , to sow . . . , and to establish . . ."

3. iūmentōrum: especially oxen: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

quam maximum numerum, "as great a number as possible" or "as many . . . as possible."

4. ut cōpia suppeteret, "in order that a supply might be at hand": mode? App. 225, a, 3: G.-L. 544, I; 545, 1, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

5. cum . . . cōfirmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.

cum proximīs cīvitatibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, etc. For case see App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 418; 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. ad . . . cōficiendās, lit. "for these things to be completed" = "for completing these preparations." Study

runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs 10 annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus

up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). *

biennium, -nī, n. [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. 1.

satis, adv. and indecl. adj. and noun; (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. *

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, tr. lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. *

7. annus, -ī, m., year. *

profectiō, -ōnis, f. [proficiscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. 3.

8. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. *

lēgatiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. *

9. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum,

carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that *ad* governs *rēs* and that *cōficiendās* is an adjective in agreement with *rēs*. App. 157: G.-L. 289: A. 286: B. 234: H.-B. 320: H. 394. But *cōficiendās* must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing *rēs* as its object.

sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366, a (or 362, 1): H. 425, 4.

biennium... dūxērunt, "they judged that two years were sufficient." *Dūcō* with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: cf. 2, 5. The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

tr. [su(b)s+capiō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. *

Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus (kās'tī-kūs). 1.

Catamantaloedis, -is, m., Catamantaloedis (kāt'mān'ta-lē'dīs). 1.

10. filius, -li, m., son. 4.

pater, -tris, m., father; in pl., forefathers, ancestors; pater familiae, father or head of a family. *

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, great; pl., many; with abl. denoting time when, late; as noun, many persons or things; comp. plūs, plūris, more; as noun, more; pl., more, several, many; sup., plūrimus, -a, -um, most; pl., very many. *

11. senātus, -ūs, m. [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; esp., the administrative council of Rome. *

populus, -ī, m., the people, the mass,

7. cōfirmant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.

8. sibi suscipit, "he took on himself." For case cf. *omnibus*, 2, 5.

9. Casticō: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, I, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 2.

10. filiō, Sēquanō: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 316, 317, 2, a: H. 393, 1.

11. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423, 2: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

obtinuerat, "had held." Always be suspicious of a translation which sounds like the Latin word. It may be

erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, qui eō tempore principātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbi
15 acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eūque filiam suam

the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. *

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rōma, Rome], Roman; as *noun*, a Roman. *

amicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; as *noun*, *m.*, a friend, an ally. *

12. occupō, 1, *tr.* [ob+capīō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. *

ante, (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously; (2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance of. *

13. item, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. *

Dumnorig, -igis, *m.*, Dumnorig (dūm'nō-riks), a Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus. *

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i); Haeduan; as *noun*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui, possibly Haeduan, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. *

frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. *

Diviciācus, -i, *m.*, Diviciacus (dīv'ī-

shi-ā'kūs), a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans. *

14. tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division or section of time, a time, time (*in general*); occasion, crisis; **omni tempore**, always; **in reliquum tempus**, for the future; **ūnō tempore**, at the same time, at once. *

principātus, -ūs, *m.* [princeps, chief], chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. 4.

magis, *adv.*, *comp.* [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.* **maximē**, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. *

plēbs, **plēbis**, or **plēbēs**, -ēi, *f.*, populace, common people. 3.

15. acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of accipīō, accept], acceptable, beloved by (*with dative*). 1.

idem, **eadem**, **idem** (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [is, this, that], the same; this very; **idem atque**, the same as. *

cōnor, 1, *intr.*, attempt, endeavor, try. *

filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter. 4.

right, but it is very likely to be wrong. "Obtained" would be wrong here.

ā senātū: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

amicus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

12. ut occupāret, "to seize." This clause is the object of *persuādet* in l. 10: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565. Cf. *ut suppetet*, l. 4, which is not used as an object.

13. Dumnorigi: younger than Diviciacus, and a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haedui.

Haeduō: the Haedui were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29. **qui**: i.e. Dumnorig.

14. tempore: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423, 1: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

principātum, "the leading position"; but he was not a magistrate.

plēbi: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

15. ut idem cōnārētur, "to attempt the same thing"; i.e. attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

eī: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset. Nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētīi possent: sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti inter se fidem et iūs iurandum 20

16. mātirimōnium, -nī, *n.* [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in mātirimōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātirimōnium dūcere, to marry (*said of the man*). 2.

dō, dare, dedi, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negōtium, with *dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (*Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb. dō, put.*) 4.

ille, illa, illud, *gen.* illius, *dat.* illi (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic*), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former, *see* App. 170, *a.* 4.

probō, 1, *tr.* [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. 3.

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

17. perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish;

16. perfacile . . . perficere, *lit.* "he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do [*factū*, the supine]" = "he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking." *esse*: *cf.* 2, 5.

17. propterea quod obtenturus esset, *lit.* "because he was about to seize upon" = "because he intended to seize upon." The clause is causal, like *propterea quod absunt* in 1, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse (*cf.* 2, 5) is that all

construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. *

18. nōn (App. 188, *a*), *adv.*, not; no. * dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful. 1.

quī, *conj.* [quī, who or how + *ne*, negative], that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance*, but that, that, from, to; quī etiam, nay even, moreover. *

multum, *adv.* [*acc. of multus*, much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* plūs, more; plūs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; *sup.* plūrimum, most, very; plūrimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. *

19. exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. *

conciliō, 1, *tr.* [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. 1.

20. ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō, speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. *

fidēs, -ei, *f.* [fidō, confide], faith, con-

subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, 1; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. nōn . . . quī, "(he proved that) there was no doubt that."

19. sē illis conciliātūrum (*sc. esse*), "that he would win for them." *Esse* is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illis: *i.e.* for Casticus and Dumnorix.

20. hāc ōrātiōne, "by this argument."

inter sē, "to one another."

dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per iudiciū enūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur. Diē

fidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere**, convince, give a pledge; **fidem sequi**, surrender. *

iūs iurandum, iuris iurandi, n. [iūs, right+iūrō, swear], an oath. *

21. **per**, *prep.* with acc., through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; **per sē**, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; in composition, through, very, thoroughly, completely. *

potēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part.* of **possum**, be able], powerful, influential. 4.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, stable, vigorous, firm. 3.

22. **spērō, 1, tr.** [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. 2.

1. **iudiciū, -ci, n.** [iudicō, disclose], disclosure, information; **per iudiciū**, through informers. 1.

enūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. *

21. **rēgnō occupātō potiri posse spērant**, "they hoped that after they had seized the royal power [each in his own land] they could get control of." **rēgnō occupātō**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute: English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally. "The royal power having been seized" is wretched English.

per trēs populōs: i.e. the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedui.

22. **Galliae**: case? App. 111: G.-L.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. *

2. **vinculum, -i, n.** [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3.

cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactum, tr. [co+agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. *

3. **damnō, 1, tr.** [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 1.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty. 3.

sequor, sequi, secutus sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with **poena**, be inflicted; **fidem sequi**, seek the protection. *

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, intr. impers., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. *

ignis, -is, m., fire. 4.

cremō, 1, tr., burn. 2.

diēs, -ēi, m. and f., day; time; in **diēs**, from day to day; **diem ex diē**, day after day. *

407, n. 2, d: A. 410, a: B. 212, 2: H.-B. 353: H. 477, I, 3.

Chap. 4. Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.

1. **ea rēs**, "this conspiracy."

Helvētiis: case? App. 114, c: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

mōribus: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

2. **ex vinculis**, "in chains." Cf. note on 1, 15.

3. **damnātum . . . cremārētur**, lit. "it was necessary for the punishment to

cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et 5 omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvītās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris

4. dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. 1.

iūdicium, -ci, *n.* [iudex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; iūdicium facere, express an opinion; iūdicio, by design, purposely. 4.

5. familia, -ae, *f.*, household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. 2.

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, *m.*, *f.* [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. 3.

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes, money], in debt; as noun, debtor. 1.

7. eōdem, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). *

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. 4.

nē (App. 188, b), (1) *conj.* with subj.,

that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that, lest: (2) *adv.*, not; nē . . . quidem (enclosing the emphatic word), not even. *

8. ēripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapio, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. *

ob, *prep.* with acc., on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. *

incitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; cursū incitātō, at full speed. *

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. *

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. *

9. exsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1.

follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire" = "if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him." damnātum: use of participle? App. 283: G.-L. 667: A. 496: B. 337, 2, b: H.-B. 604, 3: H. 638, 2. ut cremārētur is a substantive clause in apposition with poenam; it is perhaps best taken as a substantive clause of result.

diē: gender? App. 30, a: G.-L. 64: A. 97, a: B. 53: H.-B. 101: H. 135: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230, 1: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

diē . . . dictiōnis, "on the day set for the pleading of the case." causae: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348,

note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2. dictiōnis: possessive genitive, limiting diē.

5. ad, "about."

6. obaerātōs: those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7. pereōs, "by their help."

nē . . . diceret, "to avoid pleading his case": mode? App. 225, b: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

8. cum cōnārētur . . . -que magistrātūs cōgerent, "when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting": mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

10 magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum

10. magistrātūs, -ūs, *m.* [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. *

mori, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.* [mors, death], die. 2.

neque (nec) (App. 188, *a*), *conj.* [ne + que], and not, not, nor; but not: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor. *

11. suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [suspicio, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. *

mors, -tis, *f.*, death; sibi mortem cōscīscere, commit suicide. 4.

12. cōscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [scīscō, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem cōscīscere, commit suicide. 2.

1. post, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.* (1) as *adv.*, later, afterwards; (2) as *prep.*, behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. *

nihilō, *adv.*, by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. 3.

11. ut with the indicative usually means either "as", or "when."

quā . . . cōscīverit, "that he committed suicide."

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings and secure allies.

1. nihilō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

2. cōnantur: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

2. ubi, *adv.* (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as. *

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. *

3. parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; parātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. *

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, fortified town, town, stronghold. *

4. duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. 2.

vicus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. * quadringenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. 2.

privātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; as *noun*, person, individual. 3.

5. aedificium, -ci, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. *

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn-

ut exeant, "(namely) to go forth," is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause in apposition with *id*.

3. ad eam rem, "for the enterprise." parātōs is the adjective.

esse, "were": indirect discourse.

oppida, vicōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and cf. note on 1, 3.

4. numerō: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

ad, "about."

5. sēcum: position of *cum*? App. 52, *a*: G.-L. 413, R. 1: A. 144, note 1: B. 142, *a*: H.-B. 418, *a*: H. 175, 7.

^xortatūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, ^xdomum reditiōnis spē sublātā,
 parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium
 molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. ¶ Persuādent
^xauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, uti eōdem usi

sum, *tr.* [*cf.* **candeō**, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. *

praeterquam, adv., besides, except. 1.

6. portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. 3.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, tr.
[com(b)+ūrō, burn], burn up. 1.

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home; native country. *

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō, return],
return. 1.

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. *

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum,
tr., lift, elevate; take on board; take
away, remove; do away with, destroy;
cancel; **sublātus, pf. part. as adj.**,
elated. *

7. **periculum**, -ī, *n.*, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. *

subeō, -īre, -īl, -itum, *tr.* [eō, *go*. App. 84], come *or* go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. 4.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. 8.

8. **molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, tr., grind.** 1. **cibārius, -a, -um, adj.** [cibus, food],

6. **portātūrī erant**, lit. "they were about to take" = "they intended to take."
ut essent is a purpose clause.

domum reditiōis, "of returning home" domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, d: H.-B. 450, d: H. 419. 1.

spē sublātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause.

7. ad . . . subeunda: construction?
App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506:
B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H.
623; 628.

trium mēnsium cibāria, "supplies for three months." mēnsium: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440. 3. Napoleon III estimates

pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; *molita cibāria*, meal flour. 2.

quisque, quidque, and quisque, quaeque, quodque, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. *

fferō, efferre, extull, ēlātum, tr.
[**ex+ferō**, carry. App. 81], bring *or*
carry out, carry *or* take away; raise;
spread *or* publish abroad, make known;
elate, puff up. 2

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.*,
order, bid, command, enjoin. *

9. **Rauracī, -ōrum, m.** (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'ra-sī). 2.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-līn'jī), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 4.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Lato-
brigi (lāt'ō-brī'jī), a *Galic* tribe east of
the Rhine. 3.

ūtō, ūtī, ūsus sum, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; **ūsus, pf. part.** often translated with. *

that 8,500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetian host: even this is probably an underestimate.

8. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 352: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

domō: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, *b*: H.-B. 451, *a*: H. 462, 4.

9. utī . . . proficiācantur, lit. "that having used the same plan, their towns . . . having been burned, they set out along with them" = "to adopt . . . to burn . . . and to set out." cōnsiliō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.

¹⁰ cōnsiliō, oppidiis suis vicisque exustis, unā cum iis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant, et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire

10. cōnsilium, -li, n., consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; **commūni cōnsiliō**, by, or in accordance with, general action; **pūblicō cōnsiliō**, by action of the state; **cōnsilium capere** or **inire**, form or adopt a plan; **cōnsilium habere**, think, consider. *

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, tr. [ūrō, burn], burn up. 1.

unā, adv. [unus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place; (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. *

11. Bōi, -iōrum, m. (Ce), the Boi (bō'yi), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. *

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. 2.

11. Bōiōs is the object of **asciscunt**: App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

12. receptōs . . . asciscunt, lit. "the Boi, received to themselves [ad se], they admit to themselves [sibi] as allies" = "they received among their people and joined to themselves as associates the Boi, who had," etc.

13. sibi: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

As explained in the notes on 1, 1, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on I, 1-29. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. *

Nōrēia, -ae, f. (Ck), Noreia (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. 1.

oppugnō, 1, tr. [ob+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. *

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [re+capiō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with sē, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. *

13. socius, -ci, m. [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. *

asciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, tr. [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). 2.

1. omnīnō, adv. [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. *

duo, duae, duo (App. 49), card. num. adj., two. *

called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so immediately.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Direct object

Ablative of specification

Chap. 6. The Helvetii decide to march through the Roman Province.

1. erant, "there were."

quibus itineribus, "by which." Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, where English usage requires its omission. Case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

quibus . . . possent, "by which they

possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, 5 multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locis vadō trānsitur. ~~†~~ Extrēmum oppidum

2. *difficilis*, -e, *adj.* [*facilis*, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3.

3. *vix*, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. 4.

quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of quī*], by which way or road; in which place, where. *

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in *annōs singulōs*, annually. *

4. *impendeō*, -pendēre, —, —, *intr.* [*in+pendeō*, hang], overhang, impend. 2.

5. *perpaucī*, -ae, -a, *adj.* [*paucī*, few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun*, very few. 4.

6. *multō*, *adv.* [*abl. of multus*, much], by far, much. 4.

facilis, -e, *adj.* [*faciō*, do], easy.

4.

expeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of expediō*, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; *as noun*, a light armed soldier. *

7. *Allobrogēs*, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allobroges (ā-lōb'rō-jēz), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. *

nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago.

3.

pācō, 1, *tr.* [*pāx*, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; *pācātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. *

8. *fluō*, *fluere*, *flūxī*, —, *intr.*, flow, run. 2.

vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow. *

could leave home," is a clause of characteristic: App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, a: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1.

domō: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, b: H.-B. 451, a: H. 462, 4.

2. *ūnum (iter)* and *alterum (iter)* are appositives of *itinera duo*; App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282, a: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, 1, a: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map, p. 70. The one involved passing through Pas de l'Écluse, the other involved crossing the Rhone.

3. *vix*: notice its emphatic position before the relative, and cf. note on *quae pertinent*, 1, 8.

4. *dūcerentur*, "could be drawn." This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from *possent* in that here the subjunctive mode has the

potential meaning "could": App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l'Écluse: see map, p. 70.

ut possent: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2, a: H. 570.

5. *prohibēre*: sc. *eōs*.

6. *multō*: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

7. *nūper pācātī erant*: in 61 B.C., after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.

8. *nōn nullis locis*, "at several points." Why is the preposition *in* not used? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

vadō trānsitur, lit. "is crossed by a ford" = "is fordable."

extrēmum: i.e. it is on the northern frontier.

Allobrogum est proximumque Helvëtiôrum finibus Genava.
 10 Ex eô oppidô pôns ad Helvëtiôs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē
 vel persuāsūrôs, quod nōndum bonô animô in populum Rômā-
 num vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrôs ut per suôs
 finēs eôs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem
 comparātis, diem dicunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs
 15 convenient. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. April., L. Pisōne A.
 Gabiniô cōsulibus.

9. Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jĕn'a-vā), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. 3.

10. pôns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. *

11. nōndum, *adv.* [nōn, not+dum], not yet. *

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (*with animô*) friendly; *as noun*, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bona, -ôrum, goods, property, estate; boni, -ôrum, the good, good men or citizens. *Comp.*, melior; *sup.*, optimus (App. 42). *

12. videô, vidēre, vidi, vîsum, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. *

existimô, 1, *tr.* [aestimô], estimate, reckon, think, consider. *

vel, *conj. and adv.* (1) *as conj.*, or; *vel* . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) *as adv.*, even. *

vis, vis (App. 27), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, virēs, strength, force; vim facere, use violence. *

13. eô, ire, ii (ivî), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. *

patior, pati, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. *

14. rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream). *

15. conveniô, -venire, -vĕni, -ven-

9. est might more naturally have stood before Genava.

10. Allobrogibus . . . persuāsūrôs existimābant, "they thought they should either persuade the Allobroges." persuāsūrôs (*esse*) is the principal verb in indirect discourse: cf. note on *perfacile esse*, 2, 5. In direct discourse their thought was *persuādēbimus*, "we shall persuade."

11. quod vidērentur is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

bonô animô, "of a friendly disposition" or "well disposed." Case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. vel coāctūrôs (*esse*), "or should compel them": in the same construction as *persuāsūrôs*.

ut paterentur is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, the object of both *persuāsūrôs* and *coāctūrôs*.

13. omnibus rēbus comparātis, "when they had made everything ready."

14. quā diē: cf. note on *quibus iñneribus*, I. 1.

quā diē omnēs convenient, "on which they should all assemble." Mode? App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 2: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 502, 1: H. 590.

15. a. d. V. Kal. April. = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs* = *diē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprilēs*. The former phrase is idiomatic but can not be parsed. In all such reckonings the Romans counted both ends, while we count but one. The date here meant is the twenty-eighth of March, which we should consider the fourth day before the

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest

tum, *tr. and intr.* [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; be agreed upon; *impersonal*, be convenient, suitable, necessary. *

quintus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quinque, five], fifth. 3.

Kal., *abbr. for Kalendae*, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. 1.

April., *abbr. for Aprilis*, -e, *adj.*, of April, April. 2.

L., *abbr. for Lūcius*, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), Caesar's father-in-law, consul 58 B.C. 2.

A., *abbr. for Aulus* (aw'lūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

16. Gabinius, -nī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius

(aw'lūs ga-bin'i-ūs), consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. 1.

1. Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'li-ūs sē'zar), conqueror of Gaul and author of the *Commentaries*. *

nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntius, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. *

2. mātūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. 2.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; especially, the city, Rome. 2.

3. ulteriōr, -ius, *adj., comp.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. *

4. perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; of property, fall, revert. *

first of April, instead of the fifth.

L. Pisōne . . . cōsulibus: cf. note on 2, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition

Purpose clauses

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. Caesarī: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become proconsul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.

cum nūntiātum esset: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

id, "this fact," is explained by its appositive, the clause, eōs . . . cōnārī, "that they were planning, etc." eōs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 203, R. 1; 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. cōnārī: construc-

tion? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589; 591: H. 642.

2. ab urbe, "from [near] the city," instead of *ex urbe*, because one who held a military command could not legally be in the city.

quam maximis potest itineribus, lit. "by (as great) day's journeys as the greatest he can" = "by as long day's journeys as possible." *quam maximis itineribus* would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. ulteriōrem = *trānsalpīnam*, "beyond the Alps" from Rome.

4. ad Genavam: use of preposition? App. 131, a: G.-L. 337, R. 4: A. 423, a: B. 182, 3: H.-B. 453, 1: H. 418, 4.

prōvinciae imperat, "he levied upon the province."

5 militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre
legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi
dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum
mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātīōnis Nammēius et
Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi
10 esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere,
proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius

5. miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (*opposed to equitēs*); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers *upon*. *

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*in+parō*, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. *

6. legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*legō*, choose], a legion. *

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scisum, *tr.* [*re+scindō*, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. 2.

7. adventus, -ūs, *m.* [*veniō*, come], coming, arrival, approach. *

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for crētus, pf. part. of cernō*], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiōrem facere, to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (*ut or nē and subj.*); certiōr fierī, be informed. *

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [*lēgō*, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. *

8. mittō, mittere, misi, missum,

tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. *

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammēius (*nā-mē-yūs*). 1.

9. Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (*vēr'ū-klō'shyūs*), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. 1.

princeps, -ipis, *adj.* [*primus*, first+capīō, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as noun, chief or principal person, leader, chief. *

10. sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. *
ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, ūllius (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. *

maleficiū, -cī, *n.* [*malum*, evil+faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. 4.

11. nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, nūllius, *adj.* [*ne+ūllus*, any], not any, no; as noun, no one, none; nōn nūllus, some; as noun, some, some persons. *

rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. *

5. militum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 308: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

in Galliā: case? App. 151: G.-L. 385: A. 426, 3: B. 228: H.-B. 433: H. 483.

6. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

7. certiōrēs factī sunt, lit. "were made more certain" = "were informed." certiōrēs: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 317, 3; 320, III: H. 394.

8. nōbilissimōs: used as a noun.

9. quī dicerent, "who were to say"

= "to say": a relative clause of purpose.

sibi esse in animō, "that they had in mind" or "intended." sibi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Cf. 8, 17.

rogāre (sc. sē), "that they asked." The speakers said to Caesar rogāmus, "we ask."

ut sibi liceat, "that it be permitted them" or "that they be allowed." For mode see App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 530, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius: i.e. Caesar's.

voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. ^XCaesar, quod memoriā ^Xtenēbat L. Cassium ^Xcōsulem occisum ^Xexercitumque eius ab ^XHelvētiis ^Xpulsum et sub iugum ^Xmissum, ^Xconcēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam 15

12. voluntās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. *

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, intr., impers., it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; **licet mihi**, I may; **petere ut liceat**, to ask permission. *

memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; **memoriā tenēre**, remember; **patrum memoriā**, in the time of our fathers. *

teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, tr., hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; **sē tenēre**, remain; **memoriā tenēre**, remember. *

13. Cassius, -si, m., Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kăsh'yūs lōn-gi'nūs), consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the *Figurini*. 3.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. *

14. pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,

tr., beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. *

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) *With acc.,* (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to; (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.,* (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of; (b) *of time*, during, within; *in compounds, sub or subs*, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. *

iugum, -ī, n. [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. *

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. *

putō, 1, tr., think, consider, believe. *

15. inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in+amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, an enemy (*personal*), rival, to be distinguished from *hostis*, a public enemy. 3.

facultās, -tātis, f. [old *adj.*, *facul*=*facilis*, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. *

12. voluntāte is an ablative of accordance.

tenēbat: mode? App 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

13. occisum, pulsum, missum are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on *memoriā tenēbat*, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of *tenēbat*; "that Lucius Cassius had been slain," etc.

ab Helvētiis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

14. sub iugum, "under the yoke." This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third

fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation.

concēdendum (*esse*), "that permission ought to be granted."

15. hominēs temperātūrōs (*esse*), "that men would refrain." The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought *nōn temperābunt*, "they will not refrain."

animō: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

datā facultāte may be translated by a conditional clause; "if an opportunity should be given."

itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō existi-
mābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs
quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad
dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Aprīl.
30 reverterentur.

16. **temperō**, 1, *intr.*, restrain or control one's self, refrain; **temperātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. 2.

iniuriā, -ae, *f.* [in-+iūs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. *

17. **tamen**, *adv.* (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. *

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. *

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go or come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. 4.

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until. *

18. **respondeō**, -spondere, -spondi, -spōnsum, *tr. and intr.* [spondeō, promise], reply, answer. *

19. **dēliberō**, 1, *tr.* [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmsi, sūmptum,

tr. [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with **supplicium**, inflict; with **labor**, spend. *

sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; **quod sī**, but if, now if. *

quis, **quid**, 'and **quī**, **quae**, **quod** (App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem**, why? **quem ad modum**, how? (2) *indef. pron.*, especially after **sī**, **nisi**, **nō**, **num**, any one, anything, any; somebody, something, some. *

volō, **velle**, **volui**, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet**, what did he intend or mean? *

Idūs, -uum, *f., pl.*, the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months. 1.

20. **revertō**, -vertēre, -verti, -versum, *intr.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and **revertor**, -verti, -versus sum, *intr.*, used in the tenses

16. **itineris faciendī**: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503; 504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 612, I; 613: H. 623; 626.

17. **dum militēs convenirent**, "until the soldiers should arrive."

18. **diem**, "time."

sē sūmptūrum, "that he should take." **ad dēliberandum**: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432, R.: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

19. **sī quid vellent**, "if they wanted anything." Why *quid*? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

20. **reverterentur**, "they should come again." This is a principal clause in indirect discourse, but the subjunctive is used instead of the infinitive because an imperative was used in the

direct form. Caesar said **sī quid vultis**, **revertimini**, "if you want anything, come again." The third (cf. 2, 5 and 3, 17) important fact about indirect discourse is that all imperatives of the direct form become subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 287: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate nouns and adjectives

Agreement of adjectives

Partitive genitive

Subject of infinitive

Substantive volitive (or purpose) clause

Causal clauses with quod, etc.

Infinitive in indirect discourse

Gerund

Gerundive

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum XIX mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perducit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia 5 dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invītō trānsire

*formed on the present stem [re-+vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. **

1. *intereā, adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. **4.**

3. *inflūō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, intr.* [fluō, flow], flow into, empty into. *

4. *undēviginti (XIX), card. num. adj., indecl.* [ūnus, one+de, from+viginti, twenty], nineteen. **2.**

mūrus, -ī, m., a wall. *

altitudō, -inis, f. [altus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (of timber). *

5. *pēs, pedis, m.*, the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; *pedibus*, on foot; *pedem referre*, retreat. *

sēdecim (XVI), card. num. adj., indecl., sixteen. **2.**

fossa, -ae, f. [*pf. part. fem. of fodiō, dig*], trench, ditch. *

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum,

tr. [ducō, lead], lead through or along, conduct; bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. 4.

opus, operis, n., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; *nātūrā et opere*, by nature and art; *opera*, crafts. *

praesidium, -dī, n. [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. *

6. *dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr.* [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. **2.**

castellum, -ī, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. *

commūniō, 4, tr. [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. **1.**

quō, conj. [abl. case form of quī, who,

Chap. 8. Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.

1. *legiōnem militibusque*: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401, R. 1: A. 409: B. 218, 10: H.-B. 423, a: H. 476.

2. *ā lacū . . . ad montem*: see map, p. 70.

4. *milia*: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387: H. 417.

milia passuum XIX = about 17½ English miles. This is the distance from the lake to Pas de l'Écluse, following the windings of the river. Caesar's plain statement is that he constructed a wall and a trench nineteen miles in length. Napoleon III believed that the banks of the river were so steep for most of the distance that no artificial fortifications were needed, and the map on p. 70 shows the only places where he believed that Caesar con-

structed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. Napoleon's view is generally accepted, but there are good grounds for doubting its correctness.

in altitudinem pedum sēdecim, lit. "of sixteen feet into height" = "sixteen feet high." *pedum*: App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. The "section of Caesar's wall," set into the map, p. 70, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the *mūrus*. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

6. *dispōnit*, "stationed at several points." Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore sta-

cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōentur, prohibītūrū ostendit. Helvētiī

which], in order that, so that, that. *

invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invitō**, against his will. *

8. veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, intr., come, arrive, go, advance; **in spem venire**, have hopes; *pass. often imper.*, as **ventum est**, they came, it came, etc. *

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1.

9. exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent. 2.

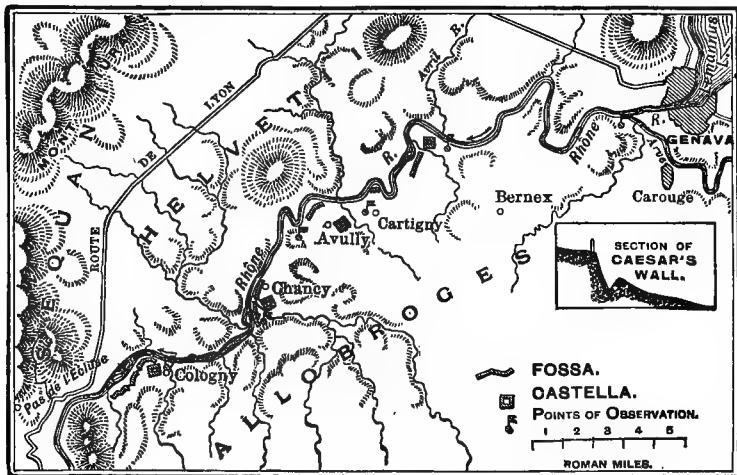
10. ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, tr. [obs+**tendō**, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. *

tioned detachments (*praesidia*) in *castella*, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

G.-L. 409: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.

8. negat sē posse, "he said that he could not."

mōre et exemplō: case? App. 142, a:



CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

quō facilius posset: when is *quō* used in purpose clauses? App. 225, a, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, 2, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b: H. 568, 7.

sī cōnārentur, "if they should try."

sē invitō: construction? App. 150:

G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

10. sī . . . cōentur, "if they should try to use force."

prohibitūrū (sc. *se . . . esse*), "that he would stop them."

^X
eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, alii vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis munitiōne et militum concursū et telis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

15

9. Relinquēbatur ūna per Sēquanōs viā, quā Sēquanis

11. dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -lectum, *tr.* [*laciō*, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. *

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; nāvis longa, galley, ship of war; nāvis onerāria, transport. *

iungō, iungere, iūxī, iūctum, *tr.*, join or unite together, attach, connect. 4.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. 2.

complūrēs, -a, *adj.* [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. *

12. parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; minus, *as noun*, less; *sup.*, minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. *

13. numquam, *adv.* [ne+umquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. 3.

interdiū, *adv.* [diēs, day], during the day, by day. 1.

11. eā spē dēiectī, lit. "cast down from this expectation" = "disappointed in this expectation." spē: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 402: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2, footnote: H. 464.

nāvibus iūctis, "by joining together boats," and thus making a pontoon bridge.

12. alii: we should expect some corresponding word in the previous phrase, nāvibus . . . factis. The meaning is that most of the Helvetii tried to cross by boats and rafts, but others by fords.

13. si possent, "(to see) whether they could." For this use of si, see App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, 1, b; 467: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a; H. 649, II, 3.

14. concursū: cf. note on dispōnit, 1. 6.

noctū, *adv.* [nox, night], by night. 4.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. 1.

14. munitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. *

concursum, -ūs, *m.* [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. 2.

tēlum, -i, *n.*, a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. *

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [re+pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. 4.

15. cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

dēistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4.

1. relinquo, -linquere, -liqui, -lic-

repulsi, "were repulsed and."

15. cōnātū is an ablative of separation.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of extent of space

Ablative of separation

Ablative of means

Ablative absolute

Chap. 9-15. The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reinforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.

Chap. 9. The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

1. ūna viā, "only the way." This was through Pas de l'Écluse, the way mentioned in 6, 2.

quā, "and by this." Case? App. 144:

invītis propter angustias ire, nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrarent. 5 Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditatē rēgnī adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habere obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs

tum, *tr.* [re-+linquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. *

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. *

2. propter, *prep.* with acc. [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. *

angustiae, -arum, *f. pl.* [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. *

3. spontis, *gen.*, and sponte, *abl.* (obsolete *nom.*, spōns, *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. 2.

4. dēprecātor, *m.* [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1.

impetrō, 1, *tr.* [in+patrō, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request); impetrāre ā (ab), gain permission from, persuade. *

5. grātiā, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing],

favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām habere, to feel grateful; grātiām referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiām referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiām inire, to gain favor; grātiā following a *gen.*, for the purpose of, in order to. *

largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [largior, bribe], bribery. 1.

8. novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, novissimus, -a, -um, latest, last; as *noun* or with *agmen*, those in the rear, the rear. *

studeō, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accustom one's self to. *

beneficium, -ci, *n.* [bene, well+faciō, do]; well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. *

9. obstringō, -stringere, -strinxi,

G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

Sēquanīs invītis, "if the Sequani should refuse." Ablative absolute.

2. cum possent: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

suā sponte, "by their own efforts" or "by themselves." The phrase usually means "of their own accord."

3. Dumnorigem: this is the Dumnorix who is mentioned in 3, 13 as having conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

4. ut impetrarent is a clause of purpose.

eō dēprecātore, lit. "he being mediator" = "by his mediation."

5. grātiā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

6. Helvētiis: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

8. rēbus: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 1.

suō . . . obstrictās, lit. "to hold bound by his kindness" = "to keep under obligations."

impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque 10
utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs
prohibeant; Helvētīi, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

10. Caesari renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum
Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī
nōn longē ā Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prō-
vinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae

-strictum, *tr.* [stringō, tie], bind, hold
under obligations, pledge. 2.

itaque, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, there-
fore, accordingly. *

10. obses, -idis, *m. and f.* [obsideō,
blockade], one that is guarded, hostage;
pledge, security. *

1. renūtiō, 1, *tr.* [re-+nūntius, mes-
sage], bring back word, bring news,
report; declare elected. *

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar's
narrative we find that states were
obliged to bind themselves to carry out
their agreements by giving hostages.
The hostages were usually the children
of the most influential men of the state,
and were liable to enslavement or death
if the state failed to fulfill its agree-
ment.

11. Sēquanī, Helvētīi: *sc. obsidēs
dent*; i.e. the Sequani bound themselves
not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses
are substantive volitive clauses, objects
of the implied phrase "bind themselves."

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with special verbs

Dative with adjectives

Chap. 10. Caesar brings more troops
from Italy.

1. Caesari: case? App. 114, c: G.-L.
345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H.
424; 425, 1.

renūtiātur: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L.
229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H.
532, 3. Caesar had sent out spies and
scouts to report the movements of the
Helvetii.

Helvētiis: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349:
A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

2. Santonī, -ōrum, or Santonēs,
-um, *m.* (Dcd), the Santoni (sān'tō-nī),
or Santones (sān'tō-nēz). 3.

3. Tolosātēs, -lum, *m.*, the Tolosates
(tōl'ō-sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa. 1.

4. intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum,
tr. [inter+legō, choose, select], select
or distinguish between; understand;
know; see, perceive, realize; find out,
learn. *

esse is the subject of renūtiātur.

2. facere is the subject of esse.

3. nōn longē: the distance is really
about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would
be more dangerous in the territory of
the Santones than in their own country,
because they would no longer be hemmed
in by natural barriers. Caesar had reason
to fear that either the Helvetii or the
Gauls whom they should drive from
their homes would raid the Province;
and since it was his duty to protect the
Province he was justified in forcing the
Helvetii to remain at home. He does
not choose to add, however, that this
movement of the Helvetii gave him an
excellent opportunity to interfere in the
affairs of Gaul, and thereby fitted in
with his plans for the conquest of the
country.

4. id sī fieret, "if this should be car-
ried out," is a subordinate clause in in-
direct discourse, depending on futūrum:
mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B.
314: H.-B. 534, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar's
thought was, "if this shall be carried
out [future indicative], it will, etc."

magnō . . . futūrum, "that it would
be (attended) with great danger to the
province." prōvinciae is a genitive.

5 futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemā-
10 bant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem

5. **bellicōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. 3.

6. **patēns**, -entis, *adj.* [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supply of grain, provisions. *

7. **T.** *abbr. for Titus* (tī' tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tī' tūs ā' shyūs lā' bi-ē' nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda 45 B.C. *

8. **praeficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. 4.

5. **ut habēret** is the subject of *futūrum*: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

inimicōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.

locis is probably a dative depending on *finitimōs*, though it may be an ablative of place.

6. **habēret**: *sc. prōvincia*.

7. **mūnitiōnī**: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370, a, note 1: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

lēgātum: see Int. 38.

8. **Italiam**: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, which was one of the provinces under his proconsular command.

itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. *

9. **ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place. *
cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. *

circum, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. 2.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (āk'wī-lē'ya), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. 1.

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. *

10. **hiberna**, -ōrum, *n.* [*sc. castra*, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. *
ēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). *

9. **cōnscribit**: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions,—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 24,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in chap. 29.

10. **hibernis**: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 426, 1: B. 229: H.-B. 408, 1: H. 461.

quā proximum iter erat, "where there was the shortest route." He chose the pass of Mount Genève, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 42. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their

Galliam per Alpēs erat cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Centronēs et Graciocēli et Caturigēs, locis superioribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibere cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiorum ulteriōris prōvinciae 15 diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant

11. Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.* (Cghi), the Alpes (āl'pēz), better, the Alps. *

quinque (V), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, five. 4.

12. Ceutronēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz). 1.

Graciocēli, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Gracioceli (grā-yōs'ē-li). 1.

Caturigēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kāt'ū-rī-jēz). 1.

superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of superior*, high. App. 44], (1) *of place*, upper, higher, superior; (2) *of time*, previous, earlier, former. *

14. Ocelum, -ī, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ōs'ē-lūm). 1.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (=Cis-

alpina), Cisalpine Gaul, *on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps.* *

15. Vocontii, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kōn'shyi). 1.

16. septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seventh. *

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. *

17. Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sēg'ū-shī-ā'vī). 1.

extrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. 1.

18. primus, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; *in primis*, especially. *

2. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [trāns+dūcō, lead], lead across,

country. It is estimated that Caesar spent two months in securing his reinforcements.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 420: H. 473, 1.

13. complūribus . . . proeliis: English order, his pulsīs (ablative absolute) complūribus proeliis (ablative of means).

15. prōvinciae: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

17. in Segusiāvōs: i.e. into that part of their territory which lies between the Rhone and the Arar. He encamped on the heights above the city of Lyons. Labienus must have rejoined him there.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive

Indirect object

Dative with compound verbs

Ablative of place from which

Ablative of accompaniment

Historical present

Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.

1. iam, "by this time."

angustias: at Pas de l'Écluse.

2. pervēnerant: i.e. the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from

eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaue ab iis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum
 5 auxilium: Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum,

lead over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. *

3. **populor**, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. 4.

4. **dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, *tr.* [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. *

5. **auxilium**, -li, *n.* [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops; reinforcements. *

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; ut . . . **ita**, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; **nōn ita**, not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut**, just . . . as; so . . . that. *

mereō, and **mereor**, 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (*i.e.* earn pay). 3.

6. **paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost. * **cōspectus**, -ūs, *m.* [cōspiciō, look at], sight, view; presence. *

vāstō, 1, *tr.* [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. 3.

liberī, -ōrum, *m.*, [liber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. *

7. **servitūs**, -ūtis, *f.* [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. *

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. 1.

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. *

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [dē+habeō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with *inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. *

8. **Ambarri**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri (ām-bār'i), clients of the Haeduī. 2.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with *tempus*, critical; as *noun*, kinsman, friend. *

cōsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; as *noun*, kinsman, relative. 3.

that river. They had traveled only about a hundred miles during the two months of Caesar's absence. Much of this time, however, had been spent in negotiations with the Sequani. Their line of march must have been at least fifty miles in length, and their progress was necessarily slow, especially at the pass. For their route see the map facing p. 42.

3. **cum possent**: causal.

suaue, "and their property."

4. **rogātum**: form and use? App. 295: G.-L. 435, n. 3: A. 509: B. 340, 1, a: H.-B. 618, a: H. 632, 1; 633.

5. **omni tempore**, "on every occasion."

meritōs esse depends on the idea of "saying" which is implied in *rogātum*. About sixty years before, the Haeduī had been called "brothers" of the Roman people, and ever since that time their relations with Rome had been friendly; but we do not know that they had ever been of assistance to Rome.

6. **ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint**, "that their lands ought not to have been devastated." **dēbuerint**: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

nostrī = Rōmānī. It agrees with *exercitūs*.

Caesarem certiorē faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agris nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostiū prohibere. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possēssiōnēsq̄ habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquū. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūmptis, in Santonōs Helvētiū pervenirent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et

9. dēpopulor, 1, tr. [populor, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. 2.

10. hostis, -is, m., f., (public) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; pl., the enemy. *

11. possēssiō, -ōnis, f. [possideō, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. 4.

fuga, -ae, f., flight; in fugam conicere or dare, put to flight. *

12. dēmōstrō, 1, tr. [mōstrō, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. *

praeter, prep. with acc. [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. *

solum, -ī, n., bottom; ground, soil, earth. 1.

nihil, indecl. noun, n., nothing; with gen., no, none of; acc. as adv., not, not at

all, by no means; nōn nihil, somewhat. *

13. exspectō, 1, tr. [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. *

14. statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, tr. [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. *

fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. *

cōsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum, tr. [sūmō, take], take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. 3.

1. Arar, Araris (acc. -im), m. (CDfg), the Arar (ā'rār), the modern Saone. 4.

9. sēsē dēpopulātis agris, "that their lands had been laid waste and that they," etc. In a number of deponent verbs the perfect participle is used with a passive meaning.

10. Allobrogēs, quī ... habēbant: most of the Allobroges were south of the Rhone and were not troubled; but the map shows that some were north of the river and on the route of the Helvetii.

12. sibi nihil esse reliquū, "that to them there was nothing of a remainder" = "that they had nothing left." sibi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. reliquū is used as a noun and is a partitive genitive: App. 101, a: G.-L. 369, R. 2: A. 346, u, 1: B. 201, 2, a: H.-B. 346, a: H. 440, 5, note.

13. quibus: use of relative? App.

173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 303, 2: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

nōn exspectandum (sc. esse) sibi, "that it was not to be waited by him" = "that he must not wait." exspectandum: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237. sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 215, 2: A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

14. dum pervenirent, "until they should arrive."

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative of possessor

Relative instead of demonstrative

Chap. 12. Caesar destroys the Tigurini, the rearguard of the Helvetii.

1. flūmen est Arar, "there is a river (named) the Arar."

Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibīlī lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. Ubi per explorātōrēs 5 Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trāns-

2. **incrēdibilis**, -e, *adj.* [*in* + *crēdibilis*, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. 4.

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [*lēnis*, smooth], smoothness, gentleness. 1.

3. **oculus**, -i, *m.*, eye. 3.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *gen. utrius* (App. 32), *adj.* (1) *as interrog.*, which one or which of two; (2) *as rel.*, the one who, of two, whichever. 1.

iūdicō, 1, *tr.* [*iūdex*, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. *

4. **linter**, -tris, *f.*, skiff, rowboat, canoe. 2.

explorātor, -ōris, *m.* [*explorō*, search out], explorer, scout, spy. *

6. **quārtus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [*quattuor*, four], fourth. *

citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 3.

7. **vigilia**, -ae, *f.* [*vigil*, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. *

castrum, -i, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra**, **castrōrum**, fortified camp, camp; **castra facere** *or* **pōnere**, pitch camp; **castra movēre**, break up camp. *

2. **incrēdibilī lēnitāte**, "of remarkably slow current": descriptive ablative.

ut possit: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant "can," not "could." Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; at the same time, however, they are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

3. **in . . . fluat**, "in which direction it flows": mode? App. 202: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

4. **ratibus**, **lintribus**: ablatives of means.

iūctis modifies only **lintribus**.

trānsibant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle.

5. **trēs . . . trādūxisse**, "that the Helvetii had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river." The verb *trādūxisse* governs two objects, — *partēs* depending on the meaning of the simple verb *dūcō*, *flūmen* depending on the meaning of the preposition *trāns*: App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 388, b: B. 175, 2, a, 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406.

6. **citrā**: i.e. on the east.

7. **dē tertiā vigiliā**, "just after (the beginning of) the third watch" = "just after midnight."

legiōnibus: how many men in a legion? Int. 33.

ierat. ⁴ Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in 10 proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, 15 quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitatem populō

9. **impeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of impediō*, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. *

inopināns, -antis, *adj.* [*in-*+*opīnāns*, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. 2.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [*ad*+*gradior*, step], advance to or against; attack. 4.

10. **concidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, *tr.* [*caedō*, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. 3.

mandō, 1, *tr.* [*manus*, hand+*dō*, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. *

11. **silva**, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. *

abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [*dō*, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. *

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun*, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tig'ū-rī'ni). 2.

12. **nam**, *conj.*, for. *

quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., four. *

14. **interficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum, *tr.* [*faciō*, make], make away with, kill, destroy. *

15. **sive** and **seu**, *conj.* [*sī*, if+*ve*, or], or if, if; or; whether; sive . . . sive, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or. *

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [*cadō*, fall], what be-falls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsū, by chance. *

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, diī; *dat. pl.*, dis), *m.*, god, deity. 4.

immortalis, -e, *adj.* [*in-*+*mortalis*, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3.

16. **insignis**, -e, *adj.* [*signō*, mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. 4.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. *

10. **mandārunt** = *mandāvērunt*: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

in silvās: from the English point of view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into,—"ran into and hid."

13. **cum exisset**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1. **exisset** = *exisset*.

memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

14. **Cassium**, *subiugum*: cf. 7, 13, 14.

16. **quae pars . . . ea**, "that part which." Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes the antecedent.

populō: the compound *inferō* governs the indirect object.

Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, 20 Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōti, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen 5 trānsirent, illū unō diē, fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad

17. **persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum**, *tr.* [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). 1.

18. **solum**, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. *

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; *n. as noun*, public, public view; **rēs pūblica**, common weal, state. *

sed, *conj.*, but, but yet (*a stronger ad- versative than autem or at*). *

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, tr., avenge; punish, take vengeance on. 3.

19. **socer, -erī, m.**, father-in-law. 1.

avus, -ī, m., grandfather. 2.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō),

killed in the defeat of Cassius's army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C. 1.

2. **cōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr.** [sequor, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. *

cūrō, 1, tr. [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; *with gerundive* (App. 285, II, b), have, order. 4.

3. **repentinus, -a, -um, adj.** [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. 3. **commoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr.** [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. *

4. **vigintī (XX), card. num. adj.**, indecl., twenty. *

aegrē, adv. [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, **aegrius; sup.**, **aegerrimē** (App. 40). 3.

17. **princeps persolvit**, "was the first to pay."

19. Note the accumulation of appositives, — **Pisōnis** with **socerī**, **Pisōnem** with **avum**, **lēgātum** with **Pisōnem**.

socerī: in the year 59 Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of the Lucius Calpurnius Piso mentioned in 6, 15 as one of the consuls for the year 58.

20. **quō Cassium**: the same verb *interfēcerant* belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of time

Result clause

Narrative cum clause

Chap. 13. The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.

1. **ut** would usually stand before *reliquās*.

2. **pontem faciendum cūrat**, "he had a bridge made": construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40.

in Ararī, "over the Arar."

4. **cum intellegent**, "since they saw," or better "seeing." The object of *intellegent* is *illum fēcisse*. **id** is the object of *fēcisse*. **ut transirent**, "(namely) the crossing of the river," is in apposition with *id*: mode? App. 229, a: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 568: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 4.

5. **lēgātōs**, "envoys."

eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: ~~Si~~ pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellō persequī perseverāret, remi- 10 nisceretur et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et pristinae

6. Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divloo (dīv'i-kō), an Helvetian chieftain. 2.

7. Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, see Cassius. 1.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (*conventum*); give, render (*grātiās*); plead (*causam or rem*); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. *

6. Divico was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.

7. The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned,—that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, and that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

si, *conj.*, if however, but if. 1.

10. persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. 2.

perseverō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. 1.

reminiscor, -i, *intr.* [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. 1.

11. vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; with militēs, veteran. *

incommodum, -i, *n.* [incommodus,

si ./. . faceret. "if . . . should make." Only the sense of the passage shows that faceret stands for an original future rather than a present, and for an indicative rather than a subjunctive.

9. Helvētiōs is the subject of itūrōs and futūrōs.

eōs is the subject of esse.

ubi cōstituisset, "where he should have decided"="where he should decide" or "where he decided." The pluperfect can stand equally well for the perfect, the pluperfect, or the future perfect; but the Helvetii do not promise to return to their own country, and Caesar had not yet decided to settle them anywhere else; therefore cōstituisset must stand for a future perfect, a tense rarely used in English.

10. perseverāret stands for a future, like faceret, 1. 8.

reminisceretur, "he should remember." Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative. App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

11. et . . . et, "both . . . and."

incommodi: i.e. the defeat of Cassius: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A.

virtūtis Helvētiōrum.) Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret
 15 aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent

inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. 1.

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. [*for pri-
 ustinus, from prior, former*], former,
 original; previous, preceding. 4.

12. imprōvisō, adv. [*imprōvisus, un-
 foreseen*], unexpectedly, without warn-
 ing. 1.

adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, tr.
 [*orior, arise*], rise against, assail, at-
 tack. *

13. ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (App. 81),
tr. and intr.; *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; en-
 dure, suffer, support, withstand; re-
 ceive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*);
 offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter or mo-
 lestē ferre**, be annoyed or angry at;
pass. (sometimes) rush: intr. almost =
verb to be. *

14. magnopere, adv. [*magnus, great*
 + *opus, work*], with great labor; espe-
 cially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. *

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum,
tr. [*tribus, a tribe or division*], di-
 vide, distribute; attribute, assign, al-
 lot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of,
 render. 2.

**15. dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
 tum, tr.** [*speciō, look*], look down; look
 down upon, scorn, despise. 2.

maior, maius, adj. [*comp. of mag-
 nus, great*], greater (*in degree, size, time,*
etc.); older, elder; *as noun, maiōrēs*
nātū, elders, old men; **maiōrēs**, an-
 cestors. *

16. discō, discere, didici, —, tr. and
intr., learn, be taught. 1.

dolus, -ī, m., craft, trick, treach-
 ery. 2.

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. [*sedeō, sit*], a
 sitting or lying in wait; ambush, am-
 buscade; treachery; artifice, crafty
 device. *

17. nitor, nitī, nixus sum, intr. rest
 or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, en-
 deavor. 1.

quārē, adv. [*quī, which + rēs, thing*],
 (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*,
 wherefore; on this account, there-
 fore. *

committō, -mittere, -misī, -missum,
tr. [*mittō, send*], join, splice; commit
 (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; entrust;
proelium committere, join or begin
 battle. *

cōsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, intr.
 [*sistō, stand*], take a stand or position,
 keep one's position, stand, form (*of*
soldiers); stop, halt, remain, stay; (*of*
ships) ride at anchor; consist in, depend
 or rest on. *

350, c: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

12. quod adortus esset, "as to the
 fact that he had attacked."

14. nē suae magnopere virtūti
tribueret, lit., "he should not greatly
 ascribe to his own prowess" = "he should
 not overrate his own prowess." For
 mode cf. *remīniscerētur*, l. 10.

15. ipsōs, sē: i.e. the Helvetii.

16. ut contenderent: a result clause.
magis quam, "rather than."

dolō: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n.
 6: A. 481: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

17. The meaning of the last sentence
 is, "Do not let the spot on which we
 stand become famous as the scene of
 your bloody defeat."

cōstitissent stands for a perfect in-

ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent, qui sī alicuius iniūriāe sibi cōnsciūs fuisset, nōn fuisse difficīle cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod s

18. interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [necō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. 2.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; nōmine *with gen.*, in the name of, as; suō nōmine, on his or their own account, personally. *

19. prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; memoriā prōditum, told in tradition, handed down. 2.

1. dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. 1.

2. commemorō, 1, *tr.* [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. *

3. graviter, *adv.* [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take

to heart, be annoyed or vexed (*at*); graviter premere, press hard. *

meritum, -ī, *n.* [mereor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. 2.

4. accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; accidit, it happens. *

aliquis, -quid, *and* aliquī, -qua, -quod, *indef. pron.* [quis, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; any one, anything, any. *

cōnsciūs, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], conscious; aware. 1.

5. caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. 1.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], entrap; deceive. 1.

dicative: "where they had taken their stand" for "where we have taken our stand."

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive clause of result or fact

Chap. 14. Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. hīs: i.e. the envoys.

eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the causal clause quod . . . tenēret.

minus dubitātiōnis, "less hesitation." dubitātiōnis: partitive genitive.

2. eās rēs: i.e. the defeat of Cassius.

3. eō . . . quō: case? App. 148, a: G.-L. 403: A. 414, a: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

meritō: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

4. quī sī, "now if they." Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun *populus*, but English prefers the plural.

iniūriāe, "of wrong doing": case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote 1: H. 451, n. 2.

sibi, lit. conscious "to themselves," should not be expressed in translating.

5. nōn fuisse difficīle, "it would not have been difficult."

eō, is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause quod . . . putāret.

dēceptum: sc. *populum Rōmānum* . . . esse.

neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod si veteris contumēliae) oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod
 10 Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod (suā victoriā) tam insolenter glōriārentur, quōdque tam diū sē impūne iniuriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem

6. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. *

7. contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.

obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum, *intr.* [oblivio, forgetfulness], forget. 1.

8. num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* 1.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.

9. temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. 4.

10. vexō, 1, *tr.* [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

6. commissum (*sc. quicquam . . . esse*), "that anything had been done."

ā sē, "by them"; i.e. the Roman people.

quārē timēret, "because of which they should be afraid." For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

7. timendum, *lit.* "that it must be feared" = "that they need fear": construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

quod si, "but if."

contumēliae: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, b: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

8. vellet: the subject is still *populus Rōmānus*.

num posse, "they could not, could they," or simply "could they." This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II:

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. 3.

11. victoriā, -ae, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. *

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. *

insolenter, *adv.* [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1.

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. 1.

12. diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; *comp.*, diūtius, longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, diūtissimē, for the longest time. *

impūne, *adv.* [in-+poena, punishment], without punishment. 1.

admīror, 1, *tr.* [mīror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. 1.

G.-L. 651, R. 1: A. 586: B. 315, 2: H.-B. 591, a: H. 642, 2.

iniuriarum depends on *memoriam*: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

quod, "the fact that." These are substantive *quod* clauses, in apposition with *iniuriarum*. In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

eō=populō Rōmānō.

11. quod . . . admīrārentur are substantive *quod* clauses, subjects of *per-tinēre*.

victoriā: i.e. the defeat of Cassius. For case see App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

12. sē intulisse, "that they [the Helvetii] had inflicted."

eōdem pertinēre, "tended to the same result."

pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortalēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum dolēant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturni- 15
ōrem impūnitatem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduis dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis pacem esse factūrum. ~~A~~ Dīuicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus 20
suis institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint;

13. cōnsuēsco, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *intr.* [suēsco, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; cōnsuētus, *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. *

enim, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact, however. *

14. commūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō, change], a changing, change. 2.

doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. 2.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 1.

15. secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flūmine, down the river. *

interdum, *adv.* [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], long. 1.

16. impūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [in+poena, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. 1.

17. polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.* [prō+liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. *

19. satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [satis, enough+faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. 2.

21. instituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr. and intr.* [statuō, set up],

13. cōnsuēsse=cōnsuēvisse.

quō: for use see 8, 6.

14. doleant: so far the subjunctive tenses have all been imperfects and pluperfects, because the indirect discourse depends on the past verb *respondit*. But it is quite common for the writer of indirect discourse to use the tenses that were used in the direct form instead of following the rule of sequence of tenses. Thus presents and perfects are used to the end of the chapter. This usage, called *repraesentatio*, is due to the same desire for vividness which leads to the use of the historical present for a past tense. It is usually better to translate as if the regular past tenses were used, just as it is better to translate the historical present indicative by a past.

15. secundiōrēs rēs, "a considerable degree of prosperity"; diūturniōrem, "quite long." The comparative may often be rendered by such words as "too," "rather," "quite," all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. concēdere depends on cōnsuēsse.

cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the *tamen* which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

17. ab iis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

factūrōs: sc. sē . . . esse.

18. si Haeduis: sc. satisfaciant.

ipsis: i.e. the Haedui.

19. sēsē: i.e. Caesar.

eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī aliēnō locō

set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; *institūtus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. *

accipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [ad+capio, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. *

22. *testis*, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. 2.

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [respondeō, answer], reply, answer. 2.

23. *discedō*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with *ab* or *ex*). *

1. *posterus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [post, after], after, following, next; in *m. pl. as noun*, posterity; *sup.*, *postrēmus* or *postumus*, last. *

moveō, *movēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence;

with *castra*, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. *

2. *equitātus*, -ūs, *m.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. *

4. *praemittō*, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send before or in advance. *

5. *cupidō*, *adv.* [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in *agmine*, on the march; *primum agmen*, the van; *novissimum* or *extrēmum agmen*, the rear. *

insequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr. and intr.* [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. *

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; *aes aliēnum*, debt; *aliēnissimī*, entire strangers. 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive

Ablative of agent

Ablative of cause

Ablative of degree of difference

Adversative cum clause

Chap. 15. The Helvetii march on, followed by Caesar. His cavalry are defeated.

1. *castra movent*, "march on." The map facing p. 42 shows the route followed by the Helvetii. They could not march due west toward the Santones because the country is too mountainous. They therefore marched north, then northwest, intending to reach the Liger

(Loire) and march down its valley.

2. *equitātum*: see Int. 48.

3. *quem coāctum habēbat*, "which he had collected," almost=*quem coēgerat*: App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

4. *quī videant*: a purpose clause. *quī* is plural, agreeing with the collective noun *equitātum*.

quās . . . faciant, "in what direction the enemy were marching." *faciant*: mode? App. 282: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

5. *cupidius*: cf. note on 14, 15.

locō: case? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

cum equitatū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.* (used rarely in sing.), few; as noun, few persons or things. *

7. cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3. quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [quīque, five+centum, hundred], five hundred. 3.

8. eques, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). *

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; quantō . . . tantō, with comparatives, see quantō. *

prōpellō, -pellere, -pull, -pulsus, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. 2.

audācter, *adv.* [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. *Comp.*, audācius; *sup.*, audācissimē. *

9. subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. 1.

10. lacessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. *

coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and a), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; coeptus, *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. *

11. praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. 1.

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [rapīō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. 1.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1.

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1.

12. circiter, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. *

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [quīque, five+decem, ten], fifteen. *

6. paucī dē nostrīs, "a few of our men." The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix, as Caesar afterwards learned.

9. novissimō . . . lacessere, "to challenge our men to battle with their rearguard." Both agmine and proeliō are ablatives of means.

10. satis habēbat . . . prohibēre, "considered it sufficient . . . to keep." Caesar had never before commanded so

large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. ita utī, "in such a way that," introduces a result clause.

primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum
15 interesset.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent
pūblicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia
sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo
frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis

14. **amplus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius**, *comp. as noun*, more, a greater number, a greater distance. *

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [quīnque, five], five each, five at a time, five. 1.
sēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. 1.

15. **intersum**, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present at, take part in; *impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; **magnī interest**, it is of great importance. 3.

1. **interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. *

cotīdiē, *adv.* [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day. *

2. **pūblicē**, *adv.* [pūblicus, public],

publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. 2.

flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. 1.

frigus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, frigora, cold seasons. 1.

3. **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *tr.*, place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; *with castra*, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; *with in and abl.*, depend on, in addition to above meanings. *

modo, *adv.* [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also. *

4. **mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. 3.

pābulum, -i, *n.* [cf. pāscō, feed], fodder, provender. 2.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at

14. **primum**: sc. *agmen*.
amplius is the subject of *interesset*.
quīnīs aut sēnīs, "five or six [each day]."

milibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of place

Chap. 16-20. Caesar learns that Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. 16. The Haedui fail to furnish supplies to Caesar.

1. **interim**: i.e. during the fifteen days of marching.

Haeduōs frūmentum: for the two objects see App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a: A. 396: B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, footnote: H. 411.

quod essent polliciti, "which [as he said] they had promised." This subor-

dinate clause employs the subjunctive to imply that Caesar made the statement in demanding the grain. It is indirect discourse; but, because there is no verb of saying and the clause does not depend on an accusative and infinitive, it is called "implied indirect discourse": App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, n: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.

2. **flāgitāre**=*flāgitābat*. Note that its subject is a nominative. See App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 601.

3. **sub septentriōnibus**, lit. "under the northern stars" = "toward the north."

4. **frūmenta**: the plural means grain standing in the fields.

mātūra nōn erant: it was now late in June.

pābuli: for the cavalry horses and

magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine 5
Ararī nāvibus subvexerat propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter
ab Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.
Diem ex diē dūcere Hæduī; cōferri, comportāri, ades-
sere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē
frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum 10
principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in
hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistratū praeerat, quem

least, truly; on the other hand; nē . . .
quidem, not even. *

6. subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vec-
tum, tr. [vehō, carry], bring or carry
up; convey. 1.

7. āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum,
tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or
away, turn aside; turn back, repulse;
pf. part. as adj., with back turned. *

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, — (App. 82), tr.
and intr. [ne-+volō, wish], not wish,
be unwilling; refuse; imp. nōlī or
nōlite, with inf. (App. 219), do not. *

8. cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collā-
tum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or
get together, collect, gather, carry,
bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put

off, defer; compare; sē cōferre, be-
take one's self, take refuge. *

comportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry
together, collect, bring. *

adsum, adesce, affui, intr. [sum, be.
App. 77], be near or present, be at hand,
appear. 3.

9. instō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, intr.
[stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at
hand, press on; threaten. 4.

10. mētior, mētīri, mēnsus sum, tr.,
deal or measure out, distribute. 2.

convocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call to-
gether, summon, assemble. 4.

12. Liscus, -i, m., Liscus (līsi'kūs), α
chief magistrate of the Hædui. 4.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of supe-

pack animals. The cattle of the Hel-
vetii had swept the country clean.

5. frūmentō ūtī: case? App. 145:
G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H.
477.

flūmine: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389:
A. 429, α: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, α: H. 476.

6. nāvibus, "in ships," is an ablative
of means.

iter āverterant: see map facing p.
42.

8. diem: accusative of duration of
time.

dūcere, "put him off," is an historical
infinitive.

cōferri, comportāri, adesce (sc.
frūmentum) are the objects of the his-
torical infinitive dūcere.

9. ubi intellēxit: mode? App. 237:
G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557:
H. 602.

sē diūtius dūcī, "that he was being
put off too long."

quō diē, "on which." Cf. 6, 1.

10. frūmentum mētīri oportēret,
lit. "for him to measure out grain was
right" = "he had to distribute grain."
This was done twice a month. oportē-
ret: subordinate clause in indirect dis-
course. Its subject is frūmentum
mētīri.

convocātis principibus, "summon-
ing," etc. Remember that the ablative
absolute must not be translated liter-
ally.

12. Diviciācō et Liscō: in apposi-
tion with principibus.

summō . . . praeerat, "held the high-
est office."

quem vergobretum: for the two ob-
jects see App. 126: G.-L. 340; A. 393:
B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, α: H. 410, 1.

vergobretum appellant Haedui, quī creātur annuus et vītā
necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod,
15 cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessariō
tempore, tam propinquīs hōstibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur;
praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus
bellum sūscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus
queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus orātiōne Caesaris adductus quod

rus, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; pre-eminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. *

praesum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesens, pres. part. as adj., present, in person; for the present. *

13. vergobretus, -i, m., vergobret (vēr'gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui. 1.

creō, 1, tr., create; elect, choose, appoint. 1.

annuus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], yearly. 1.

vita, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. 4.

14. nex, necis, f., violent death, death, execution. 1.

potestās, -tātis, f. [potēns, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; potestātem facere, grant permission, give a chance. *

accūsō, 1, tr. [ad+causa, cause, case],

bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. 2.

15. emō, emere, emi, emptum, tr., take; buy, purchase. 2.

16. propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; pl. as noun, relatives. *

sublevō, 1, tr. [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. 3.

17. praesertim, adv., particularly, especially. *

prex, precis, f. (in sing. only in dat., acc., and abl.) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. 2.

18. dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, tr. [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. 1.

19. queror, queri, questus sum, tr. and intr., complain, bewail, lament. *

1. tum, adv., then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also; cum... tum, both... and, not only... but also. *

dēmum, adv., at length, at last, finally. 3.

14. in suōs, "over his fellow-citizens."

quod nōn sublevētur, "because [as he said] he was not aided." This is another case of implied indirect discourse: cf. I. 1, and see App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 649, I.

15. posset: sc. frumentum.

16. tempore may be either ablative absolute or ablative of time; hostibus is an ablative absolute.

17. With praesertim, cum is almost always causal.

magnā ex parte, "in great part."

18. quod sit dēstitūtus: cf. I. 14.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of the way (route)

Ablative with ūtor, etc.

Chap. 17. Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haedui is working against the Romans.

), Supply id as the antecedent of quod and the object of prōpōnit.

antea tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem (plūrimū valeat) quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēdiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: 5 Præstāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab isdem nostra

2. **antea**, *adv.* [ante, before+ea, this], formerly, before, previously, once; always with a verb. 2.

taceō, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence; **tacitus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. 3.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. *

3. **valeō**, 2, *intr.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence, or strength; **plūrimū valēre**, be very powerful. *

privātīm, *adv.* [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. 1.

4. **sēdiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēdiō, sedition], seditious, mutinous. 1.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+probus, good], unprincipled. 1.

5. **dēterrēō**, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. 3.

7. **perferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. *

dubitō, 1, *intr.* [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. *

8. **superō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vītā superāre**, survive. *

9. **libertās**, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. *

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found after Book VII.

3. **valeat**: for tense see note on 14, 14.

quam magistrātūs: the ablative without *quam* might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, a: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 2: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

4. **improbā**, "reckless."

5. **dēterrere nē cōferant**, "were preventing . . . from bringing."

6. **præstāre . . . sint ēreptūrī**, "(saying) that it was better," etc. This is the indirect form of the malcontents' *sēdiōsa ōratiō*. The subject of *præstāre* is *perferre*.

sī (sc. *Haedui*) iam obtinēre nōn pos-

sint, "if they could no longer hold." The Haedui claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. **neque** (sc. *se*) **dubitāre**, "nor did they doubt"; i.e. they said "we do not doubt."

8. **quīn Haeduīs sint ēreptūrī**, "that they would wrest from the Haedui." **Haeduīs**: dative with the compound verb of separation: App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, d: H.-B. 371: H. 429, 2. **sint ēreptūrī**: form? App. 75: G.-L. 129: A. 194, a: B. 115: H.-B. 162: H. 236. Mode? App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, a: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

superāverint, "should conquer," is a perfect subjunctive, for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

ūnā: the adverb.

10 cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūtiārī. Hōs ā
 se coërcērī nōn posse; quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem
 coactus Caesarī ēnūtiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum
 periculō fēcērīt, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc orātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Diviciaci
 frātre, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus
 eas rēs iactārī nolēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum
 retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit
 5 liberis atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit;
 reperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā,

11. coërcēō, 2, *tr.* [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. 1.

necessariō, *adv.* [abl. of necessarius, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. *

12. quantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. quam, how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; quantum, *as adv.*, as much as, as; quantō . . . tantō (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. *

2. dēsignō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1.

sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsū, *tr.*, perceive, be aware of, notice; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. 4.

3. iactō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of iaciō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. 2.

celeriter, *adv.* [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. *Comp.*, celerius; *sup.*, celerrimē (App. 40). *

10. Supply *ea* as the antecedent of *quae* and as one of the subjects of *ēnūtiārī*.

11. sē: i.e. Liscus, the chief magistrate.

12. coactus, "under compulsion."
 quantō . . . fēcērīt is an indirect question, the object of *intellegere*.

Chap. 18. Liscus tells Caesar of the power of Dumnorix, and that he favors the Helvetii.

concilium, -li, *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. *

dīmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. *

4. retineō, 2, *tr.* [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. *

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum, *tr. and intr.*, seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. *

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlius (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. *

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. 1.

5. liberē, *adv.* [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. 2.

6. reperiō, reperire, repperī, repperitum, *tr.* [re-+pariō, procure], pro-

2. plūribus praesentibus, "when many were present."

4. ex sōlō, "from him in private." Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (cf. 16, 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a, R. 1: A. 396, a: B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, c: H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vērā, "he learned that this was the truth"; explained by

magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem grātiā, cupidum rerum novarum. * Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, propterea quod illō licēte contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam 10 (rem familiārem) auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud

cure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. *

vērū, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *n. as noun*, the truth; vērī *similis*, likely, probable. 4.

audācia, -ae, *f.* [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 1.

7. liberālitās, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2.

8. portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll, tariff on imports or exports. 2.

9. vectigal, -ālīs, *n.* [vectigālīs, tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. 2.

pretium, -tī, *n.*, price. 2.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [red-+emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. 3.

10. liceor, 2, *intr.*, bid (at an auction). 2.

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*: (1) as *adv.*, against him or them; on the other

hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) as *prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. *

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. *

nēmō, *acc. nēminem, m. and f.* [ne-+homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. *

11. familiāris, -e, *adj.* [familia, household], personal, private; as *noun*, intimate friend; rēs familiāris, personal property, estate. 4.

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, *tr.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.

largior, 4, *tr.* [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 1.

12. sūmptus, -ūs, *m.* [sūmō, spend], expense. 1.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. 3.

13. alō, alere, alui, altum, *tr.*, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.

the indirect discourse which follows.

ipsum esse Dumnorigem, "that Dumnorix was the very man" or "that it was, in fact, Dumnorix." By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in 4, 5, 6, and the following description of Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles.

summā audāciā, "(a man) of the utmost recklessness." For case see App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

8. rerum: case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 450.

portōria . . . redēpta habēre: instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state farmed

them; i.e. it sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.

9. parvō pretiō: thus defrauding the state. For case see App. 147: G.-L. 404: A. 416: B. 225: H.-B. 427, 1: H. 478.

redēpta habēre: differs how from redēmisse? App. 236, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

10. illō licēte, "when he bid."

12. comparāsse: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

13. domī: case? App. 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

finitimās civitatēs (largiter posse), atque huius potentiae causā
 15 mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illic nobilissimō ac potentissimō
 collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre
 et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs collocāsse. Favēre
 et cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitatem, ōdisse etiam suō
 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia
 20 eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē
 atque honoris sit restituūtus. * Sī quid accidat Rōmānis, sum-
 mam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō
 populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam
 habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō

14. **largiter**, *adv.* [largus, large], largely, freely, much; **largiter posse**, to have great influence. 1.

potentia, -ae, *f.* [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. 2.

15. **māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother; **mātrēs familiae**, matrons. 3.

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bīt'ū-rī'jēz). 1.

illic, *adv.* [ille, that], in that place, there. 1.

16. **collocō**, 1, *tr.* [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage. *

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 3.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. 2.

17. **nūbō**, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. 1.

faveō, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautum**, *intr.*, favor. 1.

18. **cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupivī**, **cupitum**,

tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. *

affinitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. 2.

ōdī, **ōdisse** (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf.* with meaning of pres., hate, detest. 2.

20. **dēminuō**, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.* [minuō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. 1.

antiquus, -a, -ūm, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. 2.

21. **honōs**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. 3.

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [re+statuō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. 4.

24. **dēspērō**, 1, *intr.* [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; **dēspērātus**, *as part.*, from transitive meaning, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. *

14. **causā**: see vocabulary.

16. **collocāsse**: sc. *nūptum*.

ipsum: i.e. Dumnorix. His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix: cf. 3, 15.

sorōrem ex mātre, "sister on his mother's side"; i.e. his half-sister.

17. **nūptum**: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, b: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

in civitatēs: the accusative implies "sent them into and caused them to be married there."

18. **Helvētiis**: indirect object with verbs meaning to favor.

19. **nōmine**: ablative of cause.

20. **dēminūta**: sc. *sit*.

21. **sī quid**: why *quid*? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

summam in spem venīre, "he entertained the highest hopes."

22. **imperiō**, "under the sovereignty": case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, 1: H. 474, 1.

Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus²⁵ esset factum, initium fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatu²⁶ quem auxilio Caesarī Haedui miserant Dumnorix praeerat); eorum fugā reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnes certissimae res accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētios trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eos dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū sūt et civitātis, sed etiā inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod a magistratū Haeduōrum

25. equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. *

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* advertō, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversō flumine, up the river; in adversum os, full in the face. *

29. perterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. *

1. cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nī-

tum, *tr.* [co+(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf.*, I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, a). *

2. accēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; accēdēbat, it was added. *

4. iniussū, *abl. of* iniussus, -ūs, *m.* [iubeō, order], without command or order. 1.

5. insciēns, -entis, *adj.* [in+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. 1.

25. quod . . . esset factum, "as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought," etc. = "as to the . . . engagement which," etc. See 15, 5-7.

paucis ante diebus, *lit.* "before by a few days" = "a few days before." diebus is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb ante.

27. auxilio Caesarī, "as an aid to Caesar." For the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms

Descriptive ablative

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.

1. cum certissimae res accēde-

rent, "since the most clearly proven facts were added." These facts are stated in the following quod clauses, which are in apposition with res. For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.

2. quod trādūxisset: kind of clause? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663: A. 593: B. 324, 2: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. quod . . . cūrasset, *lit.* "that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them" = "that he had caused hostages to be exchanged." eos = Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs.

dandōs: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 605, 2; 612, III: H. 622.

4. suō = Caesaris.

5. ipsis: i.e. Caesar and the Haedui.

accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē
 10 voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognō-
 verat; nam nē eius supplicio Dīviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troncillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem
 15 suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō

7. animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [animus, mind+ad+vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in, punish. *

8. repugnō, 1, *intr.* [re+pu gnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 2.

9. studium, -di, *n.* [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. *

10. ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē+grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. 2.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. 2.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. 1.

11. supplicium, -ci, *n.* [sub+plicō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. 4.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum,

tr. [ob+fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; animum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. 1.

12. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. *

priusquam or prius . . . quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. *

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person or thing. *

13. vocō, 1, *tr.* [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. 3.

interpretes, -etis, *m., f.*, interpreter; mediator. 1.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [re+moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw, remōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. 4.

14. Valerius, -ri, *m.* (1) Gaius Valerius Troncillus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs trū-sil'ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. *

6. causae: partitive genitive with satis, which is used as a noun.

quārē animadverteret, "why he should punish." For mode see App. 230, c; G.-L. 631, 2; H.-B. 513, 2.

8. ūnum, "one thing," is explained by its appositive, the clause quod cognōverat.

9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and cf. the note on 1, 3.

10. cognōverat, lit. "had learned" = "knew."

11. nē offenderet, "that he should offend." Meaning of nē, and mode? App.

228, b; G.-L. 550, 1, 2; A. 564; B. 296, 2; H.-B. 502, 4; H. 567, 1.

eius: i.e. Dumnorix.

12. priusquam . . . cōnārētur, "before he ventured on anything."

13. per . . . colloquitur: English order, colloquitur cum eō per, etc.

14. principem: not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man.

15. cui . . . habēbat, "in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters." cui: case? App. 115, a; G.-L. 346, n. 5; A. 367, a, n. 2; H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b.

colloquitur; simul commonefacit quæ ipso praesente in concilio de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quæ separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. ¶ Petit atque hortatur ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causam cognitam statuât, vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipso gratiam (plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset.)

16. colloquor, -loqui, -locutus sum, *intr.* [con-+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. *

simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, thereupon; simul... simul, both... and, partly... partly; simul atque, as soon as. *

commonefacio, -facere, -feci, -factum, *tr.* [moneo, remind+facio, make], remind forcibly. 1.

17. separatim, *adv.* [separo, separate], separately, privately. 2.

18. peto, -ere, -ivi or -i, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain,

16. quæ sint dicta, quæ dixerit: indirect questions.

ipso: i.e. Diviciacus.

18. ut... statuât, "that without wounding his [i.e. Diviciacus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e. Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e. Dumnorix]."

THIRD REFERENCE:

Sequence of tenses

Chap. 20. At the earnest request of Diviciacus Caesar spares Dumnorix, but he takes precautions for the future.

1. complexus: probably clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of suppliant entreaty.

2. nequid: why quid? App. 174: G.-L.

strive after; ask, request, beseech. * hortor, 1, *tr.*, exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. *

19. offensio, -onis, *f.* [offendo, hurt], offense. 1.

1. lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. 2.

complector, -plecti, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plecto, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. 1.

2. obsecro, 1, *tr.* [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. 1.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (*in years*). *

scio, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, understand. *

5. adulescentia, -ae, *f.* [adules-

315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

gravius, "too severe."

scire: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in obsecrare. The direct form is given after Book VII.

3. nec quemquam, "and that no one."

eo: i.e. Dumnorix.

capere, "felt."

4. ipse: i.e. Diviciacus. It is the subject of posset, to be supplied from the next clause.

domi: case? App. 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

5. minimum posset, "had very little influence." Supply cum from the preceding clause.

per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et amorē frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commoveri. Quod si quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum toneret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; (quā ex rē) futūrum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eiūs dextram prēndit; cōnsolātus rogat finem orandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit

cēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. 1.

6. crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, *intr.*, grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. 1.

ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. 3.

nervus, -i, *m.*, sinew; in *pl.*, vigor, strength, power. 1.

7. minuō, minuere, minui, minūtum, *tr.* and *intr.* [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contrōversias); minuyente aestū, the tide ebbing. 3.

perniciēs, -iēs, *f.* [cf. nex, death], ruin, destruction. 2.

8. amor, -ōris, *m.* [amō, love], love. 1.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter,

brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2.

existimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. 1.

vulgus, -i, *n.*, the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. 3.

12. verbum, -i, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. 3.

flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. 4.

13. dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; sc. manus], the right hand. 1.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndi, prēnsūm, *tr.*, seize, grasp. 1.

cōnsolōr, *1. tr.* [sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort. 1.

14. ōrō, *1. tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3.

6. sē: i.e. Diviciacus. He said *per mē*, "by my help."

opibus: ablative with *ūteretur*.

7. suam refers to Diviciacus.

8. sēsē: i.e. Diviciacus.

9. quod si, lit. "as to which, if": *quod* is strictly an adverbial accusative, but with *si* it has become a mere connective, and is translated "and," "but," "now," etc.

accidisset stands for an original future perfect.

ipse: i.e. Diviciacus.

eum, "such."

10. eum: i.e. Caesar.

11. suā refers to Diviciacus.

voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

futūrum (sc. esse) uti ... āverteren-

tur, lit. "it would be that... would be turned from him." This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which very rarely occurs. uti āverterentur is a substantive clause of result.

12. ā Caesare: the usual construction after verbs of asking, instead of a second accusative.

13. rogat (sc. ut) faciat, "he asked him to make." In what kind of clauses and after what verbs may *ut* be omitted? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 503, 3, a: H. 565, 4.

14. tantī: case? App. 105: G.-L. 380, 1: A. 417: B. 203, 3: H.-B. 356, 1: H. 448, 1.

utī et rei publicae iniūriam et suū dōlōrem eius voluntāti ac 15
precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet;
quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae
cīvitas queratur prōponit; monet ut in reliquū tempus
omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri con-
dōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, 20
quibuscum loquatur, scīre possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior factus hostēs sub
monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis

16. condōnō, 1, *tr.* [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2.

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. 4.

17. reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, *tr.* [re-+prehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. 1.

18. moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. 3.

19. vitō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun, evade, escape. 3.

praetereō, -ire, -īl, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,

omit; praeteritus, *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun*, the past. 1.

20. custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. 2.

21. loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. *

2. cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sīdō, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. *

octō (VIII), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., eight. *

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, or nature? 2.

15. utī condōnet: a result clause.

voluntāti, "out of consideration for his wish," is indirect object of *condōnet*.

17. quae reprehendat: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

20. Dumnorīgī: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

It was tactful of Caesar to make Diviciacus believe that Dumnorix was spared for his sake. In reality, however, Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haedui in addition—a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Use of the indefinite quis

Dative of reference

Construction with verbs of asking, etc.

Indirect question

Chap. 21-22. The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.

Chap. 21. Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.

Chapters 16-20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in chapter 15.

1. sub monte: the exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 42.

2. milia: accusative of extent of space.

quālis esset: indirect question, object of *cognōscerent*.

esset ^xnātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūtiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā
 5 vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus
 legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum
 montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsili sit ostendit. Ipse dē
 quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit
 equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. ^xP. Cōnsidius, quī rei
 10 mīltāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et
 postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.

3. circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumēō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. 4.

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. 2.

5. praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor; commander. 1.

6. dux, ducis, *m.* [ducō, lead], leader, guide, commander. *

7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+scandō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. 2.

9. P., *abbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen.* 2.

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pūb'li-ūs kōn-sīd'i-ūs), one of Caesar's officers. 3.

10. mīltāris, -e, *adj.* [mīles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs mīltāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. *

peritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. 2.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'a), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. 1.

11. postea, *adv.* [post, after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -i, *m.*, Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs li-sīn'i-ūs krās'-ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. 2.

3. in circuitū, "in going around [behind] it."

quī cognōscerent mīsit, "he sent (men) to learn."

4. facilem esse: sc. ascēsum.

dē tertiā vigiliā: see on 12, 7.

5. lēgātum prō praetōre, "lieutenant with the powers of a general"; i.e. he was temporarily given special independent powers. Labienus was Caesar's most competent and most trusted officer.

cum iīs ducibus, "with those men as guides."

7. quid . . . sit, *lit.*, "what is of his plan" = "what his plan was"; namely, that Labienus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar

should attack them at the same moment. cōsili is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.

dē quārtā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A. M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two.

9. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter's statements, as told in the next chapter.

rei mīltāris, "in military matters": case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote: H. 451, 1.

10. Sullae: cf. Int. 6.

11. in M. Crassī, "in (that) of Marcus

22. Primā luce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tēnērī; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā

1. lux, lucis, *f.*, light, daylight; primā luce, at daybreak. 3.

3. captivus, -ī, *m.* [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. 4.

comperiō, -perire, -perī, -pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. *

4. equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. *

admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). 3.

5. accurrō, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. 2.

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. *

7. collis, -is, *m.*, hill. *

8. subducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; with nāvēs, haul up, beach. 3.

aciēs, -ēi (old gen., aciē), *f.*, sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van; media, the center; novissima, the rear. *

instruō, -struere, -struxi, -struatum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. *

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. 1.

Crassus." In such cases the word for "that" is never expressed in Latin.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Genitive with adjectives

Chap. 22. Caesar's plan is frustrated by a mistake of Considius.

1. summus mōns, "the top of the mountain." For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. ipse: i.e. Caesar.

passibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

3. ut, "as."

4. Labiēnī, "that of Labienus." See on 21, 11.

cognitus esset: the force of cum still continues.

equō admissō, "at full gallop."

7. insignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Plate II, 5-8.

8. aciem instruit: Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

ut... praeceptum, lit. "as it had been directed to him"="as he had been directed." Intransitive verbs can not be used in the passive except impersonally. English idiom generally requires the personal construction in translation. ei: case? App. 116, c: G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Caesare nē proelium ~~committeret~~^X, nisi ipsius cōpiae prop
 10 hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs
 impetus fieret, monte occupatō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque
 abstinēbat. (Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit
 et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōn-
 sidium (timōre perterritum) quod nōn vīdisset prō visō sibi
 15 renūntiāvissē. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur
 et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

23. Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat
 cum exercitūi frumentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte,

9. nisi, conj. [ne-+sī, if], if not, ex-
 cept, unless. *

prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) As
 prep., near, close to. (2) As adv., almost,
 nearly; recently. *

11. impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset,
 charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. *

12. abstinēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
 tum, intr. [teneō, hold], keep aloof
 from, refrain; spare. 1.

dēnique, adv., and then, thereupon,
 finally, at last; at least. 3.

14. timor, -ōris, m. [timeō, fear],
 fear, alarm, dread. *

15. intervāllum, -i, n. [vāllus, pal-
 isade], the space between two palisades;
 interval (of space or time); distance. *

1. postridiē, adv. [posterus, follow-
 ing+diēs, day], on the day following,
 the next day; postridiē eius diēi, on
 the next or following day. *

bīduum, -i, n. [bis, twice+diēs, day],
 space or period of two days, two days. 2.

supersum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be
 App. 77], be over or above; be left, re-
 main, survive. *

2. Bibracte, -is, n. (Cef), Bibracte (bī-
 brák'tē), the chief town of the Haedui. 2.

9. nē committeret: a substantive
 volitive (or purpose) clause, subject of
 erat praeceptum.

nisi visae essent: mode? App. 273:
 G.-L. 662; 663, 2, b: A. 592, 1: B. 323: H.-B.
 536, a: H. 649, I. The pluperfect stands
 for an original future perfect.

ipsius = Caesaris.

10. ut fieret: a purpose clause.

11. proeliō: ablative of separation.

12. multō diē, "late in the day."

14. timōre perterritum, "panic-
 stricken." This was probably due in
 part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic
 prowess that prevailed in the Roman
 army.

quod ... renūntiāvisse, "had re-
 ported to him what he had not seen as if
 seen." visō is a participle used as a
 noun.

15. quō ... intervāllō = eō intervā-
 llō quō sequi cōnsuērat. For case see App.
 142, b: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 221: H.-B.
 422, I: H. 473, 3. According to 15, 14, the
 distance was five or six miles.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of comparison

Chap. 23-29. Caesar defeats the
 Helvetii in a great battle and forces
 the survivors to return home.

Chap. 23. Caesar marches toward
 Bibracte to secure grain, and is fol-
 lowed by the Helvetii.

2. cum ... oportēret, "(before the
 time) when he would have to distribute
 grain to the army." See on 16, 10. The
 peculiar cum clause is best explained by
 H.-B. 509.

Bibracte: now Mont Beuvray, twelve
 miles west of Autun.

oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendū existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire 5 contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvēti, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō (magis) quod prīdiē supēriōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn com- 10 misissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōn- fiderēt, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īsequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

3. cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia, plenty], wellsupplied, wealthy. 1.

4. duodēvigintī (XVIII), *card. num.* *adj.* [duo, two+dvē, from+vigintī, twenty], eighteen. 4.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
tum, *intr.* [speciō, look], look forward;
look to beforehand, see to, provide for,
take care. 1.

6. fugitiuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō, flee], fleeing; *as noun*, runaway slave. 1.

Aemilius, -li, *m.*, Aemilius (ā-mil'i-
ūs). 1.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], de-
curion, a cavalry officer in charge of a de-
curia, a squad of ten. 1.

4. milibus: ablative of comparison.

rei . . . prōspiciendū, "that he
must look out for supplies." Evidently
his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the
rest of the chiefs, two days before, had
as yet produced no results. prōspici-
endū: construction? App. 285, II, a;
G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B.
600, 3; 162: H. 237.

5. itaque . . . contendit: he was
south and a little east of Bibracte. The
plan on p. 104 shows that the Helvetii
were marching northwest, and that the
more northerly route taken by Caesar
was almost parallel, for some distance,
with the route of the Helvetii. This ex-
plains the fact that the Helvetii were
able to overtake Caesar's army.

Bibracte: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337:
A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, a: H.-B. 450: H. 418.

9. prīdiē, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the
day before. 3.

10. interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī,
-clūsū, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut or
cut off, separate, hinder; with itinera,
block. *

cōfidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, *intr.*
[fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely,
rely on, feel confident, hope; cōnfīsus,
pf. part. with present meaning, relying
on. *

11. commūtō, 1, *tr.* [mūtō, change],
change or alter completely, change, ex-
change. 2.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-
sum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn

8. existimārent, commisissent,
cōnfiderent: mode? App. 244; 273: G.-L.
662; 663, 2, b: A. 592, 3: B. 286, 1; 323: H.-B.
535, 2, a: H. 588, II; 649, I.

eō magis quod, "all the more be-
cause." eō is an ablative of cause.

9. quod . . . commisissent: the Hel-
vetii did not understand the reason for
the failure of Caesar and Labienus to
attack them on the previous day.

10. sive eō, "or for this reason."

interclūdī posse, "that (the Romans)
could be cut off"; i.e. by being pre-
vented from reaching Bibracte.

11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Hel-
vetii had held to their plan of march,
they might have foiled Caesar. Their
safety lay in avoiding battle, which they
could do as long as they were in advance
of him, on account of the rugged nature

24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium

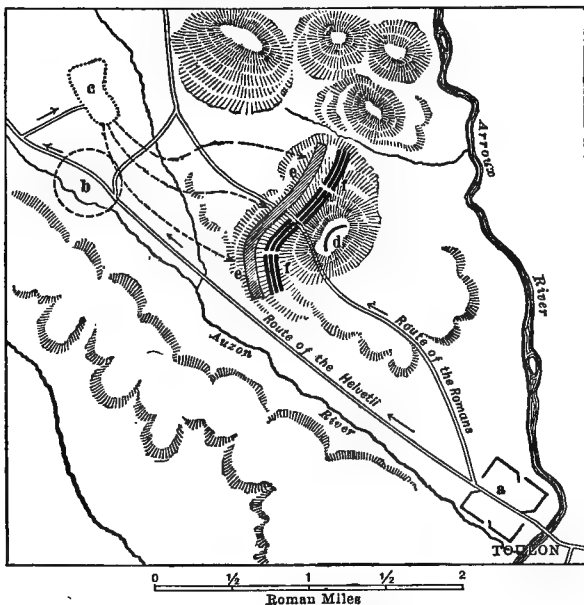
completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; **signa convertere**, face about. *

1. postquam, conj. [post, afterwards]

+quam, than], after, as soon as. 4.

2. sustineō, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)s+

teneō, hold], hold up from below; hold



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. First stage, Chap. 24-25, 10.

- a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
- b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
- c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
- d, Roman fortification (24, 8).
- e, The Helvetii.
- f, The Romans.

of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

ā novissimō agmine, "on the rear." See on 1, 15.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of place to which

Implied indirect discourse

Passive periphrastic conjugation

Chap. 24. Caesar prepares for battle and the Helvetii advance.

1. animadvertit: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

2. qui . . . sustinēret: i.e. to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.

impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et 5 omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iīs quī in superioriōre aciē cōstiterant mūniri iussit. Helvētīj cum omnibus suis carrīs secūti impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, 10 phalange factā sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. *

3. **medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; **locus medius utriusque**, a place midway between the two. *

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs, three + plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. 4.

4. **veterānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus, old], old, veteran; *pl. as noun*, veterans. 1.

5. **proximē**, *adv.* [proximus, last], last; lately. 4.

6. **compleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.* [obsolete, pleō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. *

7. **sarcina**, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (of individual soldiers, which they carried). 3.

3. in colle mediō, "half-way up the hill." For the meaning of the adjective see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

triplicem aciem: on the battle formation of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

4. **legiōnum quattuor veterānārum**: case? App. 102: G.-L. 368, R.: A. 344: B. 197: H.-B. 349. These legions were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (cf. 7, 5), and the three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (cf. 10, 9).

5. **quās . . . cōscripserat**: cf. 10, 8. Caesar dared not put these untrained and untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. **auxilia**: Caesar never expected much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

8. **mūniō**, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnitus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. *

9. **impedimentum**, -i, *n.* [impediō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). *

10. **cōfertus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. as adj.* cōferciō, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. 4.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [re- + iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. 4.

11. **phalanx**, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. 4.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [sub- + cēdō, go], go or come under;

collocārī, complērī, cōferri, mūniri: all depend on *iussit*.

7. **sarcinās**: see Int. 37.

eum: sc. *locum*.

iīs . . . cōstiterant: i.e. the two new legions.

8. **mūniri**: the location of the battle-field was long uncertain, but in 1886 excavations were made on one of the proposed locations, and evidences of a semi-circular wall and ditch were found on the top of a hill, as indicated in the plan, p. 104. Three years later nine trenches were found in which the dead had been buried.

9. **in ūnum locum**: marked *c* on the plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been found there.

11. **phalange**: in the phalanx for-

25. Caesar, primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equis, ut aequatō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostiū phalangem perfrēgerunt. Eā disiectā gladiis dēstriētis in eōs impetum fecerunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis unō ictū pilōrum transfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset,

come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *

1. **primum**, *adv.* [prīmus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; **cum primum**, or **ubi primum**, as soon as; **quam primum**, as soon as possible, very soon. *

deinde, *adv.* [dē+inde, thence], there-upon, then, next. *

2. **aequō**, 1, *tr.* [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. 1.

3. **cohortor**, 1, *tr.* [co+hortor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. *

4. **pilum**, -i, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. *

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāc-

tum, *tr.* [frangō, break], break or burst through. 1.

disiciō, -icere, -lēci, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. 2.

5. **gladius**, -di, *m.* sword. *
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). 1.

6. **pugna**, -ae, *f.* [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; **genus pugnae**, method of fighting. *

scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield, buckler; *oblong, convex* (2½×4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. *

7. **ictus**, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow. 1.
transfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.*

mation the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.

Chap. 25. The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.

1. **suō**: sc. *equō remōtō*.

omnium: i.e. of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. **aequatō periculō**, "by making the danger equal."

3. **cohortātus suōs**: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 23), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

ē locō superiōre: see Int. 55.

4. **pilis**: see Int. 36, a.

5. **gladiis**: see Int. 36, b.

Gallis impedimentō: for the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

6. **quod . . . poterant** is the subject of *erat*. For mode see App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572; B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

plūribus . . . colligātis: remember that the shields overlapped.

7. **cum inflexisset**: mode? App. 242, b: G.-L. 567, n.: A. 542; 518, c: B. 288, 2 a: H.-B. 540; H. 601, 4.

neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus 10 dēfessi et (pedem referre et) quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus

[figō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfix. 1.

colligō, 1, tr. [con+ligō, bind], bind or fasten together. 1.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron, steel; anything made of iron, sword, spear-point. 1.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, tr. [flectō, bend], bend down; with reflex., become bent. 2.

8. ēvellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. 1.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus), the left hand; sub sinistrā, on the left. 4.

commodē, adv. [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily. *

pugnō, 1, intr., fight, give battle, contend; strive; often impers., as pugnātur, it is fought, i.e. they fight. *

9. brachium, -chī, n., the arm, forearm. 1.

praeoptō, 1, tr. [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. 1.

10. manus, -ūs, f., the hand; in manibus, near at hand; manū, by hand, by art; ferrea manus, a grappling-hook;

8. ēvellere: supply pila as the object. sinistrā: the shield was held with the left hand.

9. multī is put before ut for emphasis.

iactātō brachiō, "after throwing their arms about," in the effort to shake out the javelins, and so tear the shields apart.

10. corpore: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

11. mōns...spatiō, lit. "a moun-

dare manūs, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. *

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, tr. [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. 2.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. 1.

corpus, -oris, n., body; person; a (dead) body. *

tandem, adj., at last, at length, finally; in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? 3.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. *

11. dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dēfetiscor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. 3.

referō, referre, rettuli, relātum, tr. [re+ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry, or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grātiā referre, show one's gratitude, make a requital. *

subsum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. 2.

12. eō, adv. [old dative of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). *

tain was near at hand, (separated) by a distance of about a mile"="there was a mountain about a mile away." passuum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, 6: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

spatiō: ablative of degree of difference.

12. eō: the adverb.

captō monte, "when they had reached the mountain."

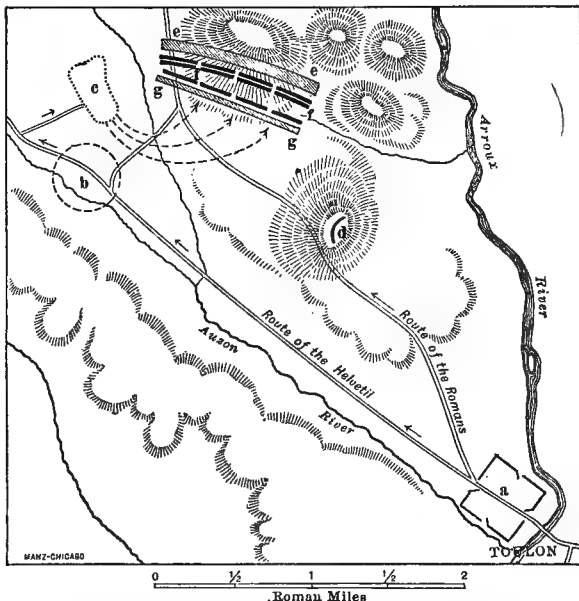
13. quī...claudēbant: they had formed the van of the Helvetian army, and became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They had proba-

circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō
 15 erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire,

14. claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. 4.

15. latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing or flank of an army. *

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere apertō, on the unprotected flank. * circumveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come or get



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. Second stage, Chap. 25, 10, through Chap. 26.

- a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
- b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
- c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
- d, Roman fortification (24, 8).
- e, The Helvetii.
- f, The Romans.
- g, The Boii and Tulingi.

bly been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so late in the battle.

15. ex itinere: i.e. they went

straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e. the right flank, for their shields protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boii and

et id cōspiciātī Helvētīi, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt:) prīma, et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis resistēret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab

around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. *

16. cōspicor, 1, *tr.* [*speciō*, look], observe, descry, perceive. 3.

17. rūsus, *adv.* [for *reversus*, from *revertō*, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. *

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [*red*+*integrō*, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

18. signum, -ī, *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; *ab signis discēdere*, withdraw from the ranks; *signa inferre*, advance to the attack; *signa conversa inferre*, face about and advance to the attack; *signa ferre*, advance on the march; direct the attack; *signa convertere*, face or wheel about; *ad signa convenire*, join the army. *

Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (*circumvenire*) to the more advantageous position. *circumvenire* depends on *coepērunt*, to be supplied from l. 17.

18. conversa . . . intulērunt, lit. "carried forward in two directions their turned standards" = "faced about and advanced in two directions." In reality only the third line faced about. *signa*: see Int. 44.

prīma et secunda aciēs; tertiā (*sc. aciēs*): in apposition with *Rōmānī*.

19. victis ac submōtis = *Helvētūs*. **venientēs** = *Bōiōs et Tulingōs*.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive

Ablative of manner

Substantive quod clause

bipertitō, *adv.* [*bis*, twice+*partior*, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. 1.

19. vincō, vincere, vicī, victum, *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. *

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [*moveō*, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. 2.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, intr. [*re*+*sistō*, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. *

1. anceps, ancipitis, adj. [*ambō*, both+*caput*, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. 1.

ācriter, *adv.* [*ācer*, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* *ācrius*; *sup.* *ācerrimē* (App. 40). *

Chap. 26. The Helvetii are routed and flee northwards. Caesar follows.

1. ancipitī: i.e. against the Helvetii on one side and the Boii and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, "they fought." For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. alterī . . . alterī, "the one body [the Helvetii] . . . the other [the Boii and Tulingi]."

3. ut coeperant: see 25, 12.

4. nam: this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that the perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, "from about noon."

5 hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem
vidēre nēmō potuit. ~~Ad~~ multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta
pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē
locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant; et nōn
nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant
10 nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedi-
mentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque
ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia
CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam

5. hōra, -ae, f., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* *
vesper, -eri, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. 3.

6. nox, noctis, f., night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. *

7. vāllum, -i, n. [vāllus, palisade], wall or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. *

obi-ciō, -icere, -i-ci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; obiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. 2.

8. coniciō, -icere, -i-ci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together logically, conjecture; in fugam conicere, put to flight. *

9. raeda, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels. 2.

matarā, -ae, f., Celtic javelin. 1.
trāgula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. 1.

subiciō, -icere, -i-ci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. 3.

10. vulnerō, 1, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. *

13. trīgintā (XXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [trēs, three], thirty. *

The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. prō vāllō, "as a rampart."

ē locō superiōre: i.e. from the tops of the wagons.

8. coniciēbant, "kept throwing." The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

millia CXXX superfuērunt: according to chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by

the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.

13. nocte: case? App. 152, a: G.-L. 393, R. 2: A. 424, b: B. 231, 1: H.-B. 440: H. 417, 2.

nūllam... pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 42 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles north of the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.

~~X~~ partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepul- 15 tūrā occisōrum nostrī triduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. ~~X~~ Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse triduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētīi omnium rerum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīserunt. Quī cū eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī fientēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. ~~X~~ Eō postquam 6

14. **intermittō**, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. *

Lingonēs, -um, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (ling'gō-nēz). 4.

15. **sepultūra**, -ae, *f.*, burial. 1.

16. **triduum**, -ī, *n.* [trēs, three+diēs, day], three days. *

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. *

17. **littera**, -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; *in pl.*, letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. *

nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; mes-

sage, news, report. *

18. **nēve** (neu) (App. 188, b), *conj.* [nē+ve, or], and not, nor. 3.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. 3.

1. **inopia**, -ae, *f.* [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. *

2. **deditiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō, surrender], capitulation. *

3. **prōiciō**, -icere, -lēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up; sē prōicere, cast one's self; jump. 4.

suppliciter, *adv.* [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. 1.

5. **pāreō**, 2, *intr.* [cf. pariō, bring

14. **partem**: accusative of duration of time.

diē quārtō: by the Roman method of reckoning, the day of the battle counted as the first day. We should say "in three days."

15. **cum**: causal.

17. **nē iuvārent**, "(ordering them) not to assist." The subjunctive stands for an imperative of the direct discourse, though it may also be called a substantive volitive clause: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

18. **iūvissent** stands for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

sē ... habitūrum: i.e. he should treat them as enemies.

19. **quō Helvētiōs**: sc. *habēret*.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Commands in indirect discourse

Chap. 27. Surrender of the Helvetii. Six thousand escape.

2. **quī cum**, "when they."

4. **essent**: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quō nunc estis*, "where you [the Helvetii as a whole, not the envoys] now are."

5. **iussisset**: supply *Caesar* as the subject.

postquam pervēnit: mode and tense?

Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur, noctē intermissā, circiter hominū mīlia vi eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā multitudine dediticiōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs

forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. 1.

6. **servus**, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant. 1. **perfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. 1.

7. **poscō**, **poscere**, **poposci**, —, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. 3.

conquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2.

8. **sex** (VI), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, six. *

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bij-ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. 1.

9. **trādō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [trāns+dō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. *

10. **salūs**, **salūtis**, *f.* [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). *

11. **dediticius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; *as noun*, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. 4.

occultō, 1, *tr.* [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1.

ignōrō, 1, *tr.* [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. 1.

12. **ēgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. *

1. **resciō**, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [re-+sciscō, inquire], find out, learn. 1.

App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

6. **servōs**: fugitive slaves from the Roman army. See 23, 6.

perfūgissent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quī ad vōs perfūgerunt*, "who have fled to you."

7. **dum ea conquiruntur**, "while these were being sought out." For mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

ea=*obsidēs, arma, servōs*.

9. **timōre nē supplicio afficerentur**, "by the fear that they would be punished"; lit. "be treated with punishment." For the meaning of *nē*, see App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A.

564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

perterritī agrees with *mīlia*, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.

12. **primā**: for translation, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Adjectives with partitive meaning

Clauses introduced by postquam, etc.

Chap. 28. The six thousand are taken and put to death. The others are sent back to their homes.

1. **resciit**=*rescivit*.

hīs is the antecedent of *quōrum* and the indirect object of *imperāvit*.

utī conquirerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostiū numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant 5 profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter 10 bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirerent et finitimi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs,

2. redūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [re-+dūcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. *

pūrgō, 1, *tr.* [pūrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; pūrgātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. 2.

4. perfuga, -ae, *m.* [perfugīō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3.

5. unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. *

6. frūx, -gis, *f.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. 1.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. *

7. famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. 1.

tolerō, 1, *tr.* [cf. tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with famem, appease, alleviate. 1.

9. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. *

10. vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. 4.

11. bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. 1.

2. sī vellent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *sī vultis*, "if you wish."

sibi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. in...habuit: i.e. he had them put to death. They had broken a military agreement.

4. in dēditionem accēpit: this act made them subjects of Rome.

6. domī: case? App. 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

7. quō tolerārent: mode? App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2.

ut iis facerent, "to provide them with."

8. ipsōs: i.e. the Helvetii and their allies.

ipsōs restituere is the object of *iussit*. The object of *iubeō* is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while the object of *imperō* is regularly a substantive volitive clause, as in l. 2.

9. eā maximē ratiōne, "chiefly for this reason," is explained by the *quod* clause.

13. prōvinciae Allobrogibusque, "the province and (especially) the Allo-

X

quod egregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem atque ipsi erant recēperunt.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparatim quot pueri, senēs,

16. **pār, paris, adj.**, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity*, the same; **pār atque**, the same as. *

condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. *

1. **tabula, -ae, f.**, board; tablet; list. 2.

2. **Graecus, -a, -um, adj.**, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl. as noun*, the Greeks. 1.

3. **nōminatim, adv.** [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. 3.

4. **quot, adj., indecl.**, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. 2.

puer, -eri, m., boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā pueris**, from childhood. *

senex, senis, adj., old; *as noun*, old man. 1.

broges"; for the Allobroges were a part of the province.

Bōiōs is the object of *collocarent*. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with *Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Lato-brigōs*, in l. 5.

Haeduis: indirect object of *concessit*.

14. **ēgregiā virtūte**, "(men) of very great courage": a descriptive ablative.

ut collocarent is the object of *concessit*. The Boli had had no fixed home, as is shown by 5, 11, 12. The map facing p. 42 shows where they were settled by the Haedui. The Haedui wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier against the Germans.

15. **quibus, quōs**: the antecedent is *Bōiōs*.

16. **parem... atque ipsi erant**, lit. "equal... as they themselves were (in)" = "the same... as they themselves enjoyed."

THIRD REFERENCE:

The locative

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. **tabulae**, "lists," written on wax tablets. The tablets used by the Romans were like folding slates, but made entirely of wood, with the inner surfaces thinly coated with wax. They wrote on this wax with a pointed *stylus*.

litteris Graecis: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony, Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.

2. **quibus in tabulis**, "in which."

3. **ratiō**, "an account."

quī exisset: indirect question.

4. **quī possent**: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 569.

pueri, senēs, mulierēsque are subjects of *exisset*, to be supplied from *exisset*. Note that this use of *-que* is an exception to the statement of the note on l. 3.

mulierēsque. Summa erat caputū Helvētiōrum milium ⁵ CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x. ¹⁰

5. **mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman; wife. * **summa**, -ae, *f.* [summus, highest], the main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperi**, the chief command. *

caput, **capitis**, *n.*, the head (of men and animals); person, individual; mouth of a river); **capitis poena**, capital punishment. *

6. **quattuordecim** (XIV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, fourteen. 2.

8. **nōnāgintā**, *card. num. adj., indecl.*, ninety. 1.

9. **redeō**, -īre, -li, -itum, *intr.* [red-+eō, go. App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. *

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. 1.

5. **summa** . . . CCLXIII, *lit.* "the total was [i.e. consisted] of 263,000 of heads of the Helvetii" = "the total was 263,000 Helvetii, etc."

6. CCLXIII = *ducentōrum sexāgintā trium*.

XXXVI = *trīgintā sex*.

7. XXIII = *vīgintī trium*.

XXXII = *trīgintā duōrum*.

quī possent; cf. l. 4. Supply *fuērunt*; "there were . . . who could, etc."

8. **ad**, "about," is an adverb in both instances.

fuērunt agrees in number with the predicate noun *milīa*.

9. CCCLXVIII = *trecenta sexāgintā octō*.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesar was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed.

During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard. Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time, but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the river Ill, a branch of the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.



Campaign Map for Book I, '30-54

MADE IN U.S.A.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates Roman possessions when Caesar entered Gaul. Red indicates states which Caesar conquered. Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. Compare all these with the map facing page 42.

Crossed sabers indicate the battlefield. Colonel Stoffel's identification of it (*Guerre de César et d'Arioviste*) is very probable, and is indicated on this map.

30. *Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellogere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repētisset, tamen eam rem*

2. grātulor, 1, *intr.* [*grātus*, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1.

3. tametsī, *conj.* [*tamen*, however + *etsī*, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. 1.

4. repetō, -*petere*, -*petivī*, -*petitum*, *tr.* [*re-* + *petō*, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; *with poenās*, exact, inflict. 2.

Chap. 30-36. At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply.

Chap. 30. Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.

1. tōtius ferē Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 42 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come; but probably not all the states so colored were represented at this time.

2. grātulātum: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, b: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

3. Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in 30-54, it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29. It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal

imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given after Book VII.

sēsē: the envoys said "we." The reflexive pronoun *suī* or the corresponding possessive *suus* is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third. In this use the reflexive is often called the indirect reflexive, in contrast with the direct reflexive, which refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Helvētiōrum . . . Rōmānī, "the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people," refers to the defeat of Cassius, 12, 13. Since the phrase implies "the Helvetii wronged the Roman people," *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* an objective genitive: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 199; 200: H.-B. 344: 351: H. 440. 1, 2.

5 nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā deligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsis-
 10 simum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrاندō

5. ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [utor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, there is need; ūsui esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venīre, come by necessity; happen. *

6. flōrens, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. 2.

8. domiciliū, -li, *n.* [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

9. opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

fructuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive. 1.

10. stipendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute,

tributary; *pl. as noun*, tributaries. 2.

12. indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.* [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. 1.

13. quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam; *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; rēs commūnis, the common interest. *

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

14. permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

6. flōrentissimis rēbus, "although they were in a very prosperous condition." The ablative absolute is here equivalent to an adversative clause.

suās: this is a direct reflexive, since it refers to *Helvētiī*, the subject of the clause in which it stands: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

7. utī inferrent, potirentur, deligerent, habērent: substantive volitive (or purpose) clauses, in apposition with eō cōsiliō.

8. domiciliō: dative of purpose.

10. iūdicāssent, "they should decide," lit. "they should have decided."

11. petiērunt utī sibi licēret, "they requested permission."

concilium: The envoys mentioned in 1.1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 117 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

12. Caesaris voluntāte: "with Caesar's consent." They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him. The request shows that they were impressed by Caesar's power, and may fairly be regarded as the first step in their submission to him.

nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque uti sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō his Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū

16. **sanciō, sancire, sānxi, sancitum**, *tr.* [cf. **sacer**, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; **sāctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. 2.

5. **labōrō**, 1, *intr.* [labor, toll], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or per-

15. **nē ēnūntiāret** is the object of *sānxērunt*.

nisi (iis) quibus mandātum esset, "except to those to whom they should be directed" (to disclose it). **mandātum esset** is impersonal. The pluperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse, for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. 31. They implore him to aid them against the German king Ariovistus.

1. **eō conciliō dimissō**: Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (30, 14) that the council was held.

idem principēs: when they had come to Caesar before (30, 2) they had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. **dē . . . salūte**, "for their own safety and (that) of all."

agere, "to confer."

4. **Caesari ad pedēs**, "at Caesar's

plexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.

7. **cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, torture; **crux**, cross], torture, torment. *

9. **factiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [faciō, make], party, faction. 1.

10. **Arvernus**, -i, *m.* (CDe), an Ar-

feet." But *Caesari* does not depend on *pedēs*, nor is it a dative of possessor: App. 120: G.-L. 350, 1: A. 377: B. 188, 1, n.: H.-B. 368: H. 425, 4, n.

5. **nōn minus**, etc., "(saying) that they were no less urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc."

sē: cf. note on *sēsē*, 30, 3.

quae dixissent, "which they should say."

7. **si ēnūntiātum esset**, "if reports should get out." The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. *ēnūntiātum esset* stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.

8. **Galliae**: Gallia Celtica is meant.

9. **factiōnēs**: see Int. 29.

10. **cum contenderent**, "when they had fought." We might expect the pluperfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, 15 trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, 20 quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimū ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrāndō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā

vernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'nī), possibly the Arvernians. 3.

tantopere, *adv.* [tantus, so great + opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1.

potētātus, -ūs, *m.* [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1.

12. mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. 1. **arcessō**, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for, invite. *

primō, *adv.* [primus, first], at first, in the first place. *

13. posteaquam, *adv.* [postea, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4.

14. ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. *

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, bar-

barous; *pl.* as noun, savages, barbarians. *

adamō, 1, *tr.* [amō, love], love strongly, covet. 1.

15. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

16. semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; ut semel, as soon as. 2.

17. iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time; semel atque iterum, again and again. *

19. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2.

20. hospitium, -tī, *n.* [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2.

11. factum esse utī, "it had come to pass that." The perfect infinitive, *factum esse*, stands for *factum est* of the direct form, as *contendere* (l. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as *ventūrōs* (l. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205: G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, a, b, c: H.-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

12. mercēde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.

14. adamāssent = *adamāvissent*. It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form.

15. esse, etc., "They were in Gaul to the number of, etc."

17. pulsōs accēpisse, "as they were beaten, they had suffered."

18. omnem . . . āmisisse: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haedui were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic war.

20. quī, "although they."

populō Rōmānō, implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrūm diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omni cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxiliū postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenērētur.¹ Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduis victīs 30 accidissee, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdissee tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvissee et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iūbēret, propterea quod paucis

24. *implōrō*, 1, *tr.* [in + *plōrō*, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3.

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with *periculum*, shrink from. *

quōminus, *conj.* [quō, so that + *minus*, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

25. *perpetuō*, *adv.* [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. 1.

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

27. *iūrō*, 1, *tr. and intr.* [iūs, right], take oath; swear. 1.

28. *profuglō*, -fugere, -fūgī, -fug-

itum, *intr.* [fugīō, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. 1.

29. *postulō*, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *

30. *malus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, peior, peius; *n. as noun*, a worse thing; *sup.*, pessimus. 1.

victor, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

31. *Ariovistus*, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus, (ā'rī-ō-vīs'tūs), a king of the Germans. *

rēx, *rēgis*, *m.*, king. *

34. *dēcēdō*, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. 3.

24. *quōminus essent*: construction? App. 228, c: G.-L. 549: A. 558, b: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 568, 8.

25. *ūnum sē esse*, "that he was the only one." *sē* is Diviciacus. Cf. note on *sēē*, 30, 3.

26. *quī potuerit*: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535, b: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a, b: H. 591, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and pluperfects, in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, *locutus est*, 1. 8. But in *potuerit* we have an instance of *repraesentatio*; i.e. the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, a: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

29. *postulātum*: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

30. *peius accidissee*, "a worse fate had befallen."

32. *tertiā partem*: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 117.

33. *alterā*, "a second."

34. *paucis mēnsibus ante*, lit. "before by a few months" = "a few months before." *mēnsibus* is an ablative of degree of difference.

35 mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis annis uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōsuētūdinem victūs cum
40 illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta
45 sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare

35. Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (ha-ryū'dēz), a German tribe. 3.

36. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.

39. cōsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *

victus, -ūs, *m.* [vivō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. 1.

40. comparō, 1, *tr.* [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. 1.

41. Magetobriga, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (măj'tōb'ri-ga), a Gallic town

where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. 1.

42. superbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. 1.

crūdēliter, *adv.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. 1.

44. ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. 1.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. 2.

45. irācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ira, anger], irritable. 1.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. 1.

36. futūrum esse uti omnēs pellerentur, lit. "it would be that all would be expelled" = "all would be expelled." The direct form was *omnēs pellantur*. As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect *pulsum iri*; but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and the periphrasis found in the text is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, b: G.-L. 531: A. 589, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.

37. omnēs [ex]: i.e. all the Gauls.

38. Gallicum: sc. *agrum*.

39. hanc = *Gallicam*.

victus: note the quantity of *i*, and compare *victus*, the perfect participle of

vincō.

41. vicerit: from this point on to the end of the chapter *representatio* is employed. See note on *potuerit*, 1. 26.

proelium: this final and decisive battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul. It is probable that the Sequani had joined forces with the Haedui in an effort to expel Ariovistus.

43. cuiusque: the singular forms of *quisque*, "each," with superlatives have the force of "every" or "all."

exempla, "punishments."

44. si facta sit: this condition stands for an original *si facta est*. See note on 1. 7, and App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

46. quid auxilii, "some help."

populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīi fecerint, ut domō emigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānis, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quā dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctoritātē suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dētērrere posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciacō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rerū facere quās ceterī facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuerī. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanēre.

48. *ēmigrō*, 1, *intr.* [*migrō*, *migrate*], depart, migrate. 1.

50. *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *indef.* (or *generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever; whatever; whosoever; whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who; everything that. *

experior, *-periri*, *-pertus sum*, *tr.*, prove, try, test, experience. *

2. *flētus*, *-ūs*, *m.* [*flēō*, weep], weeping, lamentation. 1.

4. *ceterī*, *-ae*, *-a*, *adj.* the rest of, the remainder; as *noun*, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

tristis, *-e*, *adj.*, sad, dejected. 1.

dēmittō, *-mittere*, *-misi*, *-missum*, *tr.* [*mittō*, send], send, thrust, or let down; sink; bow; *sē dēmittere*, come or get down, descend; *sē animō dēmittere*, lose courage; *dēmissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, low. 1.

terra, *-ae*, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; *terrae* (*pl.*) and *orbis terrārum*, the world. 3.

intueor, 2, *tr.* [*tueor*, look], look at. 1.

5. *miror*, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. 1.

6. *tristitia*, *-ae*, *f.*, sadness. 1. *permaneō*, *-manēre*, *-mansi*, *-mān-*

47. *Gallis*: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

48. *ut domō emigrent*, etc., "(namely) leave home, etc.," explains *idem*.

51. *nōn (sē) dubitāre quā sūmat*, "he did not doubt that Ariovistus would inflict." *sūmat*: mode? App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, *a*: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

54. *dētērrere nē trādūcātur*: for construction see note on *esset*, 1. 24.

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani.

2. *magnō flētū*: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

auxilium petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

5. *quae causa esset*: an indirect question depending on *mirātus*.

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciacus Haeduns respondit: Hōc esse miseriores et graviores fortunam Sēquanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli nē in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sēquanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

33. His rebus cognitīs Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: Magnam se habere spem et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum

sum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay throughout to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.

7. vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language; variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. *

8. exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. 1.

9. miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

10. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n.* as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

6. respondēre, permanēre: historical infinitives.

7. quaereret: a pluperfect would seem more natural.

8. hōc: ablative of cause.

11. absentis: "even when absent." velut si adesset: mode and tense? App. 261: G.-L. 602: A. 524: B. 307, 1, 2: H.-B. 504, 3, a: H. 584, 2.

12. tamen: "at any rate"; i.e. though they could not resist Ariovistus.

13. Sēquanis: for case, cf. note on *Gallis*, 31, 47.

Chap. 33. Caesar decides to under-

11. absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of absum, be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.

crudelitās, -tātis, *f.* [crudēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. 1.

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. 1.

12. coram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. 1.

horreo, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. 1.

13. vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. *

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [inter, between], within, inside; into. 4.

2. cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. 2.

take their defense. His reasons for doing so.

2. sibi . . . futuram, "that the matter should receive his attention." For the two datives, see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, a: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

3. beneficiō suō: in Caesar's consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles "rex" and "amicus." This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.

Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hāc oratione habitā conciliū dimisit. Secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur 5 quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret, in primis, quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepe numero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque ditione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani 10 turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano periculolum videbat, neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, 15 ut ante Cimbrī Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos

5. *secundum*, *prep.* with *acc.* [*sequor*, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.

6. *cogito*, 1, *tr.* and *intr.* [*co+agito*, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

11. *turpis*, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.

6. *quare putaret*: "to think," lit. "why he should think."

sibi: dative of the agent, with the passive periphrastic.

7. *Haeduos teneri* is the object of *videbat*.

fratres appellatos, "who had been called brothers." See note on 11, 5.

10. *quod*, "and this"; i.e. the condition of the Haedui, as set forth in the preceding infinitive clauses.

11. *sibi* refers to Caesar, the subject of *arbitratur*, not to the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the indirect reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

paulatim, etc., "he saw that for the

paulatim, *adv.* [*paulus*, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

13. *periculosus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*periculum*, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. 1.

16. *Cimbrī*, -orum, *m.*, the Cimbrī (*sim' -brī*). 4.

Teutonī, -orum or *Teutonēs*, -um, *m.*, the Teutoni (*tū'tō-nī*) or Teutones (*tū'tō-nēs*). 4.

Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and . . . to come . . . (was) dangerous," etc.

13. *periculolum*: see Int. 3.

14. *sibi*: indirect object of *temperaturos*. It refers to *homines*, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

15. *temperaturos quin exirent atque contenderent*: construction? App. 228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, d: H. 595, 2.

16. *ut*, "as"; for *fecissent* stands for *fecerunt* of the direct form.

Cimbrī Teutonique: see Int. 27.

17. *praesertim cum*: cf. note on 16, 17.

ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam
mātūrrimē occurrēndum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus
20 tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus
nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs
mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium
utriusque colloquīō dēligeret; Velle sēsē dē rē publicā et
summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Ei lēgatiōnī Ariovistus
5 respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eūm

19. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

20. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 2.

1. placeō, 2. *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*,

seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. *

5. opus, *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the *nom.* or *abl.* (App. 148.) *

18. Rhodanus divideret, "only the Rhone separates." Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible.

quibus rēbus occurrēndum, "that he must face this danger." Since *occurrō* is an intransitive verb it cannot be used in the passive except impersonally: App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Chap. 34. Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.

1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. Cf. note on 31, 32.

3. colloquīō: dative of purpose.

velle sēsē agere, "(saying) that he wished to confer." Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (cf. note on 33, 3).

4. summīs . . . rēbus, "matters of the greatest importance to both."

5. sī esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse: the direct form was *sī esset, vēnīssēm*, "if I wanted anything, I should have gone," a contrary to fact condition: App. 254: G.-L. 597, R. 1: A. 517, a: B. 304, 1, 2: H.-B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form *-ūrus fuisse*, although some of the grammars make the mistake of saying that the imperfect subjunctive becomes *-ūrus esse*: App. 272, II: G.-L. 597, R. 4: A.

ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitū in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidēri quid in sup² Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus [cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset] hanc sibi populōque

7. praeterea, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

8. possideō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sesum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

9. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. *

mōlimentum, -ī, *n.* [mōlior, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. 1.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 1.

10. mirus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mīror,

wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. 2.

12. negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg-+ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negōtium dare, employ, direct; quid negōtī, what business; nihil negōtī, no difficulty. *

2. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

quoniam, *conj.* [quom=cum, since +iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. 4.

3. cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōsul, consul], consulship. 1.

589, b, 1, 2: B. 321, A. 2: H.-B. 581, b, 1: H. 647.

ipsi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. The indirect reflexive, sibi, would be more usual, but ipsi is more emphatic.

6. sī . . . velit, "if Caesar wanted anything of him," lit. "if Caesar wanted him (for) anything." Volō sometimes, as here, governs two accusatives, like verbs of asking or demanding: App. 125, b: G.-L. 341, n. 2: A. 390, d: H.-B. 397, 1: H. 412. sī velit stands for an original sī vult: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

8. quas . . . possideret: i.e. the land of the Haedui and the Lingones,

which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mirum: predicate adjective with vidēri; "it seemed strange."

quid Caesarī negōtī esset, lit. "what of business there was to Caesar" = "what business Caesar had"; an indirect question, subject of vidēri. Caesarī is a dative of possessor.

omnīnō, "in general."

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Ariovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.

3. beneficiō affectus: cf. note on 83, 3. The German was shrewd enough to estimate the beneficiū at its true value.

4. quoniam (1. 2) hanc grātiā re-

- 5 Rōmānō *grātiā* referret, ut in colloquium venīre *invītātus* gravārētur neque dē commūnī-rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinē hominū amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet
- 10 Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illis licēret; nēve Haeduōs *in*iriā lacesseret, nēve his sociis eōrum bellum inferret. Si ita fecisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.

5. *invītō*, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

6. *gravor*, 1, *intr.* [*gravis*, heavy], be unwilling. 1.

8. *amplē*, *adv.* [*amplus*, large], largely; *comp.*, *amplius*, more, farther. *

9. *reddō*, -dere, -didī, -ditūm, *tr.*

[*red* - + *dō*, give], give back, return, restore; give *something due*; make or cause to be, render. *

13. *perpetuus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n.* as noun in phrase in *perpetuum*, forever. 3.

ferret, ut, "since he made this request, that." The direct form given after Book VII represents Caesar's words to his envoys, in which Ariovistus was spoken of in the third person. It would also be possible to give the form in which the message was to be repeated to Ariovistus, in which he would be addressed in the second person. In the latter case *referret* stands for *refers*, "you make."

6. *neque dīcendum . . . putāret*, "and did not think it necessary to discuss and learn." *sibi*: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

7. *haec esse quae*, "these were (the things) which."

nē trādūceret: as addressed to the envoys the direct form was *nē trādūcat*, "that he shall not bring," a substantive *volitive* clause, in apposition with *haec*. As addressed to Ariovistus it would be *nōlī trādūcere*, "do not bring,"

a prohibition: App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.

10. *Sēquanīsque . . . licēret*, "and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus's] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani] had [from the Haedui]," lit. "permit that it be allowed." *illis* = *Sēquanīs*.

12. *fēcisset* stands for a future perfect indicative: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 303, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1. *sibi*: i.e. Caesar; a dative of possessor.

14. *sī nōn impetrāret*, "if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances)."

sēsē: the direct form would be *ego*, if expressed at all. It is the subject of *neglētūrum*, 1. 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in *sē*, 1. 17.

M. Messālā . . . *cōsulibus*: in 61 B. C. Cf. note on 2, 2.

Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnuisset utī quicumque Galliam 15
prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset,
Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē
Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī
vicissent iis quōs vicissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent;
item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum,
sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō
Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, 5
nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. †
Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam temptāssent et armīs
congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam

15. cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēn-
sum, *tr.*, think, decide (*acc. and inf.*);
propose, advise, vote (*ut and subj.*);
propose, vote for (*acc.*). 1.

16. commodum, -ī, *n.* [commodus,
convenient], convenience, interest, ad-
vantage. 2.

18. neglētō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēc-
tum, *tr.* [neg-+legō, choose, regard],
not heed, disregard, neglect. *

3. praescriptum, -ī, *n.* [praescri-
bō, order], order, dictation, command. 1.

4. arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [arbiter, um-
pire], decision or judgment (*of the ar-
biter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure.
1.

5. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi,
-scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write
beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dic-
tate to. 3.

8. congredior, -gredi, -gressus
sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, en-
counter, meet in battle; join (*peace-
fully*). *

15. senātus cēnuisset: this decree
of the senate was the only result of the
entreaties of Diviciacus (cf. 31, 28), and
no governor had paid any attention to
it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. quod . . . posset, "so far as he
could do it in accordance with the inter-
ests of the state"; a common formula
in decrees of the senate.

18. neglētūrum: tense? App. 205:
G.-L. 530: 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, a, b, c:
H.-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

Chap. 36. Ariovistus responds de-
fiantly.

1. ut imperārent: a substantive
volitive clause, in apposition with iis.

vicissent, vicissent, vellent might
all have been indicative in the direct

form, but would probably be attracted
into the subjunctive.

iis: indirect object of imperārent.

3. ad alterius praescriptum, "in
accordance with the dictates of anyone
else."

4. ipse: direct form, ego. The re-
flexive cannot be used to replace a pro-
noun of the first person (cf. note on
sēē, 30, 3) when a nominative is re-
quired, because it has no nominative.
Usually no pronoun is used; but if there
is emphasis, as here, ipse is used.

5. quem . . . ūterētur, "how they
should exercise their rights."

6. nōn oportēre sē impediri, "he
[Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered."

7. sibi: dative with the adjective
stipendiāriōs.

Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectigālia sibi
 10 dēteriōra faceret. Haeduis sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse,
 neque hīs neque eōrum sociis iniuriā bellum illātūrum, sī
 in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis
 penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iis frāternum nōmen
 populi Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūptiāret sē
 15 Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcūm sine
 suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregērētur: intel-
 lētūrum quid invicti Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī
 inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,

10. dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. 1.

12. manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

stipendium, -di, *n.*, tax, tribute. * quotannis, *adv.* [quot, as many as + annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.

13. pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsū, *tr.*, weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; with poenās, suffer. 2.

14. dēnūptiō, 1, *tr.* [nūptiō, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. 1.

17. quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? with posse, how? e.g. quid Germānī posent, how strong the Germans were. * invictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. 1.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of exercitō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

9. quī faceret may be translated by a causal clause, "since he, etc.," but the indicative was probably used in the direct form. Apparently the presence of Caesar had given hope to the Haedui and had made them less careful in paying their tribute to Ariovistus.

neque . . . neque, "but . . . not . . . or."

11. illātūrum, sī manērent: a vivid future condition.

12. in . . . convēnisset, lit. "should remain in that which had been agreed upon" = "adhered to the terms which had been agreed upon."

13. fēcissent stands for a future perfect indicative.

longē . . . āfutūrum, "the name of brothers of the Roman people would be of little value to them."

14. quod, "as to the fact that":

App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

15. sēcūm, suā: sēcūm is the indirect reflexive, referring to Ariovistus, suā is the direct reflexive, referring to nēmīnem. Cf. notes on 30, 3 and 6.

16. cum vellet, congregērētur, "let him come on when he liked."

18. inter, "during."

Chap. 37-41. Caesar marches into the country of Ariovistus, checking a panic on the way.

Chap. 37. Because of this reply and further complaints of the Gauls, Caesar marches toward Ariovistus.

1. eōdem tempore: the reply of Ariovistus and the complaints of the Gauls reached Caesar at the same time. It was now about the beginning of August.

et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haedui questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam transportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pacem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum 5 Suēbōrum ad ripās, Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimbērtum frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrāndum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque 10 rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiātum est ei Ario-

2. Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* Trēverī (Bfgh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). *

3. transportō, *1. tr.* [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. *

6. Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.* of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, Suēbī, (Bhl), the Suebi (swē'bī), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *

7. Nasua, -ae, *m.* Nasua (nāsh'ū-ā),

a leader of the Suebi. 1.

Cimberius, -ri, *m.*, Cimberius (sīm-bē'rī-ūs), a leader of the Suebi. 1.

8. vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *

1. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *

2. questum: the supine.

3. Harūdēs: cf. 31, 35.

4. eōrum: the indirect reflexive, *suōs*. would have been more correct, since the Haedui said "our."

obsidibus datīs, "by giving hostages."

5. Trēverī: *sc.* veniēbant questum, followed by indirect discourse.

6. trānsire: somewhere north of where Ariovistus was, probably near modern Mayence. The Treveri were a strong people, and it is probable that Ariovistus was marching north to help the Suebi cross when he was interrupted by the news of Caesar's approach.

9. sī coniūnxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

10. minus . . . posset, *lit.* "it could be less easily resisted (to them)."

11. magnīs itineribus: cf. Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See map facing page 117.

Chap. 38. Caesar occupies Vesontio.

1. tridui: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but tridui = trium dierum.

viam: case? App. 128: G.-L. 333, 2: A, 390: B. 176, 4: H.-B. 396, 1: H. 409.

The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see map facing p. 117), and

vistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere triduique viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque naturā loci sic muniēbatur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitudīne, ita ut radicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contin-

2. **Vesontio, -ōnis, m.** (Cf) Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. 2.

5. **praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, intr.** [caveō, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. 1.

namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.

7. **sic, adv.**, so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. *

9. **Dūbis, -is, m.** (Cf g), the (river) Dubis (dū'bīs), now the Doubs. 1.

circinus, -ī, m. [circus, circle], a pair

of compasses. 1.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or draw around. 2.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cinctum, tr., encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a wall). 1.

10. **sescentī, -ae, -a, (DC), card. num. adj.** [sex, six], six hundred. *

12. **rādix, -icis, f., root; in pl. with montis or collis,** foot, base. 1.

contingō, -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctum, tr. and intr. [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. 2.

brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

nūntiātum est: this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. Cf. note on 37, 6.

3. **quod** agrees in gender with *oppidum*, although its antecedent is masculine. A subject pronoun often agrees in gender with a predicate noun.

4. **id:** i.e. the capture of Vesontio.

6. **summa facultās,** "a very great supply."

9. **ut,** "as if."

paene cingit: i.e. the river makes a loop, the two sides of which (according

to Caesar) are at one point only 600 feet apart. The neck of land at this point is very high. The town lies within the loop. A wall encloses both the town and the high neck of land.

10. **spatium:** object of *continet*.

nōn . . . sescentōrum, "of not more than six hundred feet." **pedum** is a descriptive genitive: why is not the ablative used after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

11. **quā flūmen intermittit,** "where the river does not flow."

magnā altitudīne: descriptive ablative.

12. **radicēs** is the object of *contingant*, **ripae** its subject.

gant. Hunc mûrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupatōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat. 15

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeātusque causā morātur, ex percontatiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercatōrum, quī ingenti magnitudine corporum Germānōs, incredibilī virtūte atque exercitatiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque pērturbāret. Hic

13. circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. 1.

efficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

14. hūc, *adv.* [old form for hōc from hic], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. *

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. 1.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. 1.

2. percontatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiring, inquiry. 1.

3. ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitūdō animi, courage. *

4. exercitatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exercitō, *freq.* of exerceō, exercisē], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

5. praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

6. vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, looks. 2.

7. subitō, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

8. mediocriter, *adv.* [mediocris,

13. hunc (montem) is the object of *efficit*, *arcem* is a predicate accusative: App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, a: H. 410, 1.

14. hūc contendit: he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnis: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. 39. Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.

1. dum morātur: mode and tense?

App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4. The principal clause of this sentence begins with *tantus*, 1. 7.

rei . . . causā: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

3. vōcibus, "replies."
magnitudine, virtūte, exercitatiōne: descriptive ablatives.

primum ortus est à tribūnīs militum, praefectīs, reliquisque
 10 quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in
 rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā,
 quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat
 ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī,
 ut timōris suspiciōnem vitarent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum
 15 fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in
 tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus
 suis commūne pericūlum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs
 testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim
 etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs cen-
 20 turionēsque quīque equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Qui

moderate], moderately: nōn mediocriter, in no small degree. 1.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animōsque, minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. 4.

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

9. tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum, or militāris, a military tribune. *

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4.

13. pudor, -ōris, *m.* [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense

of honor. 2.

14. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *intr.* [re-+maneō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. *

15. fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

16. tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent. 1. fātum, -ī, *n.* [fārī, to speak], fate, lot. 1.

17. miseror, 1, *tr.* [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. 1.

vulgō, *adv.* [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

18. testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], will. 1.

obsignō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. 1.

19. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. *

9. tribūnīs: see Int. 41.

10. amicitiae causā: Caesar puts it delicately. We know from other sources that Caesar had with him young men, friends or relatives of influential men at Rome, who hoped for personal gain from their connection with him in his province. Some of them had little taste for real fighting.

11. quōrum . . . illātā, "one of them alleging one reason, another another."

12. diceret, "they said," agrees in

number with *alius*. Mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 223, 1: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1.

14. vultum fingere, "control their features," so as to look unconcerned.

17. tōtīs castrīs: why is there no preposition? App. 151, b: G.-L. 388: A. 429, 2: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436, a: H. 485, 2.

19. centuriōnēs: who were appointed especially for their bravery.

20. quī ex his, "(those) of them who."

sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustīās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent intēr ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac 25 signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīmum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī 5

21. **timidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. 1.

24. **supportō**, 1, *tr.* [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

26. **dictum**, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part.* of dicō, say], saying, remark; command; dictō audiēns, obedient. 1.

22. **angustīās itineris**: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward them it would have given opportunity for ambushes.

24. **rem frūmentāriam, ut posset, timēre**, lit. "feared the supplies, that they could not" = "feared that the supplies could not." **ut**: translation? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

26. **cumiussisset**: indirect discourse for *cum iusseris*, "when you shall have ordered," = "when you order." The clause depends on what follows, not on *nūntiābant*.

fore=*futūrōs esse*.

neque signa lātūrōs, "and would not advance." See Int. 44.

Chap. 40. Caesar encourages his officers.

1. **omnium ōrdinum**: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. *

2. **ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primī ōrdinēs**, centurions of the first rank. *

3. **incūsō**, 1, *tr.* [*causa*, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar's speech.

3. **incūsāvit**: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar's purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic war.

4. **dūcerentur**: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, "that they ought to inquire or consider." The grammatical subject is the clause *aut . . . dūcerentur*.

5. **sē cōnsule**: in the preceding year. *sē* and the other reflexives through 1.9

amicitiā appetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādēri, cognitis suis postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si
 10 furōre atque āmentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr de suā virtūte aut de ipsius diligentia dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidē-

6. appetō, -petere, -petivī (-petil), -itum, *tr. and intr.* (ad+petō, seek), seek for, aim at, encroach upon; approach, be near. 3.

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

officiū, -ci, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō, to remain faithful. *

8. postulātum, -i, *n.* [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animi aequitās, contentment. 1.

perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, [*tr.* specio, look], look or see

through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

9. repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. 1.

10. furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 1.

impellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, *tr.* [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

11. diligentia, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

13. C., *abbr. for praenomen Gāius* (gā'yūs). *

Marius, -ri, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mā'ri-ūs), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni. 1.

14. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, com-

are indirect reflexives: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

6. cūr iudicāret: the direct form was cūr iudicet, "why should anyone suppose?": App. 210, a; 268, III: G.-L. 265; 651, R. 2: A. 444; 587: B. 277; 315, 3: H.-B. 513, 1: H. 559, 4; 642, 3. Contrast with this subjunctive question the infinitive in 14, 8.

7. sibi . . . persuādēri, "in fact he was convinced": App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. quod si intulisset, "but if he should make": App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574.

11. verērentur, dēspērārent: cf. note on I. 6.

suā: the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

ipsius: i.e. Caesar's; suā could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of *ipse* in 36, 4.

12. pericūlum, "a test."

13. Cimbris et Teutonīs: cf. Int. 27. Mariō: cf. Int. 5.

14. vidēbātur: no satisfactory explanation can be given for the retention of this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

bātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs 15
tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nobīs accēpissent
sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē
bonī cōstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine
causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.
Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe nūmērō 20
Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum
finibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō
exercitui nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga
Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaerent, reperire posse,
diūturnitate bellī dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs 25

mendation; renown, popularity, glory.
3.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. *

15. servilis, -e, *adj.* [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

16. disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. 2.

ego, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* nōs, we, us, etc. *

18. cōstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1.

15. factum: sc. *esse periculum*.

servilī tumultū: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 B. C. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quōs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servilī*, which is equivalent to *servōrum*.

17. quantum bonī, "how great an advantage."

18. inermēs: a part of Spartacus's band was at first armed only with stakes; yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. quibuscum Helvētiī congressī

aliquamdiū, *adv.* [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. 1.

inermis, -e, *adj.* [in- + arma, arms] without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3.

19. armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; **armātus**, *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, armed; **armātī**, as *noun*, armed men. *

22. plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. *

25. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long duration. 2.

dēfatigō, 1, *tr.* [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. 1.

superārint, lit. "with whom the Helvetii having met had conquered" = "whom the Helvetii had met and conquered." **superārint**: tense? App. 270, a: G.-L. 654, n. A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

22. quī: the antecedent is *Helvētiī*. The argument is that since the Helvetii have beaten the Germans and the Romans have beaten the Helvetii, the Romans can beat the Germans.

23. proelium: the battle at Magetobriga; see 31, 41.

24. commovēret: the direct form was *commovet*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē
 30 ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque
 35 esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam;

26. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. *

27. dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -spersum, *tr.* [spergō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

29. imperitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + peritus, experience], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.

31. simulatiō, -ōnis. *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

32. arrogantor, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1.

34. Leucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū/sī). 1.

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give.

35. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. *

38. male, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, peius; *sup.*, pessimē. 1.

39. dōsum, deesse, dēfui, —, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *

facinus, -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

26. suī potestātem, "a chance at him."

27. dēspērāntēs, dispersōs agree with an implied *edō* which is the object of *adortum* and refers to the Gauls.

28. ratiōnī: translate with *hāc* in next line, and omit here.

29. hāc . . . posse, "not even (Arlovistus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem."

31. rei . . . simulatiōnem, "a pretense about the supplies." rei is an objective genitive.

32. dē . . . dēspērāre, "to lack con-

fidence in the general's attention to his duties."

35. mātūra: it was now August.

36. quod . . . dīcantur, "as to the statement that they would not obey his orders or advance." quod: translation? App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

37. quibuscumque . . . convictam, lit. "that to whomsoever an army had not been obedient, (to them) either fortune had failed or avarice had been proved." This must be turned into English.

suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helveticorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset repraesentaturum et proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an timor plus valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum solā decimā legione iturum, de qua non dubitet, sibi que eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maximē.

41. Hāc oratione habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi illata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias agit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde

avaritia, -ae, f. [avarus, greedy], greed, covetousness. 1.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. 1.

40. innocentia, -ae, f. [innocens, innocent], integrity. 1.

felicitas, -tatis, f. [felix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. 1.

41. longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant; of long duration; tedious. *

42. repraesentō, 1, tr. [re-+praesens, present], make present; do at once. 1.

43. utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], whether; utrum... an, whether... or; utrum... necne, whether... or not. 3.

44. an, conj., used to introduce the

second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. *

45. decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, ten], tenth. *

46. praetorius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2.

cohors, -tis, f., cohort. *

47. indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —, intr., be indulgent to, favor. 1.

praecipue, adv. [praecipuus, especial], especially, particularly. 1.

1. modus, -i, m. measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modi, of such a kind, such; abl., modo, with gen., in the character of, like. *

2. alacritas, -tatis, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

40. innocentiam, "fair dealing," not "innocence"; opposed to avaritiam. What the soldiers would object to would be the general's keeping too large a share of the booty for himself.

perpetuā vitā, "throughout his life."

41. quod... repraesentaturum, "he would do at once what he had intended to put off, etc."

43. utrum... valeret: an indirect

double question: App. 214; 264, c: G.-L. 458; 460, 2: A. 334; 335: B. 162, 4; 300, 4: H.-B. 234: H. 380; 650.

46. praetoriam cohortem, "his body-guard," which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops.

Chap. 41. The panic is checked and the army advances.

4. gratias agit, "expressed its thanks."

reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse. Eōrum satis-
 10 factiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, milium amplius quīn-
 quāgintā circuitū, locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī.
 15 cōpiās ā nostrīs milia pāssuum quattuor et vīginti abesse.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod antea dē colloquiō postulāssset, id per sē fierī

8. umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never, never.
 2.

9. satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfactiō, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. 1.

6. cum tribūnīs ēgērunt utī, "arranged with the tribunes that" or "begged the tribunes to."

8. neque dē . . . existimāvisse, "and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's."

10. itinere . . . Diviciācum ut . . . dūceret, "having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . . , in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles."

ex Gallīs, "of (all) the Gauls."

11. eī: case? App. 115, a: G.-L. 346, n. 5: A. 367, a, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b.

millium quīnquāgintā is a descriptive genitive. Why not an ablative after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 8: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

12. circuitū: he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see

10. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate.
 2.

11. quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, fifty. 3.

map facing p. 117), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles.

13. ut dīxerat: cf. 40, 42.

septimō diē: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 117. Ariovistus, who had probably been marching northward (cf. note on 37, 6), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strasburg.

cum . . . intermitteret: i.e. he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. Cf. Int. 54.

Chap. 42-47. Negotiations with Ariovistus are fruitless.

Chap. 42. Ariovistus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.

2. postulāssset: sc. Caesar.

id . . . licēre, "that . . . might be done as far as he was concerned." id is the antecedent of quod.

licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbitrābatur, cum id quod 5 antea petenti dēnegasset ultrō pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmāni in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulātis, fore uti pertinaciā desisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgati ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus 10 postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tolli volēbat neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitātui committere audēbat, com- 15 modissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus

3. **propius**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp. of prope*, near], nearer.

4. **respuō**, -spuere, -spui, —, *tr.* reject, spurn. 1.

5. **sānitās**, -tātis, *f.* [sānus, sound, soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 1.

6. **dēnegō**, 1, *tr.* [negō, deny], refuse. **ultrō**, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. *

8. **pertinācia**, -ae, *f.* [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1.

10. **citrō**, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. 1.

11. **pedes**, **peditis**, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3.

14. **interpōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere**, pledge. 4.

15. **commodus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. 3.

3. **accessisset**: Ariovistus's reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7) no longer existed. Caesar's prompt advance had impressed him and he was more inclined to confer.

6. **petenti**, "when he [Caesar] asked it."

8. **fore uti desisteret**, lit. "that it would be that he would give up" = "that he would give up." The use of this periphrasis is here a matter of choice on Caesar's part, since the verb is active and has a future infinitive form. Cf. note on 31, 36, and App. 205, b: G.-L. 531:

A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.

13. **venīret**: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.

aliā ratiōne, "on any other terms."

15. **salutem . . . audēbat**: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry.

16. **Gallis equitibus**: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, d: H.-B. 371: H. 427.

dētractīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

43. Plānitīēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castris utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vērērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs vexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō

17. dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

18. impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [in+pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. 4.

20. irrīdiculē, *adv.* [in+ridīculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. 1.

23. rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [re+scribō, write], write again; transfer. 1.

1. plānitīēs, -ēi, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.

tumulus, -ī, *m.* [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. 1.

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra, earth], of earth. 1.

2. grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. 1.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus, equanimity, composure. 3.

4. vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, carry; bring along. 1.

17. eō, the adverb, = *in eōs*.

19. sī . . . esset, lit. "if there should at all be need of something done" = "if there should be any need of their services." quid: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334: A. 390, c: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2. factō: construction? App. 146, b: G.-L. 406: A. 411, a: B. 218, 2, c: H.-B. 430, 2: H. 477, III. esset: implied indirect discourse, for in making his plans Caesar thought sī erit, "if there shall be."

20. nōn irrīdiculē, "wittily."

21. pollicitum . . . rescribere: the soldier said, in substance, "After promising only to make us his body-guard, Caesar is actually making us cavaliers." The pun is based on the double meaning of *ad equum rescribere*, namely, (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the

army looked down upon by the legionary soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e. raise to a high rank in Roman society. "Cavaller" means either "cavalry man" or "knight."

Chap. 43. At the conference Caesar repeats his previous demands.

1. erat, "there was." The hill was about twelve miles north of the battlefield, and has been identified with considerable certainty.

2. spatium: accusative of extent of space.

3. ut erat dictum, "as had been agreed."

4. equīs, "on horseback."

passibus, intervallō: ablatives of degree of difference with *ab*, "away from."

cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervallō cōstitērunt. 5
 Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad
 colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. (Ubi eō ventum est) Caesar
 initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,
 quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera
 amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs 10
 hominum officiīs cōsuēsse (tribui) docēbat; illū, cum neque
 aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam haberet, beneficiō ac
 liberalitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum. Docēbat
 etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs
 cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōsulta quotiēns 15
 quamque hōnōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius
 Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam
 nostram amicitiam (appetissent.) Populī Rōmānī hanc esse

6. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 1.

9. mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. 1.

11. docēō, docēre, docui, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *

12. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with fūnera, appropriate. 4.

13. praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. *

14. necessitudō, -inis, *f.* [necesse, cf. necessārius, friend], friendship, alliance. 1.

15. cōsultum, -ī, *n.* [cōsulō, take counsel], result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. 1.

quotiēns, *adv.* [quot, how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. 1.

16. hōnōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [hōnōs, honor+faciō, make], conferring honor. 1.

5. cōstitērunt: distinguish carefully between *cōstitō* and *cōstitutō*.

6. ex equīs, "on horseback." Cf. 1. 4: in that line the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.

9. quod amicus: sc. *appellātus esset*. Cf. note on 33, 3.

10. missa: sc. *essent*. The three *quod* clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *beneficia*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

12. aditum: i.e. to the senate.

14. ipsīs . . . intercēderent, "existed between them [the Romans] and the Haedui." intercēderent: subjunctive in an indirect question.

16. in eōs, "in their behalf." ut, "how," introducing an indirect question.

17. Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in 31, 8 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.

prius . . . quam = *priusquam*. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.

cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil
 20 dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse;
 quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripi
 quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in
 mandātis dederat: (Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum
 25 inferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum
 domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire
 paterētur.)

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē
 suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn
 suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine
 magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque
 5 reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs
 ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod
 victōrēs victīs imponere cōsuērunt. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed
 Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē

20. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* augeō, increase], increased, advanced, 1.

21. afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum,

tr. [ad+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

25. remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [re+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. *

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

19. ut vellet, "to wish"; a substantive clause of result, in apposition with *hanc consuetudinem*.

suī, "of their own"; the neuter of *suus*, used as a noun.

20. sed auctiōrēs esse, "but rather to be advanced."

grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.

21. iīs: for case, cf. note on 42, 16.

22. quis posset, the direct form was *quis possit*, "who would be able?" and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.

23. dederat: as stated in chap. 35.

24. inferret, etc.: subjunctives of

command in indirect discourse. What was the direct form of *nē inferret*? App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.

Chap. 44. Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.

3. rogātum et arcessitum: the participles may be translated by a causal clause.

ā Gallīs: cf. 31, 11.

5. ab ipsīs: sc. *Gallīs*.

6. iūre: ablative of concordance.

7. cōsuērunt: the tenses in the early part of this chapter are due to *repraesentatio*.

oppugnandum venisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus perpenderit. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amicitiā quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliā trādūcat, id sē sui mūniendī nōn Galliāe impugnandae causā facere; eius rei testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Se prius in Galliā venisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliāe prōvinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret? Prōvinciam

11. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. *

12. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *

13. ōrnāmentum, -i, *n.* [ōrnō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. 1.

dētrīmentum, -i, *n.* [de+terō, rub, or wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. 1.

9. oppugnandum: gerund or gerundive? App. 289: G.-L. 427: A. 506, n. 2: B. 339, 2: H.-B. 613, 1: H. 628, footnote 2.

castra habuisse, "had encamped."

10. ūnō proeliō: the battle at Magetobriga: cf. 31, 41.

13. amicitiā sibi ōrnāmentō esse oportēre, lit. "that it was right for the friendship to be to him for an honor." Make English of this.

15. petisse: sc. *eam*, referring to *amicitiā*, as the object. The king admits that he had sued for the honor.

sī remittātur: a vivid future condition.

16. subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. 1.

libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

19. impugnō, 1, *tr.* [in+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.

20. testimōnium, -ni, *n.* [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. 1.

17. quam, "than."

quod, "as to the fact that."

21. prius quam populum Rōmānum: *prius quam* = *priusquam*, a conjunction, and the more accurate expression would be *priusquam populus Rōmānus vēnerit*. The truth of the statement is denied by Caesar in the next chapter.

24. quid sibi vellet, lit. "what did he wish for himself?" an idiomatic expression for "what did he mean?" For mode, see App. 288, I: G.-L. 651: A. 536: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

suās refers to Ariovistus.

25 suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi
 non oporteret, si in nostris fines impetum faceret, sic item
 nos esse iniquos, quod in suo iure se interpellaremus. Quod
 fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam
 barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum ut non sciret neque
 30 bello Allobrogum proximō Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse
 neque ipsos in his contentionibus quas Haeduī secum et cum
 Sequanis habuissent auxilio populi Romani usus esse. Debere
 se suspicari simulatā Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in
 Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causā habere. Quī nisi decedat
 35 atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro
 amico, sed pro hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit,

25. sicut *or* sicuti, *adv.* [sic, so+ut-
 (I), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. 1.

27. interpellō, 1, *tr.*, interrupt, hinder. 1.

31. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. 1.

33. suspicor, 1, *tr.* [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2.

34. opprimō, -primere, -pressi,

-pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

35. deducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. *

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; ē regione, with *gen.*, opposite. *

25. hanc Galliam, "this (part of) Gaul." He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman province.

ut . . . oporteret, "just as there ought to be no yielding to him." The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably *oporteat, si faciam*, lit. "it would be right if I should make." This is a less vivid future condition; App. 257: G.-L. 596: A. 516, 2, b: B. 303: H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage.

27. quod diceret, "as to the fact that he said," or "as to his statement."

29. imperitum rerum, "ignorant of political matters."

30. bello Allobrogum: cf. note on 6, 7.

Haeduos . . . usus esse: Ariovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haeduī and the Romans had been mere words until now when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

31. ipsos = Haeduos.

32. debere se suspicari, "he had a right to suspect."

33. simulatā amicitia, "although he made a pretense of friendship" toward Ariovistus.

quod, "inasmuch as."

35. sese . . . amico habiturum, "he would regard him [Caesar] not as a friend."

multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum; id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneratum et quaecumque bella geri vellet sine ullo eius labore et periculo 40 confecturum.

45. Multa a Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset: Neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati uti optimè meritos socios desereret, neque se iudicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs a Q. Fabio 5

37. grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1.

40. liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, unrestrained, free; undisputed. 1.

41. remuneror, 1. *tr.* [re-+muneror, present], repay, reward. 1.

42. labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *

1. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentio, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *

3. bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, melius; *sup.*, optimè. 2.

dēserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; dēsertus, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

4. potius, *adv.* [comp. of potis, able], rather. 2.

5. Rutēni, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni (rū-tē'ni). *

Q., *abbr. for* Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Fabius, -bi, *m.* Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn' tūs fā'bi-ūs māk'simūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B. C. 1.

37. multis . . . facturum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id compertum habere differs very slightly from id comperisse, "had found this out." This means "he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained"; App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

Chap. 45. Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

1. in eam sententiam, quare, lit. "to this effect, why" = "to show why." quare posset is an indirect question.

3. pati uti desereret, "allowed him to abandon." patior is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an ut clause.

4. Ariovisti, populi Romani: predicative genitives of possession.

5. superatos esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (44. 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.

Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium
 10 senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis legibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit
 5 nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs recerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis delēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dicī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Postea-

6. Maximus, -i, m., Quintus Fabius Maximus (quīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B. C. 1.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, intr. [in-+(g) nōscēns, knowing: nōscō], forgive, pardon. 3.

7. redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [red-+agō, put in motion], bring back,

bring under; render, make; reduce. *

10. observō, 1, tr. [servō, give heed], observe, mark; watch; regard, obey; celebrate. 1.

3. adequitō, 1, intr. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. 1.

lapis, -idis, m., stone. *

5. etsī, conj. [et+sī, if], even if, although. *

6. neque . . . redēgisset: the intransitive *ignōvisset* governs the dative, *quibus*; but *redēgisset* is transitive and we must supply *quōs*; *quibus* is needed again with *imposuisset*. The Arverni and Ruteni lay on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman province: this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.

8. antiquissimum quodque tempus, lit. "each most ancient time" = "priority of time."

11. lēgibus: ablative with *ūtī*.

voluisset: sc. *senātus* as the subject.

Chap. 46. An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.

1. geruntur: mode and tense? App.

234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

2. tumulum: case? App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. quod: the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

6. legiōnis delēctae, "to his picked legion"; the genitive cannot always be translated by "of."

7. committendum ut dicī posset, lit. "that it ought to be permitted that it could be said" = "that he ought to permit it to be said."

pulsīs hostibus, "after the defeat of the enemy."

8. per fidem, "because of their confidence (in Caesar's honor)." This is equivalent to saying "treacherously."

quam in vulgus militum elatum est quā arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque 10 ut in nostros eius equites fecissent eaque res colloquium diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui injectum est.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos misit: Velle se de iis rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eo; uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, ex suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesaris causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie 15 eius diei Germani retineri non potuerant quin tela in nostros conicerent. Legatum ex suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi

10. *interdicō*, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *intr.* [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; *aquā atque igni interdicare*, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. 1.

11. *dirimō*, -imere, -emi, -emp-

9. *quā arrogantia usus*, "using what arrogance" = "with what arrogance. It is often well to translate *usus* in this way.

10. *omni . . . interdixisset*, "had forbidden the Romans all Gaul." *Gallia* is an ablative of separation. *Romanis* is the indirect object.

11. *ut*, "how," introduces both *fecissent* and *diremisset*. It would more naturally precede *impetum*.

Chap. 47. Ariovistus requests a second conference, but seizes the envoys sent by Caesar.

1. *biduo post*, "on the following day." The literal meaning is "afterwards by two days," but the Latin writer counts the day of the interview as one, the next day as the second. In this case the meaning is proved by l. 5.

2. *quae agi coeptae essent*, "which had begun to be discussed," or better,

tum, *tr.* [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. 1.

13. *iniciō*, -icere, -ici, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

9. *Procillus*, -i, *m.*, Gaius Valerius

"which they had begun to discuss." The passive forms of *coepi* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.

3. *uti constitueret*: a substantive clause, the object of an implied verb of asking.

4. *legatis*, "legates," not "envoys." Ariovistus wished to confer with an officer of the highest rank, if Caesar should refuse a second personal interview.

5. *colloquendi . . . est*, "Caesar saw no occasion for a conference."

pridie eius diei is only a fuller expression for *pridie*, and has the same meaning.

6. *retineri quin conicerent*, "be kept from casting." For construction see App. 228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.

8. *commodissimum visum est*, "it seemed best." The subject is *mittere*, l. 15.

40 filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn esset, ad eūm mittere, et unā M. Mētiūm, 45 quī hospitio Ariovistī ūtēbātur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venirent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Procillus (gā'yus vā-lē'ri-us prō-sil'us), a Gaul. 2.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'ri-ūs kə-bū'rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus. 1.

10. adulēscēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adolēscō, grow up], youth, young man. 4.

11. Flaccus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā'yus vā-lē'ri-us flāk'ūs), Governor of Gaul, 83 B. C. 1.

dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. 1.

12. scientia, -ae, f. [sciō, know],

11. civitāte dōnātus erat, "had been granted citizenship."

et . . . et (L-12) . . . et (L. 13), "both . . . and . . . and."

12. quā multā ūtēbātur, "which Ariovistus spoke fluently."

13. in eō, "in his case."

14. Germānis: dative of possessor.

esset: implied indirect discourse, for Caesar is quoting the reason which influenced him at the time of his action: "because (as he thought) the Germans had."

unā, "with him."

15. hospitio, "guest-friendship." This is an awkward rendering, but as we no longer recognize such a relationship we have no name for it. In its simplest form it bound two men, residing in different states, to give hospi-

knowledge, science, skill. 4.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

peccō, 1, intr., sin, transgress, do wrong. 1.

14. Mētiū, -ti, m., Marcus Metius (mār'kūs mē'shyūs). 2.

17. cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *

conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

18. speculor, 1, intr. [cf. speciō, look], spy. 1.

19. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter. 3.

ality or render other services to each other whenever occasion arose. A similar relationship might exist between a man and a state, or between two states. The obligation was peculiarly binding and sacred.

17. conclāmāvit, etc.: Ariovistus was angry at his failure to secure an interview with either Caesar or one of Caesar's legates.

18. an is not to be translated. The full thought is something like "is it for anything else, or, etc." By such an ellipsis of the first alternative an not infrequently introduces a simple question, though its proper place is in the second alternative of a double question.

cōnantēs, "while they were attempting."

48. Eodem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duobus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōsiliō, utī frumentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduis supportārētur Caesarem inter- clūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuos quinque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae

1. prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

4. ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. 2.

6. continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [con-tineō, hold together], holding together,

unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

7. prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. *

10. genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *

Chap. 48-54. After some maneuvering Caesar forces Ariovistus to give battle and destroys the German host.

Chap. 48. Ariovistus marches past Caesar's camp. The German cavalry tactics.

1. milibus: ablative of measure of difference. Ariovistus had been twenty-four miles north of Caesar's camp.

2. sub monte: at the foot of the Vosges Mountains.

postridiē eius diēi = postridiē. Cf. note on 47, 5.

praeter castra: see the plan, p. 153. Ariovistus marched on high ground along the foothills of the mountains, so that Caesar could not safely attack him as he passed the Roman camp.

5. supportārētur: mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

interclūderet: Ariovistus did not encamp on the road which the convoys of provisions would have to take, for he preferred a safer position on the hills; but he was near enough to the road to cut off the supplies if they tried to pass.

6. prō castris: this was the favorite

position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. aciem . . . habuit, "kept his line drawn up."

ut deesset: a purpose clause, although *nē* is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of *ut nōn*. Here *nōn* belongs closely with the verb, *nōn deesset*, lit. "might not be lacking" = "might be offered him."

8. vellet: implied indirect discourse, for the thought in Caesar's mind was *ei vult*, "if he wishes."

9. castris, "in camp." Why not *in castris*? App. 151, c: G.-L. 389: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476. Ariovistus had a superstitious reason for refusing to fight, as appears later.

10. proeliō: cf. references on *castris*, 1. 9.

genus . . . exercuerant, "the kind . . . was as follows."

quō sē Germānī exercuerant. ~~X~~ Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs v̄lōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum his in proeliis versābantur; ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, si
 15 quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; si quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius ~~X~~ commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī

11. *exerceō*, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. 1.

12. *totidem*, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

v̄lōx, -*ōcis*, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. 1.

14. *versō*, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

15. *dūrus*, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. 1.

concurrō, -*curre*, -*curri*, -*cursum*, *intr.* [*currō*, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

16. *dēcidō*, -*cidere*, -*cidī*, —, *intr.* [*cadō*, fall], fall from or off. 1.

circumsistō, -*sistere*, -*stitī*, —, *tr.*

[*sistō*, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. *

quō, *adv.* [old *dat. case form of qui*, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

prōdeō, -*ire*, -*ii*, -*itum*, *intr.* [*prō+eō*, go. App. 84], go or come forth, go forward, advance. 2.

18. *celeritās*, -*tātis*, *f.* [*celer*, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *
iuba, -*ae*, *f.*, mane. 1.

cursus, -*ūs*, *m.* [*currō*, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *

19. *adaequō*, 1, *tr.* [*aequō*, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

12. *numerō*: ablative of specification, with *totidem*.

13. *singulī singulōs dēlēgerant*, lit. "individuals had chosen individuals" = "had chosen, each for himself."

14. *versābantur*, etc.: tense? App. 191, a: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H.-B. 481: H. 534, 3.

hī . . . concurrēbant, "if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid."

15. *quī*: the substantive indefinite

pronoun, instead of the more usual *quis*.

16. *quō*: this adverb, like the pronoun *quis*, is used as an indefinite after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*.

Chap. 49. Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.

1. *eum* = *Ariovistum*.

nē . . . prohibērētur: the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germans.

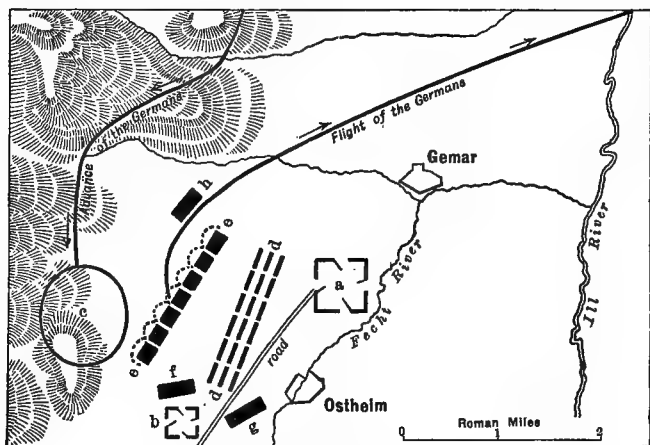
cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit acīēque triplici inīstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiae nostrōs pērtēr-rērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus 10

3. idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

9. sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; nihi-

lō sētius, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. 2.

10. prōpulsō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of prō-



BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

- a, Large Roman camp.
- b, Small Roman camp.
- c, Camp of the Germans.
- d, The Roman legions.

- e, The German infantry.
- f, The Roman auxiliaries.
- g, The Roman cavalry.
- h, The German cavalry.

3. castris: dative with the adjective *idōneum*.

4. acīē triplici: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

5. in armīs: to repel the expected attack.

7. hominum . . . expedita, lit. "sixteen light-armed thousands of men" = "sixteen thousand light-armed infantry."

perficere iussit. Mūnītis castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter meridiē exercitum
5 in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsīt. Acrīter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et illātis et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captivīs quaereret Caesar quam ob
10 rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn decertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae

pellō, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. 1.

2. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. *

4. meridiēs, -ēī, *m.*, [for medi-diēs,

from medius, middle+diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. 1.

7. utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. 2.

usque, *adv.* (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

12. reliquās: sc. legiōnēs.

redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. Ariovistus unsuccessfully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.

1. institūtō: ablative of accordance.

2. paulum . . . prōgressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see 48, 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.

7. utrimque pugnātum est, "both sides fought."

9. quam ob rem, "why," is here in-

terrogative and introduces an indirect question.

10. proeliō: see note on castris, 48, 9. decertāret: i.e. fight a general and decisive battle.

11. quod ea cōsuētūdō esset, "that there was this custom," is a substantive quod clause in apposition with hanc causam. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

ut declārarent: a substantive clause of result in apposition with ea cōsuētūdō.

matrēs familiae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (sortibus, l. 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.

eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit; ālāriōs omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitūdine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūteretur; ipse triplici instructā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēnum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs edūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt

12. sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. 3.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. 1.
dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. 1.

13. necne, *conj.* [nec, nor + -ne], or not. 1.

-ne, *interrog. enclitic*: 'in direct questions, simply sign of a question' (App. 213, a); 'in indirect questions, whether; -ne ... -ne, -ne ... an, utrum ...

-ne, whether ... or. 2.

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right, divine right, will of Heaven. 1.

14. lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. 2.

2. ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [āla, wing], on the wing; *pl. as noun*, auxiliaries. 2.

5. speciēs, -ēi, *f.* [speciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.

7. generātim, *adv.* [genus, tribe], by tribes. 1.

12. utrum ... necne: construction? App. 214; 264, c: G.-L. 458; 459: A. 334; 335, n.: B. 162, 4; 300, 4, a: H.-B. 234, a: H. 380; 650, 1.

14. sī contendissent, "if they should fight." *contendissent* stands for a future perfect of the direct form.

novam lūnam: this fell on Sept. 18.

Chap. 51. Caesar compels Ariovistus to prepare for battle.

2. quod ... vīsum est, "(a garrison) which seemed to be sufficient."

ālāriōs: the word got the meaning "auxiliaries" from the fact that in earlier times the Romans posted the auxiliaries on the wings of the battle-line. For Caesar's use of such troops see Int. 47.

3. multitūdine: ablative of specification.

4. prō, "in comparison with."

6. necessariō: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was

evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle-line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack uphill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.

7. generātim, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is, that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. They are to every man the most sacred witnesses of his bravery—they are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food

paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangi-onēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs
 10 et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentēs militēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs
 5 signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pilis comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōsuetūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem

8. Marcomannī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bī), the Marcomanni (mār'kō-mān'ī). 1.

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). 2.

Vanglonēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vanglones (vān-jī'ō-nēz). 1.

9. Nemetēs, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). 1.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusiī (sē-dū'shī). 1.

12. pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capillīs, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. 2.

1. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō,

and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the *Germania*).

8. intervallis: ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. circumdedērunt: i.e. on the rear and both flanks.

11. eō, "on them," is the adverb.

Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought.

1. singulis . . . praefēcit: i.e. each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one

seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. 3.

3. dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (of an army) flank, wing. *

5. repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

6. prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. 1.

7. comminus, *adv.* [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1.

9. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [capiō, take], *tr.*, take up,

of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39.

3. eam partem: i.e. the enemy's left wing.

5. signō datō: by trumpeters.

itaque = *et ita*.

6. pīla . . . coniciendī: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55.

7. rēiectīs, "throwing aside." The pīla were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter.

8. phalange: on this formation see 24, 11, note.

9. in phalangem insilirent: i.e.

insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. 10
 Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam
 coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum
 nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus
 adulēscēns, quī equitatūi praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam
 īī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nos- 15
 trīs subsidiō mīsīt.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga
 vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum
 milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi

catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. *

10. insiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultum, *tr.* [salīō, leap], leap upon. 1.

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr.* [re-+vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. 1.

desuper, *adv.* [super, above], from above. 1.

13. premō, -premere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *

Crassus, -i, *m.* Publius Licinius Crassus (pūb/li-ūs lī-sin/i-ūs krās/ūs)

the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields. If the Romans had been able to begin the battle with the customary volley of javelins, this solid array of shields would have been broken up as it was in the battle with the Helvetii, 25, 8-10. insilirent: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

11. cum, "though."

ā sinistrō cornū, "on the left wing," which was the weakest part of the German line.

14. expeditior, "freer to act." Crassus and the cavalry were posted behind the Roman left wing (see plan, p. 153), out of the way of the German cavalry, for whom they were no match. They were taking no part in the battle, but were waiting to pursue the enemy when the legions should win the victory.

one of Caesar's lieutenants, a son of the triumvir. *

16. subsidium, -di, *n.* [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

1. tergum, -i, *n.*, the back; terga vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab tergō, in the rear. *

2. vertō, vertere verti versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. *

fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitum, *tr. and intr.* [fuga, flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

15. tertiam aciem: as usual, this was being held in reserve for just such an emergency.

labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō, "to the assistance of our hard-pressed men."

Chap. 53. The Germans are routed. Caesar's envoys are rescued.

1. terga vertērunt: the line of wagons (51, 9) might hinder their flight, but could not entirely prevent it. It is possible, too, that during the battle the Germans had advanced so far that there was space enough for flight between the wagons and the German line.

2. flūmen Rhēnum: as the Rhine is much more than five miles from the battlefield, it is probable that the Ill river is meant, and that Caesar mistook it for the Rhine.

perpaucī aut viribus cōfisi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus
 5 inventis sibi salūtem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī
 nāviculam dēligātā ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs
 omnēs cōsecūti equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. # Duae fuērunt
 Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam ~~domo~~ sēcum
 dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Voccionis soror, quam in Galliā
 10 dūxerat, ā frātre missā; utraque in eā fugā periit. # Fuērunt
 duae filiae: hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius
 Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus
 traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem
 incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa
 15 victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum
 prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex
 manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte

4. trānō, 1. *intr.* [trāns+nō, swim], swim across. 1.

5. inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

6. nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of nāvis, ship], small boat, skiff. 1.

dēligō, 1. *tr.* [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 2.

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

8. nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

9. Voccio, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio (vōk'shyō), a king of Noricum. 1.

10. pereō, -īre, -īī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed,

perish. 2.

12. trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. 1.

vinciō, vincere, vixī, vinctum, *tr.*, bind. 1.

13. trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. 1.

14. incidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

15. voluptās, -tātis, *f.* [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. 2.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 1.

16. hospes, -itis, *m.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. 1.

4. viribus: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

5. Ariovistus: four years later we hear that the Germans desired to avenge his death. Possibly he died of wounds received in this battle.

6. eā, "in this," is an ablative of means.

reliquōs omnēs: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 were killed in the battle and retreat.

7. duae uxōrēs: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.

8. nātiōne: ablative of specification.

10. dūxerat: "had married"; while dūxerat in l. 9 means "had brought."

12. Procillus: cf. 47, 9.

13. īnsequentem, "who was following."

17. neque . . . dēminuerat, "nor had Fortune, by injury to Procillus,

dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dīcēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium 20 beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubīī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellis cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, 5 in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

18. grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1.

19. ter, *num. adv.* [cf. trēs, three], three times. 1.

cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. 1.

20. statim, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. *

necō, 1. *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

reservō, 1. *tr.* [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

21. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

2. Ubīī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bi-i). *

4. aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. *

5. paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

7. praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. 1.

lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing"; lit. "lessened anything of," quicquam being the direct object.

19. sē praesente, "in his presence."

cōsultum: sc. esse.

20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575, b: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

Chap. 54. The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.

1. quī . . . vēnerant: cf. 37, 5.

3. Rhēnum: case? App. 122, b: G.-L.

359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 435, 2.

5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Vesontio. The quartering of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.

7. ad conventūs agendōs, "to hold the provincial courts." This was a part of his duty as governor of the province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there.

BOOK II. WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 117), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of nearly three hundred thousand men, which they massed not far from the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (*Aisne*) river, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgic army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all falsely promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium he quickly received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states too sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebatas assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (*Sambre*) river, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost

heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatucaii dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Meanwhile, the states of northwestern Gaul had submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing p. 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for **I, 30-54**, facing p. 117. In addition, the Nervii, the Viromandui, the Atrebatas, and the Atuatuca are colored red, for they seriously fought with Caesar.

Most of the rest of Belgium is colored blue, though it is hard to decide between blue and red for some of the states. Although all the states had promised to send quotas to the great army which melted away before Caesar at the Axona, we cannot be sure how many did so; and it can hardly be said that Caesar won the submission of the several states by defeating that army. The Suessiones prepared to fight, but did not do so. The Bellovaci and the Ambiani did not even prepare to fight. Therefore these three states are colored blue. The states which are not mentioned must in general have sent embassies of submission; but the Morini and the Menapii are left uncolored, because in **III, 28** we are told that they had never sued for peace.

The northwestern states mentioned in chap. **34** are colored blue. Crassus went to them with only one legion, and the events of Book **III** make it certain that one legion could not have defeated those states in battle. Evidently they submitted without fighting.

The battle-fields on the Axona and on the Sabis are as certain as they well can be. The site of the town of the Atuatuca is very uncertain. The one indicated on the map is Mont Falhize, championed by Von Göler (*Caesars Gallischer Krieg*, pp. 90 ff.). Caesar does not tell us that the town was on a river; but all the other sites which have been suggested are open to more serious objections.



Campaign Map for Book II

LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēque inter sē dare. Coniūrāndi hās esse causās; primum, 5 quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur,

1. suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *as adv.*, before, previously; (2) *as prep. with acc.*, above; before. *

2. crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp. crēbrior*; *sup.*, *crēberrimus* (App. 40). 4.

rŭmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. 2.

afferō, *afferre*, *attulī*, *allātum*, *tr.*

[*ad+ferō*, carry. App 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

4. coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [*iūrō*, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. *

7. sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. 2.

Chap. 1. The Belgae form a league against Caesar.

1. citeriōre Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

dēmōnstrāvimus: in I, 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. Labiēni: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

certior fiēbat, "was informed from time to time." The imperfect of repeated action.

Belgās: see Int. 28.

quam . . . dixerāmus, "who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul." *quam* refers to *Belgās*, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun *partem*. The pluperfect *dixerāmus* is occasionally used in such statements

instead of the more common perfect.

4. coniūrāre, "were forming a league," not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

6. quod verērentur: a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causās*. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

omnī . . . Galliā, "now that all Gaul had been brought under control." *Galliā* here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 28.

7. sollicitārentur: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.

partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in
 10 Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iis, quī ad cōducendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

8. **partim**, *adv.* [acc. of pars, part], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. 4.

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass.* as *deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

9. **inveterāscō**, -**veterāscere**, -**veterāvi**, -**veterātum**, *intr.*, grow old; become established. 1.

10. **molestē**, *adv.*, with annoyance;

molestē ferre, be annoyed. 1.

mōbilitās, -**tātis**, *f.* [mōbilis, movable], movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

levitās, -**tātis**, *f.* [levis, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. 1.

13. **vulgō**, *adv.* [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

8. **partim quī**, "some of whom"; i.e. the opponents of all foreigners.

10. **partim quī**, "others of whom." **mōbilitāte et levitāte**: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

11. **ab nōn nūllīs** (*sollicitārentur*): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I, 2), Casticus (I, 3), and Dumnorix (I, 18).

*1. **esset**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

2. **litteris**: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. **Labiēni**: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Belgās: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

4. **coniūrāre**: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

obsidēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

6. **verērentur**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

12. **ad . . . hominēs**, "for employing mercenaries."

13. **quī . . . poterant**: see Int. 29, end. Of course this power of the nobles would be held in check by a strong government like that of the Romans.

14. **imperiō nostrō**: case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

Galliā: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 2: B. 227, 2, d: H.-B. 421, 4: H. 489, 1.

7. **addūcerētur**: mode? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

Gallis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

9. **populī**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

10. **mōbilitāte**: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

11. **imperiīs**: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (b): H. 426, 1.

13. **occupābantur**: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 539: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

* These grammar references are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes on each of the first 29 chapters of Book I. They are given for the convenience

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pēdiūm lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. [Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgis erant uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī.] Tum vērō dubitandum

2. *ineō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; *inire cōsiliūm*, form; *inire ratiōnem*, make an estimate, decide; *inire grātiam*, gain; *inire numerum*, enumerate. *

aestās, -tātis, f., summer. *

3. *dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. *

Q., *abbr. for Quintus*, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Pēdius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pēdius (kwīn'tūs pē'dī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 2.

Chap. 2-4. Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Remi.

Chap. 2. Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. *duās legiōnēs*: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32, 33.

2. *initā aestāte*, "after the beginning of warm weather." *Aestās* included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulteriōrem Galliam: i.e. to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 162.

4. *incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr.* [capiō, take], undertake; begin, commence. 1.

5. *negōtium, -tī, n.* [neg- + ōtium leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; *negōtium dare*, employ, direct; *quid negōtī*, what business; *nihil negōtī*, no difficulty. *

Senonēs, -um, m. (Bef), the Senone, (sēn'ō-nēz). 1.

7. *cōstanter, adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2.

8. *vērō, adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. *

3. *quī (eās) dēdūceret*, "to take them."

cum primum: in June. *Cum primum* usually takes the indicative.

6. *gerantur*: Caesar said *ea quae gerantur cognōscite*, "find out what is being done." *gerantur* is the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse: App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, note: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.

7. *manūs cōgī*, "that armed bands were gathering."

8. *dubitandum (sibi ease) quā pro-fici-sceretur*, lit. "that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out," = "that he should hesitate to set out." When *dubitō* means "hesitate" it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 229, d: G.-L. 565, 2, R. 3. A. 558, a, n. 2:

of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. References are given three times for each of the most common principles of syntax, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā
 10 comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs
 Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum [dē imprōvisō] celeriusque omnium opīniōne
 vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum
 lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs cīvitātis, mīserunt, quī

1. **imprōvisus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + **prōvisus**, foreseen; **prōvideō**], unforeseen, unexpected; **dē** 'imprōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly. 1.

opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [opīnor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opīniō timōris**, impression of cowardice. *

2. **Rēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to or one of the Remi; *pl. as noun*, **Rēmī**, *m.* (Bef), the Remi (rēmī). *

3. **Iccius**, -cī, *m.*, Iccius (ik'shyūs), a chief of the Remi. 3.

Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius (än'dē-brō'jyūs). 1.

B. 298, b: H.-B. 521, 3, b; 586: H. 595, 1; 607, 1.

10. **ad finēs**: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesar probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See map facing p. 162, and Int. 54.

Chap. 3. The Remi submit to Caesar.

1. **eō**: the adverb.

omnium opīniōne, lit. "than the opinion of all," = "than any one had expected."

2. **Rēmī**: a Belgian state, of appar-

ently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximī . . . Belgis, "the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul"; i.e. at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

ex Belgis: the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

3. **quī dicerent**: purpose. The rest

1. **legiōnēs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. **aestāte**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

3. **dēdūceret**: mode? App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 630: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 590.

lēgātum: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

4. **pābuli**: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

inciperet: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

5. **Senonibus**: case? App. 114: G.-L. 346: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

Belgis: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (a): H. 434, 2.

6. **cognōscant**: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565.

7. **certiōrem**: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

manūs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

8. **cōgī**: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

10. **diēbus**: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

11. **Belgārum**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmānī ~~permittere~~; ~~neque~~ sē cum reliquīs Belgīs ~~cōnsēnsisse~~, neque contrā populum Rōmānum ~~coniūrāsse~~, ~~parātōsque~~ esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furō-¹⁰ rem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, dētērrēre potuerint quā cum hīs cōsēntirent.

5. **permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -misum, tr.** [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

6. **cōsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsū, intr.** [sentiō, feel], think together; agree, combine. 2.

7. **imperātum, -ī, n.** [imperō, command], command, order. 2.

8. **cēteri, -ae, -a, adj.**, the rest of,

of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

4. **sē** is the object of *permittere*. Another *sē* must be supplied as its subject: "that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions," etc.

5. **neque . . . neque . . . que**, "(and) not . . . and not . . . and."

1. **opiniōne**: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406, a; B. 217, 1, 4: H.-B. 416, e: H. 471, 8.

2. **vēnisset**: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

proximī: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Galliae: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (a): H. 434, 2.

3. **légātōs**: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

5. **Belgis**: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. **coniūrāsse**: form? App. 72: G.-L.

the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

9. **cis**, prep. with acc., on this side of. 2.

10. **coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr.** [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *

furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

11. **Suessiōnēs, -um, m.** (Be), the Suessiones (swēs"-i-ō'nēz). *

7. **esse**: infinitive in indirect discourse. *dare, facere, recipere*, and *iuvare* depend on *parātōs*.

9. **cis**: the Gallic side.

10. **sēsē**: do not translate.

11. **ut**: with *potuerint*.

Suessiōnēs: object of *dētērrēre*.

13. **dētērrēre quīn**, "prevent from."

131, 1: A. 181, a; B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

7. **oppidīs**: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423; 446, 1: H. 476, 3.

9. **incolant**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2: H. 643.

11. **frātrēs**: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

12. **iūre**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410; B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, 1.

13. **potuerint**: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

14. **cōsēntirent**: mode? App. 228, c: G.-L. 555, 1: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 563, 1; 566.

4. Cum ab iis quaereret quae civitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent
 5 expulsi^s solōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri utī eārum rerū memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicēbant,
 10 propterea quod propinquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō

2. *quid, interrog. adv., why? with posse, how? e.g. quid Germānī pos- sent, how strong were the Germans. * sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. * plērīque, -aeque, -aque, adj. pl., very many, the most of; as noun, a great many, very many. 2.*

3. *antīquitus, adv. [antiquus, an- cient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. 2.*

4. *fertilitās, -tātis, f. [fertilis, productive], productiveness. 1.*

5. *expellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pul- sum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. 4.*

6. *Teutonī, -ōrum or Teutonēs, -um, m., the Teutoni (tū'tō-nī) or Teu-*

tones (tū'tō-nēz).

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., the Cimbri (sīm'- bri). 4.

intrā, prep. with acc. [inter, between] within, inside; into. 4.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, go], go or come into, enter. 1.

8. *spīritus, -ūs, m. [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; in pl., haughtiness, pride. 2.*

9. *explōrō, 1, tr., search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. 2.*

10. *propinquitās, -tātis, f. [pro- pinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. 3.*

11. *commūnis, -e, adj., common, general; rēs commūnis, the common interest. **

Chap. 4. The Remi inform Caesar of the numbers in the Belgian army.

1. *iis*: i.e. the envoys of the Remi.

2. *quid*: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

plērōsque Belgās: the remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

The tradition that most of the Belgae were descended from Germans was not strictly true, but the Belgae prided themselves on the supposed fact because of the Germans' renown in war.

4. *Gallōs*: the object.

6. *Teutonōs Cimbrōsque*: on this invasion see Int. 27.

ingredi prohibuerint, "prevented from entering." Caesar always uses the infinitive after *prohibeo*, instead of the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus*.

7. *prohibuerint* was subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 230, b: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, b: B. 283, 2: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 1.

9. *dē numerō*: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian army.

omnia . . . explorāta, "that they had ascertained everything." See references at the end of the chapter.

11. *quisque*: i.e. each delegate.

ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. [Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctoritāte et hominum numerō valēre] hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postu- 15
lāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimū, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam 20
prudentiamque summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII; pollicērī milia armāta quinquāgintā;

13. Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovacī (bē-lōv'ā-sī). *

14. armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm (one's self); armātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, armed; armāti, *as noun*, armed men. *

15. ēlīgō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; ēlēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (*men, etc.*). 1.

sexāgintā (LX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl. [sex, six], sixty. 1.

postulō, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *

16. ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. 1.

17. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sesum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. *

18. Diviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus, (dīv'i-shī-ā'kūs), a chief of the Suessiones. 1.

12. pollicitus sit: an indirect question, and therefore subjunctive in the direct form.

plūrimum: compare note on *quid*, 1. 2.

14. armāta milia centum, lit. "one hundred armed thousands," = "one hundred thousand armed men."

pollicitōs: supply *esse*.

16. suōs: i.e. of the Remi; see map.

17. possidēre: supply *eōs* (Suessiōnēs) on the subject.

19. regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; ē regiōne, with *gen.*, opposite. *

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān'ī-ā), better Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*), never *Britany*. *

20. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba (gāl'ba), a king of the Suessiones. 2.

21. prudentia, -ae, *f.* [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. 1.

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; dēlātus (*sometimes*), falling; coming by chance. *

22. quinquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., fifty. 3.

18. Diviciācum: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.

cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

19. partis and Britanniae both depend on *imperium*.

Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.

21. summam: the noun; not the superlative adjective.

totidem Nervios, qui maximē feri inter ipsos habeantur longis-
simēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebatēs, Ambianōs decem
25 milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia,
Velocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuaticōs xix milia;
Condrūsos, Eburonēs, Caerōsos, Caemānos, qui unō nōmine
Germāni appellantur, arbitrari ad xl milia.

23. totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

Nervius, -a, -um, adj. (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vī-i).

* **ferus, -a, -um, adj.**, wild, savage, fierce. *

24. Atrebās, -bātis, m. (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā'tēz). *

Ambiāni, -ōrum, m. (ABde), the Ambiani (ām'bī-ā'nī). 2.

25. Morinī, -ōrum, m. (Ae), the Morini (mōr'ī-nī). *

Menapii, -ōrum, m. (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pī-i). *

septem (VII), card. num. adj., indecl., seven. 2.

Caleti, -ōrum (or -ēs, -um), m. (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). 1.

26. Velocassēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Velocasses (vē'li-ō-kās'ēz). 1.

Viromandui, -ōrum m. (Be), the Viromandui (vir'ō-mān'dū-i). 3.

Atuatici, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Atuatici (āt'ū-āt'ū-sī). 4.

27. Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Condrusi (kōn-drū'sī). 2.

Eburonēs, -um, m. (Afg), the Eburo-nes (ēb'ū-rō'nēz). 2.

Caerōsi, -ōrum, m. (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). 1.

Caemāni, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Caemāni (sē-mā'nī). 1.

23. Nervios: with this and the following proper nouns supply *polliceri*.

maximē feri: the superlative.

longissimē absint: i.e. from the

southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapii.

28. Germāni: these tribes were very

2. essent: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

3. Germānis: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, b: H. 469, 1.

Rhenum: case? App. 127, a: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1, 2: B. 179, 1, 3: H.-B. 386, a: H. 413.

5. patrum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1, n. 1.

7. quā: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

rerum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

memoriā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

8. sibi: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

sūmerent: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

9. explorāta: use? App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

13. virtūte: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397, 2: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

18. memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

19. regiōnum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

21. voluntāte: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quātopere rei publicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distīnērī, nē cum tantā multītūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmīttit. Postquam

1. liberāliter, *adv.* [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3.

prōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with ōrātiōne, address. 3.

3. diligenter, *adv.* [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, or care. 4.

5. doceō, docēre, docui, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *

quātopere, *adv.* [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much

as. 1.

6. distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. 3.

7. cōnflīgō, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum, *intr.* [fligō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. 1.

8. intrōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ducum, *tr.* [intrō, within + dūcō, lead], lead or bring into. 3.

9. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.

appellantur: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.

arbitrārī (pollicērī), "they (the Remi) thought the Condrusi . . . promised."

Chap. 5-8. The armies approach each other.

Chap. 5. Caesar sends the Haedui to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.

5. quātopere: interrogative. Explain the mode of *intersit*.

commūnis salūtis: i.e. of both Haedui and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.

intersit . . . distīnērī, lit. "the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned," = "it concerned . . . that the

bands of the enemy be kept apart." The clause *manūs . . . distīnērī* is the subject of the impersonal verb *intersit*.

6. nē cōnflīgendum sit, lit. "that it might not have to be fought," = "that they might not have to fight." The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

7. id: i.e. keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence *id . . . coeperint* is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet*, l. 5.

in finēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovacii were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see 4, 15 and 20), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home.

8. intrōdūxerint, coeperint: perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicative of the direct form.

10 omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre¹
neque iam longē abesse ab iis quōs miserat explorātōribus et
ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs
Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi
15 mūniēbat, et (post eum quae erant) tūta ab hostibūs reddēbat,
et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquisque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō
ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi
praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabin-
num lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudi-

12. **Axona**, -ae, *m.* (Bf), the Axona (āk'sō-nā), a river, now the Aisne. 2.

15. **tūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [tucor, protect], protected, safe, secure. *

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [red- + dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. *

16. **commeātus**, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; sup-

plies, provisions. *

17. **efficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

18. **Sabinus**, -i, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'tūs tī-tū'rī-ūs sa-bī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

19. **cohors**, -tis, *f.*, cohort. *

10. **in ūnum locum**: somewhere to the northwest of the Axona river.

coāctās venire, lit. "having been gathered were coming," = "had gathered and were coming."

venire, **abesse**: indirect discourse, depending on *cognōvit*.

11. **ab iis explorātōribus cognōvit**, "learned from the scouts."

14. **castra**: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is a hill situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little marshy tributary, the Miette, which formed an excellent defense in front. See plan, p. 177. The hill is eighty feet high.

quae rēs et, "this position both."

latus ūnum: the left side, for the camp faced west.

15. **post . . . reddēbat**, "rendered safe from the enemy all that was behind

him"; i.e. that part of the Remi from whom he had just marched, and the road by which supplies were coming.

16. **commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat**, lit. "made that provisions could be brought up," = "made it possible for." **ut . . . possent** is a substantive clause of result, the object of *efficiēbat*.

17. **in**, "over."

18. **praesidium**: a small fortified camp, to defend the northern end of the bridge.

in alterā parte, "on the other side"; i.e. at the southern end of the bridge. This guard was posted to protect the bridge in case some of the enemy should cross the river by a ford.

19. **sex cohortibus**: how many men? See Int. 33.

castra: the main camp on the hill. For a plan of this camp and for details of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52.

nem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūniri iubet.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā

1. **Bibrax**, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. 1.

3. **sustentō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [freq. of **sustineō**, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. 2.

4. **oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. 2.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. 1.

5. **moenia**, -ium, *n. pl.*, defensive

walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. 3.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. *

iaciō, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iectum**, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. *

6. **dēfēnsor**, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. *

nūdō, 1, *tr.* [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. 3.

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. 1.

20. **duodēvigintī pedum**: i.e. in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. 6. The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.

1. **nōmine**: ablative of specification.

Bibrax: see map facing p. 162.

2. **ex itinere**: i.e. without stopping to make camp.

3. **sustentātum est**, lit. "it was held

3. **quae**: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

5. **docet**: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

rei publicae: case? App. 110: G.-L. 381: A. 355: B. 210; 211, 1: H.-B. 345: H. 449, 1.

6. **multitudīne**: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413, b: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 4: H. 473, 1.

out"; but translate personally.

eadem atque Belgārum, "(which is) the same as (that) of the Belgae." See atque in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."

4. **haec**, "as follows."

circumiciētā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause; "when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun, etc."

6. **coeptī sunt**: why not *coepērunt*?

7. **cōnfigendum sit**: mode? App. 225, b: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

12. **cognōvit**: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

flūmen, exercitum: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, u. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

20. **pedum**: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, R. 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, 10 Iccius Rēmus, summā nobilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus quī

7. subruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, tr. [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. 1.

12. subsidium, -dī, n. [subsidiō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in re-

See App. 86, a: G.-L. 175, 5, a: A. 205, a: B. 133, 1: H.-B. 199, 2: H. 299, 1.

testūdine: see Plate III, 3, facing p. 34.

8. conicerent agrees with the meaning, not the grammatical form, of the collective noun *multitūdō*.

10. summā, "(a man) of the highest."

11. ūnus ex iīs: App. 101, b: G.-L. 372, R. 2: A. 346, c: B. 201, 1, a: H.-B. 346, e: H.

2. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, 1: H. 417.

impetū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. diē: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

5. moenibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

6. coepti sunt: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554: 557: H. 602.

dēfēnsōribus: case? App. 134, b: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, b: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

8. conicerent: mode? App. 240: 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a: 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

9. nulli: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

10. nobilitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 448: H. 473, 2.

serve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

submittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. *

444. ūnus is here used as a noun in apposition with *Iccius*.

12. submittātur: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. *nūntiōs mittit* implies "saying."

Chap. 7. Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.

1. eō: to Bibrax.

isdem ducibus ūsus, "employing the same persons as guides."

12. mittit: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

13. sēsē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

posse: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642, 1.

As explained under II, 1, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so at once.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subject of infinitive

Ablative of time

Narrative cum clause

Infinitive in indirect discourse

nūntiī ab Iccio vēnerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidio oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spē potius oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuērunt, quae castra, ut fūmō

2. Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū'mī-dē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.

*

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē'tēz), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. 1.

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. 3.

3. funditor, -ōris, *m.* [funda, sling], slinger. 4.

Baliāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (bāl'ē-ā'-rīk), (i.e. coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca). 1.

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in *pl.* as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 2.

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defense. 1.

prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. 1.

6. paulisper, *adv.* [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. 3.

adeō, -ire, -i, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; as-sail, attack. *

9. fūmus, -i, *m.*, smoke. 1.

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, "at their arrival"; an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

4. et . . . et, "not only . . . but also."

cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, "along with the hope of (making a successful) defense."

5. hostibus discessit, lit. "went away for the enemy" = "left the enemy." *hostibus* is a dative of reference. As the idea here is one of separation, it may be called a dative of separation.

potiundī: the older form of the gerundive, for *potiendī*. How can *potior*, an

intransitive verb, have a gerundive? App. 289, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, b, n.: H. 623, 1.

6. morātī, dēpopulātī: as *moror* and *dēpopulor* are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of *contendērunt*. But as *incēnsus* is passive in meaning, the idea "having burned their villages" must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. ā . . . duobus, "less than two miles away"; i.e. from Caesar's camp. *ab* is here used adverbially; *milibus* is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative *minus* not affecting the construction. See App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

9. ut, "as."

10 atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in
lātitudinem patēbant.

✓ 8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et
propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit;
cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et
quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse
5 inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam

10. **significō**, 1, *tr.* [**signum**, sign + **faciō**, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4.

1. **primō**, *adv.* [**primus**, first], at first, in the first place. *

2. **eximius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**eximō**, take out], taken from the mass; hence

choice, eminent. 1.

supersedēō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. 1.

4. **periclitor**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**periculum**, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. 1.

10. **milibus**: ablative after the comparative *amplius*. The references on 1. 8 say only that *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

1. **multitudinem**: if the states sent the quotas promised in chap. 4, the total was 296,000 men; but probably not all were sent.

2. **opīniōnem virtūtis**, "reputation for valor."

proeliō: ablative of separation.

4. **nostrī**: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.

5. The following description is less clear than most of Caesar's descriptions of places, so that it cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending

1. **mediā**: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

isdem: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, 1.

2. **sagittariōs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

3. **subsidiō, oppidānis**: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

4. **dēfēnsiōnis**: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

prōpugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 336, 1, a: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

5. **potiundi**: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503, a; 504: B. 339,

1: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, 1: H. 623; 626.

7. **vicis**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

8. **Caesaris**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

cōpiis: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

milibus duobus: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

10. **milibus octō**: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive

Direct object

Ablative absolute

nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, (quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum adversus in lātītūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque

6. *opportūnus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune; lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

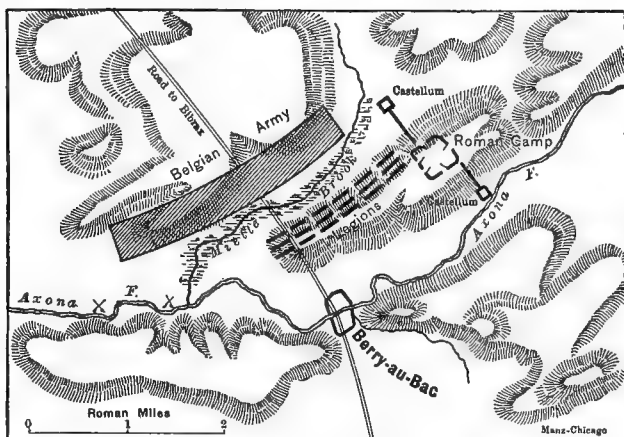
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

7. *paululum*, *adv.* [paulus, little],

a very little. 1.

plānitīēs, -ēī, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of ēdō*, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2.



BATTLE ON THE AXONA

nearly east and west. The camp was at the east end, facing west. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy. Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its *latera*.

locō opportūnō, "since the place was suitable." The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.

prō castris: i.e. to the west of the camp.

6. *collis* is the subject of *patēbat*, *habebat*, and *redībat*.

7. *tantum . . . poterat*, lit. "extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill" = "was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend."

in lātītūdinem: i.e. from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.

8. *locī*: we should expect this partitive genitive to limit *tantum* rather than *quantum*.

ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter
 10 fastigātus paulātīm ad plānitīem redībat) ab utrōque latere
 eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et
 ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit,
 nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudine
 poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent.
 15 Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in
 castris relictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reli-

9. *uterque, utraque, utrumque*, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēiciō, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. *

frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. 3. *lēniter*, *adv.* [lēnis, smooth], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. 2.

10. *fastigātus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, sloping. 1.

paulātīm, *adv.* [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

11. *trānsversus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [trānsvērtō, turn across], turned across, cross. 1.

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead towards; extend,

dig. 1.

12. *tormentum*, -ī, *n.* [torqueō, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, e.g. *catapulta* and *ballista*; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. 3.

16. *quō*, *adv.* [old *dat. case of quī*, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

opus, *indecl. noun*, *n.* [cf. *opus*, work, deed], need, necessity; *opus est*, it is necessary, there is need, *the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or the abl.* (App. 146). *

9. *ex . . . lateris*, *lit.* "at each end of the side" = "at each end"; i.e. the east and west ends of the hill. *utrāque parte* alone might mean either the ends or the sides. As *latus* means one of the long sides of the hill, *utrāque parte lateris* must mean the ends.

in fronte: i.e. the northern slope.

10. *ab utrōque latere*, "on each side"; i.e. on the northern and southern slopes.

11. *trānsversam*, "at right angles" to the ridge. The plan shows that one trench ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. *extrēmās*: i.e. the outer ends.

tormenta: see Int. 63.

13. *instrūxisset*: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect, for Caesar's thought was "that I may not be surrounded when I shall have drawn up my line."

14. *ab lateribus*, "on the flanks." The trenches protected only the right flank of the army, but the left was sufficiently protected by the Miette.

15. *quās . . . cōscripserat*: cf. 2. 1. These legions were not sufficiently disciplined to be brought into the battle unless it were necessary.

16. *quō*: the adverb; supply *dūcī*: "if there should be need of their being led anywhere."

subsidiō: dative of purpose.

quās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostri autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut impeditōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebatur. Ubi neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; sī

1. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. *

5. neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* -trius, *dat.* -trī), *adj. used as noun* [ne-+uter, *whic of two*], neither; *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. 1.

7. prōtinus, *adv.* [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 1.

11. interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, *tr.* [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. 1.

Chap. 9-11. The Belgae return home without risking a decisive battle.

Chap. 9. Not venturing to attack Caesar, the Belgae attempt to pass him by a ford.

1. palūs erat, "there was a marsh"; i.e. the marshy ground along the Mienne.

2. sī trānsīrent: construction? App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, b: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.

3. sī . . . fieret, "if they should begin to cross." The clause depends on *ut aggrederentur*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin."

impeditōs: i.e. bycrossing the marsh.

6. faciunt: historical present, for the more usual perfect after *ubi*.

secundiōre proeliō: ablative absolute.

8. contendērunt: Caesar did not see this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. vadis: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabres.

10. eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., "with this design, to storm, if they could, etc."

possent: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But *praeerat* is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.

3. proeliis: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

posset: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

6. nātūrā: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397:

A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

8. patēbat: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of means

minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsui ad bellum gerendum erant, cōmmeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressi magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfecērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō

13. ego, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* nōs, we, us, etc. *

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtōr, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, there is need; ūsui esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venire, come by

necessity, happen. *

2. levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. 2.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. 2.

12. minus, "not," as is usual after *sī*. potuissent stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.

populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as *expugnārent*.

Chap. 10. The Belgae are repulsed at the ford and decide to return home.

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-

armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.

3. in eō locō: i.e. at the fords.

4. nostrī is the subject of *occidērunt*, *reppulērunt*, and *interfecērunt*.

8. ubi introduces *intellēxērunt*, *vidērunt*, and *coepit*.

3. trānseundī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, a: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

4. aggrederentur: mode? App. 225, a, 3: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

6. nostris: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

10. cōnsiliō: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475.

cui: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

11. lēgātus: case? App. 95, b: G.-L.

330; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

13. nōbīs ūsui: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

gerendum: construction? App. 288; 289; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503, a; 506, n. 2: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 639; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628, footnote 2.

commeātū: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition

Dative with adjectives

Ablative of cause

Purpose clauses

spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīqu-
 ōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs 10
 frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt
 optimum esse dōmum suam quēque revertī, et, quōrum in
 finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfen-
 dendōs undique convenīrent; ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis
 finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūter- 15
 entur. Ad eam ^{decisionem} sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque
 ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus
 Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādēri ut

9. fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2.

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *

10. prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. *

11. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. *

14. potius, *adv.* [comp. of potis, able], rather. 2.

15. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. *

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. 1.

16. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentīō, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *

18. appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [ad + propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. *

9. ubi . . . intellēxērunt, lit. "when they saw that their hope about the town to be taken . . . had disappointed them" = "when they saw that they were disappointed in their hope of taking the town."

neque = et nōn.

nostrōs . . . prōgredi: i.e. the legions would not descend the hill to the Mlette.

10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires thorough organization to supply so large an army. Caesar's superiority to the Gallic leaders is always evident in this matter no less than on the battle field. He sometimes marched into the heart of a hostile country, where it is hard to see how he secured supplies; but we hear only once of a failure to keep his army well fed.

11. cōstituērunt has two objects,

(1) *optimum esse*, "that it was best" (indirect discourse), and (2) (*ut*) *convenīrent*, "to assemble" (a substantive volitive clause).

13. intrōdūxissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "let us assemble to protect those into whose territory the Romans shall have led."

16. cum, "in addition to."

17. Dīviciācum . . . appropinquāre: in accordance with Caesar's directions See 5, 7.

finibus: indirect object of the compound verb *appropinquāre*.

18. his persuādēri nōn poterat, lit. "it could not be persuaded to these." Turn into English. It will be remembered that the Bellovaci had reason to be lukewarm in their allegiance to the confederation. See note on 5, 7.

diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.
 ✓ 11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū
 ac tumultū castris ēgressi nullō certō ordine neque imperiō,
 cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum
 pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō
 5 vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā

1. strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. 2.

2. tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; primī ordinēs, centurions of the first rank. *

4. properō, 1, *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. 2.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. 1.

5. statim, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. *

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. 1.

19. neque = et nōn.

Chap. 11. The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.

1. secundā vigiliā: i.e. during the second quarter of the night. As the nights were short, this would be between

ten and twelve.

2. castris: ablative of separation.

4. fēcērunt ut profectiō vidērētur, "they made their departure seem." fugae: dative.

1. certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

ab Tituriō: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

2. armātūrae: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

equitatum, pontem: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

5. eōrum (numerus): case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

8. expugnandō: construction? App. 288; 289; 294: G.-L. 427; 433: A. 503, a; 507: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, IV; 613, 1: H. 623; 629.

9. intellēxērunt: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

10. pugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428, R. 2: A. 501; 502; 504, b: B. 338, 1, c: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.

12. domum: case? App. 131: G.-L.

337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H. 419, 1.

13. intrōdūxissent: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

18. cognōverant: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 523, n. 1; 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

his: case? App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a, b: H.-B. 362; 364, 2: H. 426, 2, 3.

19. morārentur: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565.

suis: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate adjective Indirect object
 Partitive genitive Ablative of agent
 Gerund Gerundive
 Two objects with compound verbs
 Substantive volitive (purpose) clauses
 Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.
 Dependent clauses in ind. discourse

insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā luce cōfirmatā rē ab explorātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs (praefēcit.) T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecuti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitatē neque imperiō cōtinērentur, exauditō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum

6. **perspicīō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum**, *tr.* [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

10. **Aurunculēius, -ī, m.**, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng'-kū-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 3.

11. **subsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum**, *tr. and intr.* [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. *

13. **fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitum**, *tr. and intr.* [fuga, flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

6. **quod perspexerat**: a causal clause.

7. **castris**, "in camp"; but the absence of *in* shows that the construction is means, not place.

8. **quī morārētur**, "to delay"; a purpose clause.

11. **lēgātum**: see Int. 38.

subsequi: the legions could not overtake the fugitives, but if the latter stopped to resist the cavalry the legions could make short work of them.

13. **fugientium**, "in their flight."

cum . . . cōsisterent, "since (those) in the rear, whom (our men) had overtaken, would stop." *cōsisterent, sustinērent*,

14. **fortiter**, *adv.* [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. *

15. **prior, prius**, *adj., comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun*, those in front. 2.

16. **necessitās, -tātis, f.** [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. 2.

17. **exaudiō, 4, tr.** [audiō, hear], hear (*from a distance*). 1.

clāmōr, -ōris, m. [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. *

perturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

and *pōnerent* are imperfects of repeated action: all through the day the cavalry kept overtaking bodies of the enemy, who were killed in the manner described in the text.

14. **ventum erat** is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.

15. **priōrēs**, "(but) those [of the enemy] in advance."

quod vidērentur neque cōtinērentur: a causal clause; mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

16. **neque . . . neque**, "and . . . not . . . nor."

multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium;
 20 sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat
 imperātum, recēperunt.

12. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex
 terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximi
 Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum
 Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus,
 5 quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem
 fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre

2. **terror**, -ōris, *m.* terreō, fright-
 en], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2.

4. **Noviodūnum**, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum
 (nō'vī-ō-dū'nūm) (Be) the capital of the
Suessiones, the modern Soissons. 1.

5. **vacuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vacō, be
 empty], empty, unoccupied; free from,
 destitute of. 2.

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō au-**
diēns, obedient. *

19. **quantum . . . spatium**, lit. "as
 was the length of the day" = "as the
 length of the day permitted."

Chap. 12-15. The *Suessiones*, the
Bellovaci, and the *Ambiani* surrender
 to Caesar.

Chap. 12. Caesar takes the chief
 town of the *Suessiones*.

1. **priusquam reciperent**: mode?
 App. 236, b: G.-L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 292, 1,
 b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 2. Now that
 Caesar had broken up the combination
 of states, it only remained for him to
 subdue them one by one.

3. **magnō itinere**: about 28 miles.
 Caesar recrossed the Axona and marched
 along its south bank. See map facing
 p. 162.

4. **ex itinere**: i.e. before making
 camp and without letting the soldiers
 rest, although they were tired after their
 unusually long march (Int. 54). Caesar
 wanted to take the town before its gar-
 rison could be reënforced. On this
 method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. **paucīs dēfendentibus**, "although
 there were but few defenders"; ablative
 absolute with adversative meaning.

1. **strepitū, tumultū, ordine, im-**
periō: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412:
 B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. **peteret**: mode? App. 239: G.-L.
 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337:
 A. 527, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H.
 419, 1.

5. **vidērētur**: mode? App. 229, b:
 G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B.
 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

6. **discēderent**: mode? App. 202:
 G.-L. 467: A. 573, 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B.
 537, b: H. 649, II.

11. **legiōnibus**: case? App. 140: G.-L.
 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H.
 473, 1.

12. **milia**: case? App. 130: G.-L.
 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

15. **militum**: case? App. 98: G.-L.
 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H.
 440, 1.

periculō: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390,
 1: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 3: H.-B. 408, 2, a:
 H. 461.

17. **sibi**: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350,
 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subjective genitive

Ablative of separation

Ablative of accompaniment

Ablative of manner

Indirect question

nōn potuit. ^{more} ~~†~~ Castris mūnitīs vineās agere quaeque ad oppug-
nandum ūsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā
Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit.
Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum actīs, aggere iactō turribusque 10
cōstitutīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante
Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī
lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs
ut cōservārentur, impetrant. ~~to~~ ^{long}

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius
Galbae regis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis,
in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs
dūcit. Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium
contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter 5
milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō

7. vinea, -ae, f. [vinum, wine],
vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense
of a besieging party. 4.

10. agger, aggeris, m., material for
earthworks, earth; embankment,
mound; rampart. *

turris, -is, f., tower. *

11. magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus,
great], greatness, great size, size, ext-
ent; stature (corporum); violence
(venti); severity (poenae); magnitū-

7. vineās agere, "to move up the
vineae." See Int. 62, d.

quaeque, "and (those things) which."

8. ūsui: dative of purpose.

9. in oppidum: they probably en-
tered from the north by crossing the
Axona. There may have been a bridge
which Caesar had not had time to de-
stroy.

10. aggere turribusque: see Int. 61.

13. petentibus Rēmīs: on the rela-
tions between the Remi and the Suessi-
ones see 3, 11.

14. impetrant, "they [the Suessi-

14. cōservārentur: tense? App.
202; 203; 204, b: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, a; 510:
A. 482; 483; 485, e: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B.
476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

dō animi, courage. *

12. celeritās, -tātis, f. [celer,
swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

14. cōservō, 1, tr. [servō, save],
save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.
*

4. Bratuspantium, -tī, n. (Be), Brat-
uspantium (brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm). 1.

6. nātus, -ūs, m. [nāscor, be born],
birth; maiōrēs nātū, greater by birth,
elders. 3.

ones] obtained their request." The
verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against
the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

1. obsidibus, "as hostages"; in ap-
position with primis, which is used as a
noun, and with filiis.

2. Galbae: who had been head of the
league; see 4, 20.

3. Bellovacōs: the strongest Bel-
gian state. For the direction of his
march see map facing p. 162.

6. ex oppidō: is ex needed with this
verb? See 11, 2.

impetrant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L.
229; A. 469; B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Historical present

X
ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepē-
runt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā
populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum
10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, (puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō)
passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum
dīmīssīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba:
Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae
fuisse; (impulsōs) ab suis principibus, quī dicerent Haeduōs ā
5 Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēli-
āsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō
bellum intulisse. (Qui) eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod

7. **tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum**
or **tēnsūm, tr.**, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent, pitch; encamp.* 1.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, *variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc.* *

11. **pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, tr.**, spread or stretch out, extend; **passīs capillis**, with disheveled hair; **passīs manibus**, with outstretched hands. 2.

7. **vōce significāre**: the Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. *sēsē . . . contendere* depends on this expression.

10. **puerī**, "children," both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."

Chap. 14. Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

1. **discessum**: i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.

1. **discessus, -ūs, m.** [**discēdō**, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. 3.

4. **impellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsūm, tr.** [**in + pellō**, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

5. **redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.** [**red- + agō**, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

indignitās, -tātis, f. [**indignus**, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. 1.

3. **omnī tempore fuisse**, "had always been." Diviciacus claims the Bellovaci as members of the league which was headed by the Haedui. See Int. 29.

4. **impulsōs . . . et dēfēcisse et intulisse**, "that they [the Bellovaci] instigated . . . had both revolted and made."

5. **redāctōs perferre**, "had been reduced . . . and were enduring."

7. **quī**, "those who." The unexpected antecedent is the subject of *pro-fūgiisse*.

¶ **quī**: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

6. **nātū**: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226, 1: H.-B. 441: H. 480, 1.

11. **mōre**: case? App. 142, a: G.-L.

399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of specification
Coordinate relative

intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacōs sed etiam pro his Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs 10 utatur. Quod si fecerit, Haeduōrum auctoritatem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consueverint.

15. Caesar honoris Diviciaci atque Haeduōrum causā sese eōs in fidem receptūrum et conservatūrum dixit, et, quod erat civitas magnā inter Belgās auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs 5 Ambianōrum pervēnit, quī se suaque omnia sine morā dēdidē-

9. profugio, -fugere, -fugī, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugio, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

10. clēmētia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. 2.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. 2.

12. amplificō, 1, *tr.* [amplus, large + faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase,

8. quantam intulissent: indirect question.

9. Britanniam: the relations between the Belgae and the Britons appear to have been rather close. See 4, 19.

10. suā, "his usual."

11. quod si fecerit, "if he should do this." The direct form meant "if you shall have done this."

12. quōrum: the antecedent is Belgās.

13. qua: the usual form of the neuter plural, nominative and accusative,

6. populō: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347; A. 370; B. 187, III, 2; H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

10. clēmētiā: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407; A. 410; B. 218, 1; H.-B. 429; H. 477, I.

11. utatur: tense? App. 202; 203; 270, a: G.-L. 509, 1; 510; 654, n.: A. 482; 483; 585, b: B. 267; 318; H. 543; 544; 644, 1.

expand. 1.

13. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

4. sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.* [sex, six], six hundred. *

6. mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. 3.

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. *

when quis is used as an indefinite.

Chap. 15. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Bellovacī and the Ambianī. The character of the Nervii.

1. honoris causā, lit. "for the sake of the honor of" = "in deference to."

2. eōs, i.e. the Bellovacī, is the object of receptūrum et conservatūrum (esse).

3. multitudīne: ablative of specification.

6. Ambianōrum: see map facing p. 162.

13. qua: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5; H.-B. 276, 1; H. 186. consueverint: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1; H.-B. 163, 1; H. 238.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with compound verbs

Ablative with utōr, etc.

run^t. ~~E~~ōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā
mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic rep^{er}iēbat: Nullum
aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque
10 rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus
relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtutem existimārent; esse
hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre
reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque
virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs⁶
15 neque ūllam condiціōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat
ex captivis Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn amplius mīlia

9. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. 2.

10. lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. 1.

11. relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, *intr.* [re-+languēscō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. 1.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. *

12. increpitō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of increpō, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. 2.

incūsō, 1, *tr.* [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

13. patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. 1.

1. invenio, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *tr.* [venio, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

2. Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the river Sabis (sā/bis). 2.

amplē, *adv.* [amplus, large], largely; comp., amplius, more, farther. *

7. quōrum, "their."

8. nūllum . . . mercātōribus, "that traders had no access to them."

9. patī, "that (they) allowed."

vīnī, rērum: partitive genitives with nihil.

10. quod existimārent: causal clause in indirect discourse.

13. dēdidissent, prōiēcissent: may have been subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e: B. 283,

3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. cōfirmāre sēsē neque misūrōs, "they declared that they would neither send."

Chap. 16-28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervii, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.

Chap. 16. The Nervii encamp at the Sabis, prepared for battle.

2. Sabim: note the accusative in -im.

2. erat: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

3. auctōritāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

9. mercātōribus: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

12. virtūtis: case? App. 100: G.-L.

365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

13. reliquōs: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive

Causal clauses with quod, etc.

passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam experirentur) expectārī etiam ab iis Atuaticōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniecisse quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

17. His rēbus cognitis explorātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-mittit quī locum idōneum castris dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī unā iter facerent; quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervēnerunt atque his dēmōstrārunt inter

6. *experior*, -periri, -pertus sum, *tr.*, prove, try, test, experience. *

8. *aetās*, *aetātis*, *f.*, period of life, age. 2.

inūtilis, -e, *adj.* [*in* + *ūtilis*, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. 2.

1. *centuriō*, -ōnis, *m.* [*centum*, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. *

For the course of the river see map facing p. 162.

mīlia: accusative of extent of space. Why not the ablative after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

3. *trāns flūmen*: i.e. on the southern bank. For the exact location see plan, p. 191.

5. *finitimis*: in apposition with *Atrebātibus* and *Viromanduis*. See map.

6. *ab iis*: i.e. by the Nervii.

7. *quīque*, "and (the men) who."

8. *eum locum quō*, "a place to which."

9. *coniecisse*: as subject supply *eōs*, referring to the Nervii.

1. *trīduum*: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

5. *his*: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 2.

4. *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* and *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

5. *cōsuētūdō*, -inis, *f.* [*cōsuēscō*, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *

esset: mode? App. 230, a: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 2.

Chap. 17. The Nervii plan to surprise Caesar.

2. *ex . . . Gallis*: equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. *Caesarem . . . facerent*, "had joined Caesar and were marching along with him."

5. *eōrum . . . exercitūs*, "our army's usual order of march during those days." Both *diērum* and *exercitūs* depend on *itineris*. On the order of march see Int. 53.

6. *inter singulās legiōnēs*, "between every two legions."

9. *exercitui*: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Indirect object with intransitive verbs
Dative of possessor

(singulās) legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum primā legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc
 10 sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis, futurum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderēt. Adiuuābat etiam eōrum cōsiliū quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc
 15 cōpīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque

10. diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1.

11. adiuuō, -iuuare, -iuvī, -iutum, *tr.* [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. 1.

14. quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (or generalizing) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. 1.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs, foot],

on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cōpiae, infantry. *

15. praedor, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *

16. tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. 1.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. 2.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut into. 1.

7. impedimentōrum: see Int. 46. numerum, "amount." Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.

8. neque . . . negōtī, "and that it would be [lit. was] no trouble." castra, "camping-ground."

9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when . . . shall have come and . . . shall be distant."

spatium: accusative of extent of space.

10. sarcinīs: see Int. 37.

11. futurum (esse) ut, "the result would be that." This clause is connected with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the infinitive used instead of the subjunctive? App. 269, a: G.-L. 635: A. 583, b: B. 814, 4: H.-B. 535, 1, b: H. 643, 1.

adiuvābat: the subject is the clause quod . . . effecerant; "the fact that the Nervii had made, etc., assisted."

13. nihil: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 176, 2, b: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

14. ei rei: i.e. cavalry.

quicquid . . . cōpīs, "whatever strength they have consists in infantry."

15. quō impedirent: a purpose clause. Why is not *ut* used? App. 225, a, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b: H. 568, 7.

16. vēnissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."

teneris . . . interiectis: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut through (incisis) and their tops bent over (inflexis). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (crebris . . . enatis). In all thin spots bramble bushes were planted (rubis . . . interiectis).

inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātis, et rubīs senti-
busque interiectis, effēcerant ut instar mūri hae saepēs mūni-
menta praeberent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē per-
spici quidem posset. ~~¶~~ Illis rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī 20

17. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. 1.
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.*
[nāscor, be born], be born from; spring
up. 1.

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. 1.

sentis, -is, *m.*, briar. 1.

18. intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,
tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl
between; put or place between; inter-
iectus, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between,
intervening, interspersed; mediocri

interiectō spatiō, not far away. 4.

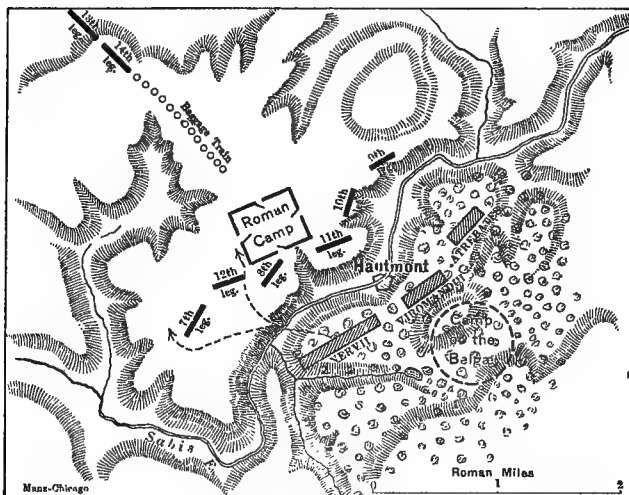
instar, *n., indecl.*, likeness; with *gen.*,
like. 1.

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. 2.

mūnimentum, -ī, *n.* [mūniō, fortify],
defense, fortification. 1.

19. praebeō, 2, *tr.* [prae + habeō,
hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present.
3.

intrō, 1, *tr.*, go or walk into, enter,
penetrate. 1.



BATTLE ON THE SABIS

18. effēcerant ut praeberent, "they
had made these hedges furnish."

19. quō . . . posset: a clause of

characteristic. Translate personally,
"into which one not only could not pen-
etrate, but could not even see."

^Ximpedirētur, ^Xnōn ^Xomittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimā-
vērunt. #

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castris
dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen
Sabīm, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine
parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur adversus hūic et contrārius,
passūs circiter ducentōs infīmus apertus, ab superiōre parte
silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās
silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

21. omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sum, *tr.* [ob+mittō, send], let go or
fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard.
1.

2. aequālīter, *adv.* [aequālis, equal;
aequus, equal], equally, evenly. 1.

dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [clīvis, a slope],
sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as*
noun, slopes. 2.

3. nōminō, 1, *tr.* [nōmen, name],
call by name, name, mention. 1.

4. acclivitās, -tātis, *f.* [acclīvis,
ascending], ascent, slope. 1.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be
born or produced; rise, spring up, be
reared; be found. 3.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā,
against], lying over against, opposite.
facing; *ex contrāriō*, on the contrary.
3.

6. silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva, forest],
of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest.
1.

intrōrsus, *adv.* [intrō, within+ver-
sus, *pf. part. of* vertō, turn], within, on
the inside. 1.

7. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered,
hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a
hidden place, an ambush. 2.

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor,
follow], along; in the direction of; be-
sides, in addition to. 3.

Chap. 18. Description of the bat-
tlefield.

1. haec, "as follows."

locum: omit in translation.

nostrī: i.e. the scouts and centurions
who had been sent on ahead; 17, 1.

2. collis: north of the river. See

plan, p. 191.

summō, "the top"; the ablative sin-
gular of *summus*, used as a noun.

4. collis: south of the river.

5. passūs . . . apertus, "at the
bottom bare of trees for two hundred
paces."

2. dēligant: tense? App. 202; 203;
204, b: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, a; 510: A. 482;
483; 485, e: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491,
1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

6. dēmōnstrāunt: form? App. 72:
G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B.
163, 1: H. 238.

11. audērent: mode? App. 229, b:
G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B.
521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

12. quod effecerant: construction?
App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299,

1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

21. omittendum (*esse*): construc-
tion? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A.
500, 2: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 102; 600, 3: H.
237.

sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A.
374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms

Sequence of tenses

Substantive clauses of result

dum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedūm circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ordōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, consuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs 5 quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta perti-

8. statio, -ōnis, *f.* [stō, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; in statione esse, be on guard. 4.

2. aliter, *adv.* [alius, other], otherwise; aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than. 2.

8. trāsgredior, -gredi, -gressus

8. vidēbantur, "were seen," not "seemed."

9. pedum trium: descriptive genitive, in the predicate.

Chap. 19. The Romans are attacked while fortifying their camp.

1. omnibus cōpiis: why is *cum* not used? App. 140, *a*: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, *a*: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Caesar is now picking up the thread of the story which he dropped in 17, 2.

2. aliter . . . ac, lit. "had itself otherwise than" = "was different from what."

habēbat is singular because *ratiō* or-

2. ad flūmen: construction? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 426, 2: B. 182, 2: H.-B. 336: H. 418.

4. acclivitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

5. infimus: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

sum, *tr.* [gradior, step], step over, cross. 1.

9. identidem, *adv.* [idem, the same], repeatedly. 1.

11. porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēc-tum, *tr.* [prō+regō, keep straight], extend; porrēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. 1.

dōque is thought of as a single idea, almost "method of arrangement."

4. expeditās, "without baggage"; whereas the Nervii had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

6. legiōnēs . . . cōscriptae erant: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; 8, 15.

10. reciperent, facerent, "kept retiring, kept making."

11. longius . . . finem, "than the limit to which." Our idiom would lead

6. posset: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Place to which

Descriptive ablative

Adjectives with partitive meaning

nēbant cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coopērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latebant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subito omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incredibilī celeritatē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritatē adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

20. Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. 2.

13. dimētiōr, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [mētior, measure], measure out or off. 2.

15. lateō, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2.

17. subitō, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

us to expect *ad finem, ad quem*, but the antecedent is attracted into the relative clause.

porrēcta pertinēbant, lit. "extended stretched out" = "extended." The whole clause *quem . . . pertinēbant* means "to the edge of the woods."

12. cēdentēs: sc. *eōs*; i.e. the enemy.

13. dimēnsō: this is one of a few deponent verbs whose perfect participles have a passive meaning.

14. prima impedimenta, "the head of the baggage train."

15. quod tempus, "the time which."

16. convēnerat, "had been agreed upon."

ut . . . ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, "as . . . they had pledged each other

prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.

19. prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. 1.

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run down, hurry down. 4.

1. vexillum, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag, standard. 1.

(to do)."

20. ut vidērentur: a result clause.

21. adversō colle, lit. "by way of the hill facing them" = "up the hill." For the case of *colle*, see App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

22. opere: i.e. of fortifying the camp.

The attack was a complete surprise. The Roman scouts had not done their work properly, and Caesar himself appears to have been careless in not keeping a part of his men under arms while the enemy were so near.

Chap. 20. The critical position of the Romans, and the value of their discipline.

1. Caesari omnia erant agenda,

4. cōsuētūdine: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

6. praesidiō impedimentis: construction? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A.

382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Double dative

Ablative of accordance

prōpōnendum, [quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret,] signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī milites, qui paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, acies instruenda, milites cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et incursus hostium impediēbat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod, superioribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri oportēret nō minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus (singulos) legatos Caesar discēdere nisi munitis castris

2. concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

3. tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. 1.
revocō, 1, *tr.* [re-+vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. 2.

4. paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *

arcessō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, summon, send for, invite. *

6. brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [brevis,

short], shortness; brevity. 2.

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. 1.

7. difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. *

scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.

8. exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf.* part. of exercitō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

9. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

lit. "all things had to be done by Caesar" = "Caesar had to do everything."

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general's headquarters.

2. prōpōnendum: supply *erat*. Similarly supply *erat* or *erant* with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. signum: to form ranks.
quī, "(those soldiers) who."

4. paulō longius, "a little too far."
aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See p. 30, fig. 5.

arcessendī: by messengers.

5. signum: here the signal for the attack.

7. duae res: explained by two appos-

itives, first, *scientia atque usus*, "the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers"; second, *quod . . . vetuerat* (l. 10), "the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc."

8. quod poterant: a causal clause.
proeliis, "in battles"; but it is an ablative of means.

9. quid fieri oportēret, "what ought to be done"; an indirect question, object of *praescribere*.

10. ab singulis . . . discēdere, "each legate to leave a particular legion." It is not quite correct to translate "leave his legion," because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 88.

11. nisi munitis castris, lit. "unless the camp having been fortified" = "until the camp had been fortified."

vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectabant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam devēnit. Milites nōn longiōre orātiōne cohortātus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinērent ne perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō telum adigī posset, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Tem-

12. vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid.
1.

14. administrō, 1, *tr.* [minister, servant], serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. *

2. fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; forte, *abl.* as *adv.*, by chance, perchance. 3.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, *tr.* [ob + ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with sē, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. 3.

3. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. *

13. nihil: an emphatic nōn.
quae vidēbantur, "whatever seemed best."

Chap. 21. Caesar encourages his men.

1. ad . . . milites: with decucurrit.

2. quam in partem = in eam partem in quam. Cf. note on 19, 11.

legiōnem decimam: Caesar's favorite legion; cf. I, 40, 45-48. Note its position on the plan, p. 191.

3. nōn longiōre orātiōne quam uti, "with a speech no longer than (this) that they should, etc."

1. Caesari: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355, A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

erant agenda: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 162, 600, 3: H. 237.

4. paulō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403:

devēniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [venīō, come], come down, go, come. 2.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. *

6. adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). *

8. occurō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob + currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

4. neu: the regular expression for "and not" in substantive volitive (purpose) clauses.

6. quod aberant: a causal clause, explaining signum dedit.

quam . . . posset, lit. "than to which a javelin could be thrown." Omit quō in translating. For the mode of posset see App. 230: G.-L. 631, 3: A. 535, c: B. 283, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 521, 2, c: H. 570, 1.

7. in alteram partem: the right wing. See plan.

8. pugnantibus occurrit, "he found (them already) fighting."

A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

10. quod vetuerat: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive quod clause

poris tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmican-
dum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam 10
ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus
dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvenit
quaeque prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quae-
rendis suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque col-
lis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō
postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus

9. *exiguitās*, -tātis, *f.* [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. *

dīmicō, 1. *intr.* [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. 3.

10. *accommodō*, 1. *tr.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. 1.

11. *galea*, -ae, *f.*, a leather helmet. 1.
induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on; *sē induere*, be impaled or pierced. 1.

tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [tegō, cover], a covering. 1.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trac-
tum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off or away,
withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

12. *dēsum*, *deesse*, *dēfui*, —, *intr.*
[sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be ab-
sent from, fail. *

13. *cōspiciō*, -spicere, -spexi,
-spectum, *tr.* [speciō, look], look at,
observe, descry, perceive. *

3. *diversus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.*
of divertō, turn in different directions],
diverse, different; separate, remote. 3.

10. *ad . . . accommodanda*, "for fitting on their decorations"; especially on the helmets; see Plate I, facing p. 27. These *insignia* probably distinguished the legions.

11. *galeās*: these would be laid aside while the soldiers were working on the fortifications.

scūtis: dative of separation.

tegimenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields.

12. *dēfuerit*: note the exception to sequence; App. 204; *a*: G.-L. 513: A. 485, *c* (incorrectly stated. The imperfect is much more common): B. 268, 6: H.-B. 478: H. 550.

quam in partem, "to whatever place."

13. *quaeque . . . cōspexit*, "and whatever standards he saw first." On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.

14. *suis*: sc. *signis*.

Chap. 22. Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.

1. *ut*, "as."

2. *rei . . . ōrdō*, lit. "the theory and arrangement of military matters" = "the theory of military tactics." When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.

3. *cum . . . resisterent . . . impe-*

4. *virtūtis*: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, *n.*: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

12. *dēfuerit*: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H.

570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive

Result clause

Clause of characteristic

resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impēdīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque (quid in quāq̄te parte opus esset) prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant, Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstitērant, pilis ēmissis cursū ac lassitudīne exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire

4. dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set or packed, thick, dense. 3.

5. prōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1.

6. prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, *tr.* [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. *

8. inīquitās, -tātis, *f.* [inīquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. 2.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. 3.

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. 1.

1. nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. 2.

dirētur gives the reason for the main clause, *neque . . . poterant*.

diversae, *lit.* "separated" = "separately."

aliae . . . parte, "some in one place, others in another."

4. ante: see 17, 12-20.

5. interiectis, "which intervened."
neque: the principal clause begins here.

certa, *lit.* "sure" = "so that they could be counted on."

6. quid . . . esset: an indirect question, subject of prōvidērī (*poterat*).

quid: construction? App. 146, a: G.-L. 406: A. 411, b: B. 218, 2, a: H.-B. 430, 2, a: H. 477, III, n.

7. in . . . inīquitāte, "in such a diversity of circumstances."

2. cursus, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *

lassitudō, -inis, *f.* [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2.

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [anima, breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. 2.

3. -obveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. 1.

4. compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. 1.

8. fortūnae: genitive limiting *eventūs*.

Chap. 23. The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.

1. nōnae et decimae: these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. aciē = *aciēi*; App. 30, b: G.-L. 63, n. 1: A. 98, n.: B. 52, 3: H.-B. 100, 2: H. 134, 2.

pilis: see Int. 36, a.

cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.

cursū . . . cōfectōs: translate after *Atrebātēs*.

3. ea pars: the left wing of the Romans.

4. resisterent: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Cum causal

cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impeditam 5
interfecērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāverunt, et in
locum inīquum progressī rursus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō
proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae
legiōnēs, undecima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibus-
cum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripīs 10
proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte
nūdātis, cū in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab
eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō
agmine dūce Boduognātō, quī summam imperi tenēbat, ad eum
locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs 15
circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae

9. **undecimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*
adj. [undecim, eleven], eleventh. 1.

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [oc-
tō, eight], eighth. 1.

prōfligō, 1, *tr.* [fligō, strike], strike
down; overcome; put to flight. 1.

10. **congregior**, -gredi, -gressus
sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, en-
counter, meet in battle; join (*peaceful-*
ly). *

11. **proelior**, 1, *intr.* [proelium, bat-

tle], join or engage in battle, fight. 3.

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

12. **dexter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the
right, right. 4.

cornū, -ūs, *u.*, horn; (*of an army*)
flank, wing. *

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*
[duodecim, twelve], twelfth. 2.

14. **Boduognātus**, -ī, *m.*, Boduogna-
tus (bōd'ū-ōg-nā'tūs). 1.

5. **cōnantēs**, "as they [the Atreba-
tes] were trying."

gladiīs: see Int. 36, b.

impeditam, "while thus embar-
rassed"; i.e. by crossing the river.

6. **ipsī**: the Romans of the left wing.

7. **locum inīquum**: up the hill south
of the river. This gave the enemy the
advantage of position.

resistentēs hostēs: object of *coniēcē-*
runt.

8. **aliā in parte**: the center.

diversae: i.e. separated from the oth-
er legions.

10. **ex locō superiōre**, "(having
come down) from their higher position."

12. **nūdātis**: by the advance of the
four legions already mentioned. See
the plan.

13. **nōn magnō intervallō**, "at no

very great distance." Case? App. 142,
b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

omnēs Nervii: 60,000 in number.

14. **duce Boduognātō**, "under the
leadership of Boduognatus." Ablative
absolute.

summam: the noun.

15. **ab apertō latere**: the right flank,
because the shields were carried on the
left arm. The part which pushed on for
the camp passed the Roman left flank.
Others, of course, attacked in front.

16. **summum . . . locum**, lit. "the
highest place belonging to the camp" =
"the height on which the camp stood."

Chap. 24. The panic of the auxili-
aries and the camp servants.

1. We expect Caesar to tell us at
once of the fortunes of the 7th and 12th
legions, but he pauses to give a vivid

peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsum aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et
 5 cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā cōgressi, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vidiēsent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique
 10 aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī (auxili causā) ā cīvitātē missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs

2. **pedes, peditis**, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3.

5. **cālō, -ōnis**, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. 3.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta**, the rear gate (of the camp). 1.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. *

6. **victor, -ōris**, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

7. **respicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-tum**, *tr.* [re- + speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, re-

gard. 1.

8. **praeceps, -cipitis**, *adj.* [caput, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. 2.

9. **fremitus, -ūs**, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. 2.

11. **Trēvir, -eri**, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bēgh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). *

12. **singulāris, -e**, *adj.* [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. 2.

picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Roman army.

levis armātūrae: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of 19, 7.

2. **iīs**: the cavalry.

fuerant: before their repulse.

quōs pulsōs dixeram, lit. "whom I had said to have been routed" = "who, as I said, had been routed." **quōs** refers to both *equitēs* and *peditēs*. **dixi** would be more natural and more usual than **dixeram**.

3. **adversis**, "face to face." Evidently they had made a circuit and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.

4. **occurrēbant**: note how the imperfects in the first part of the chapter describe a number of events, all going on at about the same time.

5. **ab decumānā portā**: the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.

6. **victōrēs**, "as victors."

8. **eōrum**: the muleteers, not the rear guard of two legions.

9. **ali . . . partem**: for translation cf. note on 22, 3.

11. **virtūtis opīniō**, "reputation for courage"; an objective genitive.

13. **cum**: with *vidissent*.

premī et paene circumventās tenēri, cālōnēs, equitēs, fundi-
tōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere 15
vidissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus dōmum contendērunt;
Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum
hostēs potītōs civitatī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum
cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum
collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs milītēs sibi ipsōs ad
pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnibus
(centuriōnibus) occīsīs, (signiferō) interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquā- 5
rum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut

14. **premō**, -**premere**, -**pressī**,
-**pressum**, *tr.* press, press upon, press
hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *

15. **dissipō**, 1, *tr.*, spread on all sides,
scatter, disperse. 1.

1. **cohortātiō**, -**ōnis**, *f.* [cohortor,

encourage], encouragement, cheering.
1.

2. **urgeō**, **urgēre**, **ursī**, —, *tr.*,
press, press hard. 2.

5. **signifer**, -**erī**, *m.* [signum, stand-
ard + **ferō**, bear], standard-bearer. 1.

16. **dēspērātīs**, "despairing of."

17. **castrīs**: what deponent verbs
govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the 7th and
12th legions in desperate straits, and
reanimates them by his valor.

1. **Caesar**: subject of *prōcessit* (l. 15)
and *iussit* (l. 16). This is an excellent
Latin "period," with the subject first,
the subordinate clauses in the middle,
and the principal verbs toward the end.
The sentence is not hard to understand
in its Latin order, and is very effective;
for the mass of subordinate clauses rep-
resents the impression made on Caesar
when he saw all at once the many details
of the fearful struggle. But it is hard
to translate effectively, because such a
sentence is intolerable in English. After
the pupil thoroughly understands the
sentence he should translate it very
freely, breaking it up into a number of
short sentences. Each of the following
groups of words may be turned into a
sentence, or two or more may be com-
bined: *Caesar . . . profectus; ubi . . . ur-*

gērī; signis . . . vidit; quārtae . . . āmis-
sō; reliquārum . . . occīsīs; in his . . .
posset; reliquōs . . . vitāre; hostēs . . .
instāre; et . . . posset; scūtō . . . prōces-
sit; centuriōnibus . . . possent.

cohortātiōne: cf. 21, 2.

2. **ubi**, "when"; with *vidit*, l. 4,
which is repeated in l. 12.

urgērī: this and most of the other
infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend
on *vidit*. Other dependent ideas are ex-
pressed by the ablative absolute.

signis collātīs: the position of the
standards regulated the position of the
cohorts. As the standards were now
huddled together, the soldiers naturally
crowded together.

3. **sibi . . . impedimentō**, lit. "were
themselves for a hindrance to them-
selves for fighting" = "hindered one an-
other in fighting."

4. **quārtae cohortis**: this cohort had
suffered especially, because it was sta-
tioned at the left end of the front line.

5. **signō āmissō**: regarded as a great
disgrace.

occisis, in his (prīmpilō) P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis
 10 dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex infēriore locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scūtō ab novissimis militi detractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem
 15 prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminatim appellātis reliquōs cōhortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū impe-

7. **prīmpilus**, -i, *m.* [prīmus, first + pīlus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion.
 1.

Sextius, -tī, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. 2.

vir, **virī**, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. **homō**, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. *

9. **tardus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. 1.

10. **dēsērō**, -serere, -serui, -ser-tum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin;

abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. *

16. **manipulus**, -i, *m.* [manus, hand + pleō, fill], a handful (*esp. of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), maniple. 1.

laxō, *l. tr.*, stretch out, extend, open. 1.

18. **imperātor**, -ōris, *m.* [imperō command], commander-in-chief, general. *

7. **prīmpilō**: see Int. 42.

8. **multis gravibusque**, "many severe." When *multi* and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by *et* or *que*.

sē sustinēre, "stand on his feet."

9. **ab novissimis**, "in the rear."

10. **dēsertō locō**, "deserting their posts."

tēla vitāre, "were getting out of the range of missiles."

neque . . . et, "not . . . and."

12. **rem . . . angustō**, "and affairs were in a critical condition."

vīdit: simply repeats the *vīdit* of l. 4.

13. **quod . . . posset**: a clause of characteristic.

scūtō detractō, "snatching a shield." Here begins Caesar's action.

militi: dative of separation.

14. **eō**: the adverb.

16. **signa . . . laxāre**, "to advance and (by so doing) to open out the ranks." **quō**: cf. note on 17, 15.

17. **spē . . . animō**, "hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed."

18. **prō sē**, lit. "in proportion to himself" = "to the best of his ability."

rātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. H
20

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstitērat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et (conversa signa in hostēs inferrent.) Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim milites legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōspiciātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versā-

19. opera, -ae, f. [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare operam, give attention, take pains. 1.

nāvō, 1, tr., do zealously or well. 1.
20. paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

tardō, 1, tr. [tardus, slow], make

slow, delay; hinder, check. 1.

1. iūxtā, adv. [iungō, join], next, near. 1.

2. tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or militāris, a military tribune. *

19. etiam . . . rēbus, "even in his own extreme danger."

Chap. 26. The 7th and 12th legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.

1. iūxtā: i.e. near the 12th legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting.

cōstitērat, "had taken its position." Distinguish carefully between cōsistō and cōstituō.

2. tribūnōs: see Int. 41.

3. sēsē coniungerent: i.e. to close up the gap between them.

conversa signa inferrent, "to face about and attack." Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the

line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

4. cum . . . ferret, "since they protected one another."

5. timērent: agreeing with milites, which is implied in alius aliī.

āversī, "in the rear."

7. quae . . . fuerant: cf. 19, 5.

8. proeliō . . . incitātō, "quickenings their step on hearing of the battle."

colle: at the rear of the Roman camp.

9. Labiēnus: cf. note on 23, 1.

10. quae rēs gererentur: indirect question.

11. quī cum, "when they"; i.e. the soldiers of the 10th legion.

12. quō in locō, "in what condition."

rētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostri, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcūbuisent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut
5 turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlerent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī
10 superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla inter-

2. prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. 2.

3. innitor, -niti, -nixus sum, *intr.* [nitor, rest on], lean upon. 1.

4. inermis, -e, *adj.* [in- + arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3.

5. turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. 1.

dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētum, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. 1.

6. legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

14. nihil . . . fēcērunt, lit. "made nothing of a remainder as regards speed" = "made all possible speed." This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.

2. quī, "those who." The clause is determinative, not characteristic; App. 231: H.-B. 550. The subjunctive is due to attraction; App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

scūtīs: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

5. circumvenirentur: construction? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring, App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. 1.

8. iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. 1.

9. insistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *tr. and intr.* [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; *with* ratiōnem, adopt, use. 4.

9. coacervō, 1, [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 1.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. 1.

10. tumultus, -ī, *m.* [tumeō, swell],

4. inermēs . . . occurrerent, "(though) unarmed, attacked the armed (enemy)."

6. etiam . . . salūtis, "even at the end of their hope of safety"; i.e. even in their extreme danger.

8. proximī . . . insisterent, "the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate."

9. his: i.e. *proximi*.

quī superessent: cf. note on quī, 1. 2.

10. ut ex tumultō, "as if from a mound."

conicerent: result. The force of ut (1. 7) still continues.

14. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4

^{ff}cepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascēdere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūtiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrarentur, omnium quī supererant cō- 5 sēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; eī, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redactōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimō 10

swelling; mound, hill. 4.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capiō, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept, cut off. 1.

11. nēquiquam, adv. [nē+quī(d)-quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. 1.

1. gēns, gentis, f., race, clan, tribe, people. 3.

3. aestuārium, -rī, n. [aestus, tide],

low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2.

5. cōsēnsus, -ūs, m. [cōsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

8. senātor, -ōris, m. [senex, old], elder; senator. 1.

10. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

supplex, -icis, m. and f., suppliant. 1.

11. ut . . . dēberet, "so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men, etc."; i.e. they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. altissimās: at the point where the Nervii crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.

quae, "deeds which"; i.e. those summed up in the preceding infinitives.

14. ex, "instead of."

Chap. 28. The survivors submit to Caesar.

2. quōs coniectōs dixerāmus, "who, as I have said, had been, etc."; cf. note on 24, 2.

4. victōribus . . . tūtum, "that nothing was an obstacle to the victors

and nothing safe for the conquered."

5. quī supererant: compare quī superessent, 27, 9. This clause has precisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. vix ad quīngentōs: this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervii revolted again three years later, and put 5,000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

quī possent: a clause of characteristic, and therefore subjunctive in the direct discourse.

9. ut . . . vidērētur, "that he might be seen to have shown mercy, etc."

cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūtī iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suosque prohiberent.

29. Atuatuci, dē quibus suprà scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērent; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertiis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt.
- 5 Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem (nōn amplius) ducentōrum pedum relinquebātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magni pōnderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī
- 10 erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis quae

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [**misereō**, pity + **cor**, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1.

1. **scribō**, scribere, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, *tr.*, write, record or make mention in writing. 1.

3. **cūctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **con-iūctus**, joined together], all together, all. 1.

4. **ēgregiē**, *adv.* [**ēgregius**, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1.

5. **rūpēs**, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. 1.

acclivis, -e, *adj.* [**ad**+**clivus**, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2.

8. **duplex**, -plicis, *adj.* [**duo**, two+**plicō**, fold], twofold, double. 2.

9. **pōndus**, -eris, *n.* [*cf.* **pendō**, weigh], weight. 1.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. 2.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **praeacuō**, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. 3.

trabs, **trabis**, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. 3.

10. **prōgnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nāscor**, be born], born: descended, sprung. 1.

11. **iussit**, **imperāvit**: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. *iubeō* regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; *imperō*, the dative with *ut* and the subjunctive.

Chap. 29-33. Caesar subdues the Atuatuci.

Chap. 29. The Atuatuci take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.

1. **suprà**: in 16, 7.

cum venirent, "while coming."

omnibus cōpiis: ablative of manner. Such ablatives are often called "military accompaniment," but it is not logical to

say that the Atuatuci came in company with themselves.

4. **oppidum**: for its probable location see map facing p. 162.

5. **quod cum**, "although this town."
ex . . . partibus, "at all (other) points in its circumference," or simply "on all (other) sides."

7. **ducentōrum pedum**: descriptive genitive, modifying *aditus*. The comparative *minus* has no effect on the construction; cf. note on *mīlia*, 16, 2.

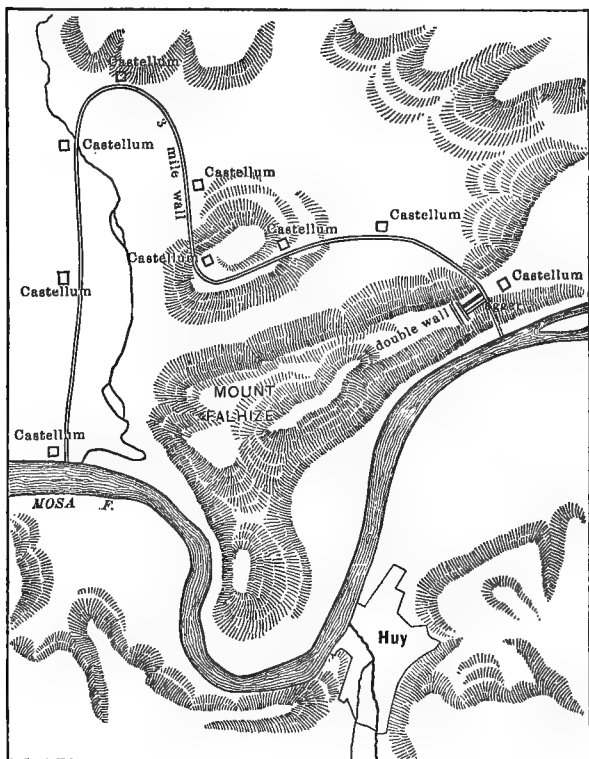
8. **duplici mūrō**: see plan, p. 207.

tum: at the time of Caesar's approach.

10. **Cimbris Teutonisque**: cf. Int. 27.

sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum
dēpositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum

13. custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs, guard], | pl., guards, keepers. 2.
custody, guard (*state of being guarded*);



THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI

12. agere ac portāre, "to drive and to carry"; for *impedimentis* here means "possessions" rather than "baggage," and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiam . . . reliquerant, lit. "had left along (with their possessions) a guard of their (men) and a garrison, six thousand men (in all)."

15 *unā* reliquerant. *Hī* post *eōrum* obitū multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōsēnsū *eōrum* omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis ācl's aggere extrūctō turrīm procul cōstituī vīdērunt, primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

14. obitus, -ūs, *m.* [obeō, go to death], destruction. 1.

15. exagitō, 1, *tr.* [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. 2.

aliās, *adv.* [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another. 4.

17. domicilium, -li, *n.* [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

2. excursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sally,

sortie. 1.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dīm.* of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight; parvula proelia, skirmishes; parvuli, children. 1.

4. circummūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. 1.

5. exstruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. 2.

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. 2.

6. irrīdēō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [in+rīdēō, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1.

14. *eōrum*: the main bodies of the Cimbri and Teutoni.

15. cum . . . dēfenderent: some *cum* clauses are best translated by participles; so here, "sometimes making war, sometimes defending themselves against war made on them," lit. "when they . . . ward off war made (on them)."

16. cōsēnsū . . . factā, "peace was made by common consent, and." *eōrum* refers to both the Atuatucae and their neighbors.

hunc locum: the whole tract of country occupied by the Atuatucae at this time.

Chap. 30. The Atuatucae scorn the Roman preparations for attack.

2. faciēbant, "kept making"; imperfect of repeated action.

10. ex Cimbriis: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, b: H. 469, 1.

3. pedum XII: in height.

XV mīlium: supply *pedum* as a partitive genitive; "(of) 15,000 feet in circumference"; i.e. three miles. The plan shows that the wall did not cross the river, which itself forms a sufficient obstacle.

4. oppidō: ablative of means, but to be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. vineis, aggere, turrīm: see Int. 61; 62, d. The vineae afforded shelter to the soldiers who made the agger. In this case the agger was intended only as a roadway up which to push the tower.

6. irrīdēre: on this use of the infinitive see App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

14. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417

māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra cōtemptuī est) tantī oneris turrīm in mūrō 10 sēsē posse collocāre cōfiderent?

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē cōmmōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē existimāre

7. māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [māchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. 3.

quisnam, quidnam, and quīnam, quāenam, quodnam, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and a), who? which? what? who then? what pray? 1.

8. tantalus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim.* of tantus, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. 2.

statūra, -ae, *f.* [status; stō, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. 1.

9. plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often.

*

prae, *prep.* with abl., before, in front

of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front, very. 1.

10. contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. 1.

onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight, size. 4.

2. inūsītātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + ūsītātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3.

speciēs, -ēi, *f.* [speciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.

3. modus, -i, *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modī, of such a kind, such; *abl.*, modō, with *gen.*, in the character of, like. *

7. a tantō spatiō, "so far away"; lit. "away by so great a distance," ā being used as an adverb. Cf. 7, 8.

instituerētur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2; 592, 3: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 588, II.

quibusnam manibus . . . cōfiderent, "asking by what hands, pray, did they hope?"; indirect discourse for cōfīditis, "do you hope?" For mode see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

8. hominēs: in apposition with the subject of cōfīderent; "especially (as they were) men, etc."

10. cōtemptuī est, "is an object of contempt."

in mūrō collocāre: the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. 31. The Atuatuaci propose a conditional surrender.

1. movērī, "that it [the tower] moved."

3. locūtī: the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. nōn sē . . . possent depends on locūtī; everything else, on dixerunt (I. 6), "speaking as follows . . . said." But it makes smoother English to translate locūtī as locūtī sunt and omit dixerunt, "spoke as follows."

7. spatiō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of degree of difference

Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis
 5 māchinatiōnēs tantā celeritatē prōmovēre possent; sē suaeque
 omnia eōrū potestātī permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac
 dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam
 ipsī ab aliis audirent, statuisset Atuātucōs esse cōservandōs,
 nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse ini-
 10 micōs ac suae virtūtī invidere; ā quibus sē dēfendere tradītis
 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēducē-
 rentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs
 per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōsuētūdine suā
 quam meritō eōrū civitatem cōservātūrum, sī priusquam

4. **divinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dīvus, di-vine], of the gods, divine, sacred. 1.

5. **prōmoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-tum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

7. **dēprecor**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. 2.

9. **dēspoliō**, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], de-prive. 1.

10. **invideō**, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum,

intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. 1.

12. **quīvis**, **quaevīs**, **quidvis**, and **quīvis**, **quaevīs**, **quodvis**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [quī, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3.

13. **cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, tor-ture; crux, cross], torture, torment. * **dominor**, 1, *intr.* [dominus, master], be master, rule. 1.

4. **quī possent**, "since they could," may have been subjunctive in the direct form; App. 245; G.-L. 633; A. 535, e; B. 283, 3; H.-B. 523; H. 592.

6. **ūnum**, "one favor"; i.e. *nē* . . . *dēspoliāret*.

7. **sī statuisset**, "if he should decide." The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. "if you shall have decided."

prō, "in accordance with."
quam audirent, "of which they kept hearing."

9. **nē dēspoliāret**: the original form was probably *nōlī dēspoliāre*; App. 219; 267; G.-L. 271, 2; 652; A. 450; 588; B. 276,

c; 316; H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2; 534, 2; H. 561, 1; 542.

sibi: with the adjective *inimicōs*.

10. **virtūtī**: what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative?

tradītis armīs, "if they should, etc."

11. **sibi praestāre**, lit. "it was better for them" = "they preferred."

cāsum, "extremity."

Chap. 32. The Atuātuci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.

1. **cōsuētūdine**: ablative of accordance.

2. **meritō**: ablative of cause.

8. **esse cōservandōs**: construction? App. 285, II, a; G.-L. 251, 1; A. 500, 2; B. 337, 7, b, 1; H.-B. 162; 600, 3; H. 237.

9. **sibi**: case? App. 120; G.-L. 350, 2;

A. 376; B. 188, 1; H.-B. 366; H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Passive periphrastic conjugation
Dative of reference

mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nervii fecisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditi-
ciis populi Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūtiatā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixerunt. Armōrum magnā multi-
tūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervi armōrum
adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspec-
tum est, celātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō
diē pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniū-
riam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iis quae reti-

3. ariēs, arietis, m., a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. 2.

9. acervus, -ī, m., a heap, mass. 1.

10. adaequō, 1, tr. [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

3. ariēs: see Int. 62, c. Apparently in this case the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

attigisset, dēdidissent represent future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

4. nisi armīs trāditīs: cf. 20, 11, note.

in, "in the case of."

5. factūrum . . . que imperātūrum, "he would do . . . and would command" means "he would do . . . ; namely, he would command."

6. rē, "answer."

7. facere: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

11. celō, 1, tr., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; in pass., escape observation, be unnoticed. 2.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [pateō, be open+faciō, make], make or throw open, open. 2.

5. indiligenter, adv. [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. 1.

servō, 1, tr., save, preserve; maintain,

8. ante: i.e. on the side where the Romans were.

9. aggeris: the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.

11. portis patefactis, "they opened the gates and."

12. pācesunt ūsī, "remained quiet."

Chap. 33. The Atuatuaci make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.

2. nē quam: cf. references on 32, 5. This care for the safety of the townspeople shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.

4. praesidia, "the outposts" in the castralla (30, 4) which guarded the Roman wall.

5. cum: with both iis armīs and scūtīs.

5. quam: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

nuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbatur, omnibus cōpiīs repente
 10 ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursus est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in
 15 ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Post-ridiē eius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūni-

keep; guard, watch; reserve. 2.

crēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., believe, suppose; entrust. 2.

6. cortex, -icis, m., f., bark. 1.

7. vīmen, -inis, n., a pliant twig, switch, osier. 1.

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [texō, weave], weave in or together. 1.

8. pellis, -is, f., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal); tent, made of hides. 4.

arduus, -a, -um, adj., high, steep; difficult. 1

9. repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

6. ex . . . intextis, "made of bark or of osiers woven together."

8. quā: the adverb.

minimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.

10. imperāverat: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.

11. ignibus, "by signal fires."

12. concursus est, pugnātum est: translate personally.

14. ut pugnārī dēbuit, lit. "as it

10. ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. [ērumpō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. *

11. significātiō, -ōnis, f. [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. 1.

17. refringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, tr. [re+frangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. 1.

18. intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [intrō, within+mittō, send], send or let in. 1.

sectiō, -ōnis, f. [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. 1.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus, one+

ought to have been fought" = "as brave men ought to have fought."

eōs quī iacerent, "men who threw"; a clause of characteristic.

15. in ūnā virtūte cōsisteret, "depended on valor alone."

ad, "about," used adverbially.

18. sectiōnem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which he could have secured the respect of the Gauls.

versam Caesar vëndidit. Ab iis qui emerant capitum numerus ad eum relätus est milium quinquagintä trium.

34. Eödem tempore ä P. Crassö, quem cum legiöne ünä miserat ad Venetös, Venellös, Osismös, Coriosolitës, Esuviös, Aulercös, Redonës, quae sunt maritimae civitätës Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnës eäs civitätës in diciönem potestätēque populī Römānī esse redäctäs.

35. His rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliä pācātā, tanta huius pelli ad barbarös opiniö perlāta est utī ab iis nātiönibus quae trāns

vertö, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass.

*

19. vëndö, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [vënum, sale + dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. 3.

1. Crassus, -i, m., Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

2. Venetī, -örum, m. (Cb), the Veneti (vën'ë-tī). *

Venellī, -örum, m. (Bc), the Venelli (vë-nël'i). *

Osismī, -örum, m. (Bb), the Osismi (ö-sis'mī), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. 2.

Coriosolitës, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriosolites (kö'rī-ö-söl'i-tëz). 3.

Esuvii, -örum, m. (Bcd), the Esuvii (ë-sü'vī-i). 2.

3. Aulerci, -örum, m., the Aulerci

(aw-lër'si), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulerci Eburovices (ëb'ü-rö-vī'sëz), (Bd); (2) Aulerci Cenomani (së-nöm'a-nī), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brän'ö-vī'sëz), location unknown; (4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī'a-blīn'tëz), (Bc). 3.

Redonës, -um, m. (BCc), the Redones (rëd'ö-nëz). 1.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea]. of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; öra, the sea shore. *

4. diciö, -önis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

2. barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. *

nātiö, -önis, f. [näscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

19. iis qui emerant: slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome. numerus . . . trium, lit. "the number was reported (to be) of 53,000" = "was reported as 53,000."

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submitted to Crassus.

1. legiöne ünä: this was the 7th, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

3. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, civitätës.

5. esse redäctäs: they gave hostages

without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

1. omni Galliä: the map facing p. 162 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. opiniö, "impression."

quae incolerent: for mode see note on qui, 27, 2.

Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātī-
 5 ōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Ītaliā pro-
 10 fectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīnde- cim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

5. *Īllyricum*, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (ī-līr'ī-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. 2.

6. *Carnutēs*, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carantes (kār'nū-tēz).

Andēs, -ium, or *Andī*, -ōrum, *m.* (Cc), the Andes (ān'dēz) or Andī (ān'dī). 2.

7. *Turonī*, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Tu-

roni (tū'rō-nī). 1.

10. *supplicātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. 2.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. 3.

3. *quī pollicērentur*: a purpose clause.

4. *datūrās*: feminine, because *sē* refers to *nātiōnibus*.

5. *initā proximā aestāte*, "at the beginning of the next summer." At that time they had so far changed their minds that only the Ubii sent hostages.

6. *in Carnutēs*: with *dēductīs*.

7. *quaeque cīvitātēs* = *et eās cīvitātēs quae*.

8. *in Ītaliā*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

He could not legally go outside of his province, which included Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

9. *ex*, "in consequence of."

10. *supplicātiō*: a public thanksgiving, voted by the senate in honor of a victory. The number of days was supposed to be in proportion to the importance of the victory. Before this time no more than twelve days had ever been voted.

quod, "(an honor) which." The antecedent is the preceding clause.

BOOK III. OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travellers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britanni, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful sea-board state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the main land. Hence

supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quarters his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing page 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for **Book II**, facing page 162. In addition, a narrow strip leading into the Alps, most of the northwestern states, and three states of Aquitania are colored red. In all these cases it is difficult to decide on the coloring.

It seems probable that Galba did not completely subdue the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, but that he did secure the route through the Alps.

It seems probable that all the revolting states in the northwest had sent so large a proportion of their ships and men to help the Veneti, that the defeat of the Venetan fleet amounted to a defeat of all the states. Hence they are colored red. The Redones are not mentioned among the revolting states.

It is possible that all of Aquitania should be colored red; but it seems improbable that other states than the Sotiates, the Tarusates, and the Vocates were so largely represented in the armies defeated by Crassus as to make further resistance impossible. They are colored blue on the theory that they submitted only because they were discouraged by the fate of the states which did fight.

Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.

LIBER TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent.
5 Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum

1. **Servius, -vī, m.**, Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

Galba, -ae, m., Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sūl-pish'yūs gāl'ba), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. *

2. **Nantuātēs, -um, m.** (CDg), the Nantuates (nān'tū-ā'tēz). 4.

Veragrī, -ōrum, m. (CDg), the Veragri (vēr'a-grī). 3.

3. **Sedūnī, -ōrum, m.** (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'nī). 3.

Chap. 1-6. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.

Chap. 1. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Octodurus.

1. **cum . . . proficisceretur**: as stated in II, 35. Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. **legione duodecimā**: this was one of the two legions which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii; cf. II, 25.

Nantuātēs, etc.: see the map facing p. 217.

3. **misit**: the pupil should notice carefully Caesar's use of the indicative tenses. The distinction between the imperfect and the perfect is difficult for English speaking people to grasp, but Caesar was as careful in their use as in the choice of modes and cases. Study App. 197, 198. Notice that in this chapter the perfect is used in every principal clause. Notice, too, that all but one of

these perfects tell something that Caesar or Galba did; i.e. they all narrate events in the story.

4. **pertinent**: several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

5. **fuit**: this might have been imperfect, for it is not an event in the story. Very few such perfects will be found in Caesar.

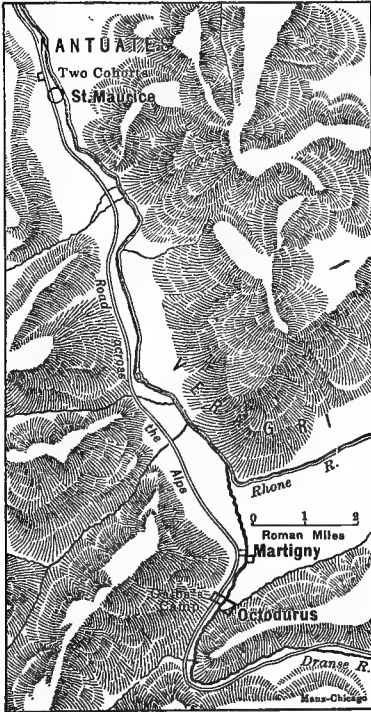
quod volēbat, "that he wished"; a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causa*. The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but *describes* something (Caesar's feelings) as *going on* at the time of a main act (Caesar's decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the *descriptive imperfect*.

iter per Alpēs: the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard pass. For the other route used by Caesar see map facing p. 42.

quō: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis 19 et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dividerētur, al-

teram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit. 20



GALBA'S CAMP

9. aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. 3.

13. Octodūrus, -ī, m. (Cg), Octodurus (ōk'tō-dū'rūs). 1.

14. vāllēs, -is, f., vale, valley. 2.
adiēcō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. 1.

19. attribūō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum, tr. [ad + tribuō, assign], assign, allot. 2.

6. periculō: from the natives.
portōriis, "tolls," levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.

cōsuērant: meaning of tense? App. 194, a: G.-L. 241, R.: A. 476: B. 262, A.: H.-B. 487: H. 538, 4.

7. arbitrārētur: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *arbitrāberis*.

11. cohortēs duās: for the location of these cohorts, see map.

14. nōn . . . plānitīē, "with a little level ground adjacent."

17. vacuum relictam, "left vacant."

19. eum locum: the western half of the village.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmen-
tumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs cer-
tior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat omnēs
noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multi-
tūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causis
acciderat, ut subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōisque oppri-
mendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque
eam plēnissimam, detractis cohortibus duābus et complūribus
singillātīm, quī commeātus petendī causā missi erant, propter
paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem
locī, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla con-
icerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī
existimābant. Accedēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs
obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum
causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occu-

6. **renovō**, 1, *tr.* [re-+novus, new], renew. 2.

opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pres-
sum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press
down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower,
destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

8. **plēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēō, fill],
full, whole, complete. 3.

9. **singillātīm**, *adv.* [singuli, one

each], singly, one by one; individu-
ally. 1.

10. **paucitās**, -tātis, *f.* [paucus,
few], fewness, small number. *

13. **abstrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi,
-tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], to drag
away, carry away by force. 1.

15. **perpetuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, con-
tinuous, uninterrupted; permanent,

Chap. 2. The mountaineers revolt
and occupy the neighboring heights.

2. **eō**: i.e. into the winter quarters.

3. **quam . . . concesserat**: this is
not a part of the quotation, but is an
explanation added by the writer; there-
fore it is not subjunctive.

4. **montēs**: the foot-hills, bordering
on the valley.

5. **aliquot dē causis**: these reasons
are (1) *quod dēspiciēbant*, l. 7; (2) *quod ex-
istimābant*, l. 10; (3) *accedēbat quod do-
lēbant*, l. 13; (4) *(accedēbat quod) habēbant*.
Note that the imperfect is used in these
clauses because they all describe the
condition of things existing at the time
the Gauls revolted.

6. **ut caperent**: a substantive clause
of fact (result), in apposition with *id*.

7. **neque eam plēnissimam**, "and
that not at its full strength"; explained
by the ablatives absolute which follow.

8. **complūribus singillātīm**,
"many men individually."

11. **cum dēcurrerent et conicerent**,
"when they should, etc.," is a part of
the indirect discourse. They thought
"when we shall run down . . . they can-
not withstand, etc."

13. **accedēbat quod**, lit. "there was
added that" = "a further reason was
that" or "besides."

liberōs abstractōs (*esse*), "that their
children, etc."

14. **obsidum nōmine**, lit. "under the
name of hostages" = "as hostages."

15. **perpetuae possessiōnis**: *sc.*
causā.

pāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnesque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī

lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. 3.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. 1.

16. adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. 1.

2. plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. 1.

5. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2.

9. supportō, 1, *tr.* [sub + portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

16. fīnitimae: the province bounded them on the west. See map.

sibi persuāsum habēbant: the clause Rōmānōs . . . adiungere is the object of habēbant, and persuāsum is a predicate adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the clause; lit. "they had . . . persuaded to themselves" = "they were persuaded that."

Chap. 3. The Romans resolve to defend their camp.

1. opus hibernōrum: especially the making of huts. Although they were occupying part of a village, it cannot have been large enough to house all the soldiers.

2. essent perfectae agrees with the nearer subject, mūnitiōnēs.

3. esset prōvisum: translate personally.

4. nihil timendum (*esse*), "that he need have no fear."

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, composed of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank. See Int. 42.

8. neque . . . venīrī (*posset*), lit. "and it could not be come to their assistance."

10. eius modī, "to this effect."

dīcēbantur: this narrates a new event in the story, so that the perfect might have been used; but the imperfect is used to express repeated action; App. 191, a: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect discourse.

maiōrī partī placuit, "the majority determined."

placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēven-
tum experiri et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōstituissent collocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integris viribus fortiter prō-
5 pugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premi vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitātē pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, alii integris viribus succēdēbant; quārum rerum ā nostris
10 propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex

13. placeō, 2, *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

reservō, 1, *tr.* [re- + servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

1. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevi, in a short time. *

3. gaesum, -i, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (*of the Gauls*). 1.

4. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, un-

touched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; rē integrā, before anything was done. 3.

5. frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. 3.

6. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. *

8. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long duration. 2.

Chap. 4. The mountaineers attack the camp in great numbers.

1. vix: placed before *ut* for emphasis.

rēbus . . . administrandis: the dative of the gerundive is not common.

quās cōstituissent: a determinative clause; App. 231: H.-B. 550. Reason for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. decurrere: an historical infinitive. In what case is its subject, *hostēs*? App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

4. integris viribus: ablative absolute, "while their strength was fresh."

5. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

7. hōc superārī, quod, "they were overmatched in this, that."

8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, "kept

withdrawing, etc."; imperfects of repeated action.

9. integris viribus: descriptive ablative. Contrast the construction of the same words in l. 4.

quārum . . . poterat, "while none of these things, etc."

10. poterat and dabātur are descriptive imperfects, describing a condition of things that went on all through the battle.

nōn modo dēfessō facultās dabātur, "not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted man." H. 656, 3; "Nōn modo (or solum) nōn, sed nē . . . quidem means *not only not, but not even*, and nōn modo (solum), sed nē . . . quidem, has the same meaning when the verb standing in the second clause belongs also to the first."

pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstit-
erat relinquiendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur, ac
nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs
ācrius instārent, languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et
fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum per-
ducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pīlī centuriō, quem 5
Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus dīximus, et
item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsili magnī et
virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis
docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur.
Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit 16

11. saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. 1.

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, faint, sluggish. 1.

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. 1.

5. pilus, -i, *m.*, century of soldiers; primus pilus, first century of a legion; primī pīlī centuriō, or primipilus, the centurion of the first century, chief

centurion. 1.

6. Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Nervius], of the Nervii. 1.

7. C., *abbr.* for praenomen Gaius (gā'yus). *

Volusēnus, -i, *m.*, Gaius Voluse-
nus Quadratus (gā'yūs vōl'ū-sē'nūs
kwā-drā'tūs), a tribune of Caesar's army,
afterward commander of cavalry. 4.

11. excēdendī: gerund or gerun-
dive?

locī relinquiendī: gerund or gerun-
dive?

12. suī recipiendī: construction?
App. 291; a: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, c: B.
339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba de-
cides on a sortie.

1. cum pugnārētur, "when the bat-
tle had lasted." The imperfect sub-
junctive is to be translated on the same
principle as is laid down for the imper-
fect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234:
A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

hōris: ablative after the comparative,
amplius; cf. note on *milibus*, II, 7, 10.

3. languidiōribus nostrīs, "as our
men grew weaker"; ablative absolute.

5. cāsum, "extremity."

quem . . . dīximus: cf. II, 25, 7.

8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in

this chapter are all historical presents.
The historical present narrates a new
event in a story just as the perfect does.
It may be followed by either the primary
or the secondary tenses of the subjunc-
tive. In this chapter the dependent
subjunctives are all imperfects, as if the
principal verbs were perfects.

ūnam . . . sī experirentur, lit. "told
him that there was one hope of safety,
if they should try" = "that their only
hope of safety was to try."

9. extrēmum auxilium, "their last
resource."

experirentur: indirect discourse for
the future indicative.

10. militēs certiōrēs facit, "he di-
rected the soldiers." This phrase is fol-
lowed by indirect discourse, as usual;
but all the verbs are in the subjunctive
mode, because they represent impera-
tives of the direct form.

paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spēm salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spēm potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circum-
5 ventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē in castra mūnitiōnēs-

11. tantummodo, *adv.*, only. 1.

12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [capiō, take]; *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. *

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *

reficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [re-faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with sē*, refresh one's self, rest. 3.

13. ērumpō, -; umpere, -rupi, -ruptum, *intr.* [rumpō, break], break forth,

sally. 1.

2. colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [con+legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; sē colligere, collect one's self, rally. 3.

6. cōstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal*, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. *

9. fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum, *tr.*, draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. 1.

12. exciperent, *lit.* "catch," on their shields = "shield themselves from."

post: the adverb.

Chap. 6. The Gauls are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.

1. quod iussī sunt faciunt, "they did as they had been commanded." *iussī sunt* is used instead of a pluperfect, just as *faciunt* is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except *iussī sunt* are in the imperfect or pluperfect.

2. suī colligendī: cf. note on 4, 12.

3. commūtātā fortūnā: the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because the Romans, like other men, fought with

more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by surprise, and partly because the Gauls always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.

4. potiundōrum castrōrum: how can the intransitive verb *potior* be used in the gerundive construction? App. 289, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, b, n.: H. 623, 1.

circumventōs: translate by a coördinate clause.

5. ex milibus XXX depends on *tertiā parte*. Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.

9. armis: ablative of separation. The Gauls threw away their arms in their flight.

que suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam 10 temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in 15 Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7. His rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius belli 5

12. **memini**, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. 1.

15. **dēmoror**, 1, *tr.* [moror, delay], hinder, delay. 1.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

3. **hiems**, -mis, *f.*, winter time,

winter. *

5. **subitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden.

coorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *intr.* [co-+orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. 2.

10. **quod . . . nōlēbat**: Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor. Since Caesar never fought these tribes again, we may suppose that they were taught by this battle not to molest Roman travelers.

11. **aliō cōnsiliō**, "with one purpose"; namely, to spend the winter there quietly.

12. **aliīs . . . rēbus**, "that he had met a different state of affairs"; namely, a dangerous battle.

15. **in Nantuātēs**: there, of course, he picked up the other two cohorts of his legion.

Chap. 7-11. The Aremoric states revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a wide-spread uprising of Gaul.

The events of the preceding six chap-

ters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. 7. The Aremoric states revolt because Crassus demands supplies from them.

1. **omnibus dē causīs**, "for every reason"; explained by the ablatives absolute *superātīs . . . Sedūnīs*, which should be translated by causal clauses.

pācātam (esse) Galliam: this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

2. **superātīs Belgīs**: cf. II, 1-33.

expulsīs Germānīs: cf. I, 30-54.

victīs Sedūnīs: cf. 1-6. The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. **quod . . . volēbat**: under Augustus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. No doubt Caesar foresaw this necessity and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.

haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frūmentī causā dimisit; quō
 10 in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissīma auctōritās omnis orae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in
 5 magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucis portibus interiectis, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō mari ūti cōsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendī Sili atque

6. *adulēscēns, -entis, m.* [*pres. part. of adulēscō, grow up*], youth, young man. 4.

7. *mare, -is, n.*, sea; *mare Ōceanum*, the ocean. *

8. *praefectus, -i, m.* [*praeficiō, place over,*] overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). 4.

10. *Terrasidius, -dī, m.*, Titus Terrasidius (*tī'tūs tēr'ā-sīd'i-ūs*), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Trebius, -bī, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (*mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs*), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

11. *Velānius, -nī, m.*, Quintus Velanius (*kwīn'tūs vē-lā-nī-ūs*), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Silius, -iī, m., Titus Silius (*tī'tūs*

sīl'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

2. *ōra, -ae, f.*, border, margin: coast, shore. 4.

3. *nāvigō, 1, intr.* [*nāvis, ship*], set sail, sail. *

4. *nauticus, -a, -um, adj.* [*nauta, sailor*], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. 1.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. [*cēdō, go*], go before, precede, excel, surpass. 3.

5. *vāstus, -a, -um, adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. 3.

portus, -ūs, m. [*cf. porta, gate*], harbor, haven, port. *

7. *vectigālis, -e, adj.* [*vehō, carry*], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. 2.

7. *proximus . . . Ōceanum*: i.e. nearer than any other officer. For case see App. 122, b; G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a; B. 141, 3; H.-B. 380, b; H. 435, 2.

9. *in finitimās civitatēs*: especially the sea-board states of the northwest, called Aremorian states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, 34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the Aremorian states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.

1. *hulus civitātis*: the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. *ōrae*: partitive genitive, depending on *amplissima*.

regiōnum: depending on *ōrae*.

quod: belongs with *habent*, l. 2; *antecēdunt*, l. 4; and *habent*, l. 7.

4. *in magnō . . . interiectis*, "there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch (lit. great violence) of vast and open sea."

7. *habent vectigālēs*, "they treat

Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentinā cōnsilia, eādē dē 10 causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitatēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā ma-iōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem 15 perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat. 4

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui,

9. recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. 1.

13. exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. 2.

15. permanēō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [manēō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.

16. mālō, mälle, māluī, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [magis, more+volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. 1.

2. aedificō, 1, *tr.* [aedēs, house+faciō, make], build, construct. 1.

3. Liger, -eris, *m.* (Cce), the river Liger (lī'jēr), better the Loire. 1.

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [cf. rēmus, oar]. oarsman, rower. 1.

as tributaries"; i.e. the ship owners paid a tax for the privilege of using the harbors.

ab . . . retinendī, lit. "a beginning is made by these of arresting" = "they began by arresting."

9. finitimī: the Esuvii and the Coriosolites.

10. ut, "as," almost "since."

12. commūnī cōnsiliō, "by common agreement."

13. āctūrōs (*esse*), "that they would do."

14. ut permanēre quam perferre mālint, "to prefer to remain (rather) than to endure."

15. accēperint: implied indirect discourse.

18. sī velit, remittat: the direct form was *sī vis, remitte*.

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The Veneti make preparations to resist him.

2. aberat longius, "was too far off," to take command in person.

nāvēs longās: cf. Int. 61.

in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing p. 217, notice that there are three towns along the Liger, connected by a line of march. These were the winter quarters of the army, and no doubt ships were built at all of them.

3. ex prōvinciā: the Gauls were not competent oarsmen, for their ships were managed by sails, not oars; otherwise oarsmen might have been secured from the friendly maritime states, the Andes and the Pictones.

institui, "to be procured."

nautās gubernātōresque comparārī iubet. His rēbus celeriter
 5 administrātīs ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad
 exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item civitatēs cog-
 nitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus ad-
 mīssissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nā-
 tiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et
 10 in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitudīne periculī bellum parāre
 et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre
 instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōfidē-
 bant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvīgatiōnem
 impeditam propter īnscentiam locōrum paucitātemque por-
 15 tuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī ino-
 piam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut
 omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus
 posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque
 eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īsulās

4. *nauta*, -ae, *m.* [*for nāvita*; *nāvis*, ship], sailor. 1.
gubernātor, -ōris, *m.* steersman, pilot. 1.

7. *facinus*, -noris, *n.* [*faciō*, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

9. *sanciō*, *sancīre*, *sānxī*, *sānctum*, *tr.* [*cf. sacer*, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; *sānctus*, *pf. part. as*

adj., sacred, inviolable, established. 2.
inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in* + *violā-*
tus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. 1.

13. *nāvīgatiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*nāvīgō*, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. 3.

14. *īnsentia*, -ae, *f.* [*īnsciēns*, ignorant], ignorance. 3.

19. *īnsula*, -ae, *f.*, island. *

5. *cum primum . . . potuit*: probably in May. For tense see App. 237: G.-L. 561: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 557, a.

ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern town indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 217), and then marched west, thus concentrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.

7. *quantum . . . admīssissent*, "how great a crime they had committed"; an indirect question.

8. *lēgātōs retentōs (esse)*, "(namely), that envoys had been arrested," explains *facinus*; syntactically it is indirect discourse after *intellegēbant*.

quod nōmen, "a name which"; i.e.

lēgātōs.

10. *prō*, "in proportion to."

12. *hōc*: ablative of cause, explained by *quod . . . cōfidēbant*.

nātūrā: case? App. 148, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

13. *pedestria itinera*, "land routes."

14. *impeditam (esse)*, "was difficult."

15. *neque posse cōfidēbant*, "and they trusted that . . . would not be able."

16. *iam*, "even."

ut: translation? App. 247: G.-L. 608: A. 527, a: H.-B. 532, 2, b: H. 586, II.

17. *sē posse*, sc. *sciēbant*.

18. *facultātem*, "supply."

19. *locōrum*, depends on *vada*. etc.

nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī 20
atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant.
Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in op-
pida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum
bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt.
Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Am- 25
biliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex
Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā osten-
dimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant:
iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post
deditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūratiō,
in primīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem 5
licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gal-
lōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque

20. nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvī, *pf.*, have learned, hence, know; nōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. 4.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, close], shut up; conclūsum mare, an inland sea. 1.

23. Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē-shyā), the country of the Veneti. 1.

25. Lexovī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lēk-sō'vī-i). 4.

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (nām'nē-tēz). 1.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ām'bī-lī'a-tī). 1.

26. Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (dī'a-blīn'tēz). 1.

3. rebellīō, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. 3.

4. dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. 1.

5. neglēgō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg-+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

7. mōbiliter, *adv.* [mōbilis, mov-

20. aliam esse atque, "was different from (what it was)."

in conclūsō marī: i.e. the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small.

23. in Venetiam: probably in the bay of Quiberon. See map, p. 232.

primum: the adverb.

25. Ambiliatōs: their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.

Chap. 10. Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.

1. suprā: in chap. 9.

2. multa, "many considerations."

3. iniūria . . . equitum, lit. "the outrage of knights arrested" = "the outrage of arresting knights."

5. nē, "the fear that." This clause, like the nouns *iniūria*, etc., is in apposition with *multa*.

hāc parte neglēctā: translate by a conditional clause.

sibi idem licēre, "that the same course was open to them."

6. cum: causal.

7. rēbus: what verbs, though transitive in English, govern the dative in Latin?

excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertatī studēre et
condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōn-
spīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum
putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī
flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitatū mittit. Huic mandat Rē-
mōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Ger-
mānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim
nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum
cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et magnō numerō equitatūs in Aquī-
tāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam
mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sa-
binum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs,

able], readily, easily. 1.

excitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). 3.

9. cōspīrō, 1, *intr.* [spīrō, breathe], combine, conspire. 1.

10. partior, 4, *tr.* [pars, part], part, share, divide. 1.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum, *tr.* [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. 3.

3. officium, -ci, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre**, or **permanēre in officiō**, to remain faithful. *

8. autem, "moreover."

9. cōspīrārent: translate this clause after the principal clause. The subjunctive was probably used in the direct form; App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577: A. 551, *b*: B. 292, 1, *b*: H.-B. 507, 4, *b*: H. 605, 1.

10. partiendum (*esse*) sibi, *lit.* "must be divided by him" = "he must divide." Remember that the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning.

lātius distribuendum: so as to overawe several parts of Gaul at the same time.

Chap. 11. Accordingly he sends divisions of his army into various parts of Gaul, and himself marches against the Veneti.

2. flūminī: what other case may *proximus* govern? See note on 7, 7.

mittit: probably the various expeditions mentioned in this chapter all

started from Angers. See map facing p. 217.

mandat adeat: note the primary sequence after the historical present; cf. note on *accurrunt*, 5, 8. Note also the lack of a conjunction; App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, *a*: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 565, 4.

Rēmōs: this state had earned the hatred of the other Belgae in the preceding year, and it may have needed support.

4. arcessitī: sc. *esse*.

5. cōnentur is a part of Caesar's instructions to Labienus, and is therefore implied indirect discourse. But *dicēbantur* is not a part of the instructions, and is therefore indicative.

6. cohortibus legiōnāriis: Roman soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry, which was Gallic.

7. in Galliam: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. 10
Brūtum adulēscēntem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus quās ex Pic-
tonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire
iusserat praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci
iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in ex-
trēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habē-
rent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper
hōrārū XXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuento
aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflētārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum
oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis

10. D., *abbr. for praenomen Decimus*
(dēs'i-mūs). 1.

11. Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius
Brutus (dēs'i-mūs jū'nī-ūs brū'tūs), one
of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war,
and in the war with Pompey. He took
part in the conspiracy against Caesar,
and was killed by order of Antony. 2.

classis, -is, f., fleet. *

Pictonēs, -um, m. (Ced), the Pictones
(pīk'tō-nēs). 1.

1. situs, -ūs, *m.* [sinō, put down],
situation, site, position. 1.

2. lingua, -ae, *f.* [lingua, tongue],

a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1.

prōmunturium, -rī, n. [prēmīnēō,
project], promontory, headland. 1.

3. aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling,
surging; tide; minuento aestū, at ebb
tide. *

bis, num. adv. [for duis, from duo,
two], twice. 3.

5. afflētō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of affligō,
strike against, damage], damage great-
ly, shatter, injure; harass, distress.
2.

6. quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any
time. 1.

10. quī . . . cūret, "to see that that
force be kept away." For the construc-
tion of *distinendam*, see App. 285, II, b:
G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B.
612, III: H. 622.

11. classī, nāvibus: indirect ob-
jects of the compound verb *praeficit*.
The fleet had probably assembled in the
Liger, near its mouth.

14. eō: i.e. in Venetōs. He probably
moved along the coast, laying siege to
the towns in succession. After the dis-
tribution of troops described in this
chapter, Caesar had left three legions
and eight cohorts. One legion was
probably assigned to the fleet, leaving
Caesar two legions and eight co-
horts with which to attack the Veneti.

cōpiīs: why may *cum* be omitted?
App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B.

222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Chap. 12-16. Caesar crushes the
Veneti.

Chap. 12. Situation of the towns of
the Veneti.

1. sitūs oppidōrum: see the small
plan in the lower left hand corner of the
map on p. 232.

extrēmīs, "the end of."

2. pedibus, "on foot"; i.e. by land.
At high tide the low ground between
the towns and the mainland was over-
flowed.

3. sē incitāvisset, "had rushed in."

4. nāvibus: sc. *aditum habērent*.

5. in vadīs afflētārentur, "were
stranded on the shallows." The sub-
junctive is due to attraction.

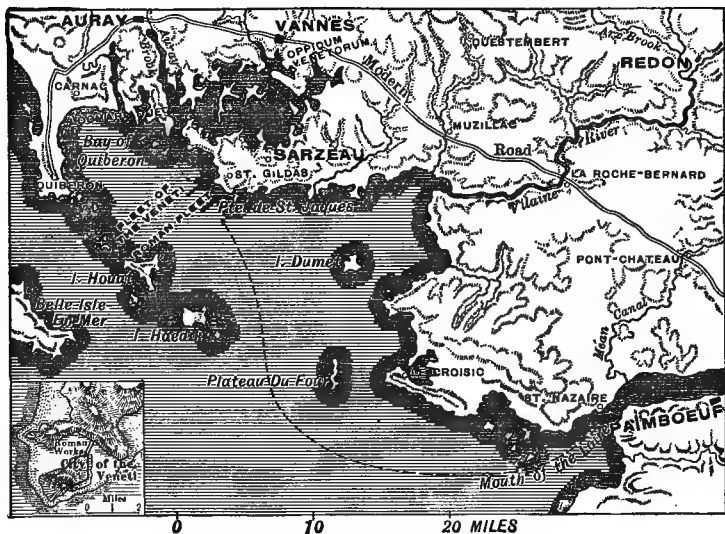
6. sī quandō . . . coeperant, . . .
dēportābant, "whenever they began

forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suis fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habē-

7. extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trusum, tr. [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. 1.

mōlēs, -is, f., mass; dike. 1

9. appellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsus, tr. [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. 1.



OPERATIONS AGAINST THE VENETI

... they would carry off, etc." *dēportābant* is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town. *coeperant* is pluperfect because in each case they had begun to despair before they moved. Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses of repeated action.

operis, "of the works"; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. *extrūsō* . . . *adaequātīs*: apparently the Romans ran two parallel dykes from the mainland to the town,

completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (*extrūsō*) from the space between the dykes, and the soldiers could work there continuously. The outer ends of these dykes (or of one of them) were built as high as the wall of the town, so as to serve as aggers.

aggere ac mōlibus: ablatives of means.

8. *fortūnīs*: indirect object. The ablative with *dē* is more common.

9. *cuius rei*: i.e. ships.

bant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipi-
ēbant; ibi sē rŭrsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant.
Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nos-
trae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vāstō
atque apertō mari, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nullīs porti-
bus, difficultās nāvigandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārū nā-
vium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent;
prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitudinem
fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae
ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trāns-

10. dēportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry off or away. 1.

11. opportunitās, -tātis, *f.* [oppor-
tūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportu-
nity; advantage; with loci, favorable
situation or position; with temporis,
favorable opportunity. 3.

13. tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [tempus,
time], time, season; weather, usually
bad weather, storm, tempest. *

dētīnēō, -tīnēre, -tīnui, -tentum,
tr. [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hin-
der, detain. 1.

14. rārūs, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered,
far apart; in small detachments, a few
at a time; few. 1.

1. namque, *conj.* [nam, for], for. 3.

2. carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel. 1.

aliquantō, *adv.* [aliquantus, some],
somewhat, a little. 1.

12. partem: duration of time.

13. summa agrees with difficultās.

vāstō . . . portibus: ablatives abso-
lute with causal meaning.

Chap. 13. Description of the ships
of the Veneti.

1. namque introduces the reason for
the ability of the enemy's ships to oper-
ate while the Roman ships were help-
less.

2. carinae . . . nāvium, "the bot-
toms (were) flatter than (those) of, etc."
In such cases Latin never inserts a

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level,
flat, plain. 2.

3. dēcessus, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō, de-
part], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). 1.

4. prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. 1.

admodum, *adv.* [modus, measure],
up to the measure; very much, very; with
num., fully; with neg., at all. 1.

ērīgō, -rīgere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.*
[regō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, *pf.*
part. as *adj.*, standing upright, high. 1.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. 2.

5. fluctus, -ūs, *m.* [fluō, flow], flood,
billow, wave. 3.

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf.*
part. of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapt-
ed, appropriate. 2.

6. rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. 1.

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, cross-beam,
thwart. 1.

word for "those."

3. quō: where is quō used in purpose
clauses?

excipere, "meet," "encounter."
They were less likely to strike bottom,
and if stranded they would not heel
over.

5. tōtae, "entirely."

6. ex rōbore: construction? App.
136: G.-L. 396: A. 403, 2: H.-B. 406, 4: H.
470.

quamvis: accusative of quivīs.

trānstra: these heavy timbers, set in

tra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus cōfixa clāvis ferreis
 digiti pollicis crassitudine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis
 revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae, sive
 10 propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod
 est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque
 impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis
 nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus
 nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et
 15 pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tem-
 pestātum illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim

7. **pedālis**, -e, *adj.* [pēs, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. 1.

cōfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fasten. 1.

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. 1.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. 2.

8. **digitus**, -ī, *m.*, finger; as measure of length, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. 1.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb, with or without digitus. 1.

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness. 1.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor; in **ancoris**, at anchor. *

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. 3.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. 3.

9. **revinciō**, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinc-

tum, *tr.* [re-+vinciō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. 2.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. 3.

alūta, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. 1.

tenuiter, *adv.* [tenuis, thin], thinly. 1.

10. **linum**, -ī, *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. 1.

11. **similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. 1.

12. **ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind. *

regō, **regere**, **rēxi**, **rēctum**, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. 1.

14. **congressus**, -ūs, *m.*, [congre-dior, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. 1.

15. **pulsus**, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike], stroke. 1.

rēmūs, -ī, *m.*, oar. 4.

16. **aptus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. 1.

across the inside of the ship, strengthened the sides and helped them to withstand the Roman *rōstra* (l. 17). In Roman ships they were rowers' benches, but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. in altitudinem, "in thickness."

8. crassitudine: this descriptive ablative is modified by a genitive instead of the usual adjective.

prō, "instead of."

9. pellēs . . . cōfectae, "skins and thinly dressed leather (served) as sails."

11. quod: explaining eō.

12. tanta onera nāvium, "such heavy ships."

13. nōn satis commodē, "not very well."

14. classī: dative of possessor.

ūnā celeritāte, "only in speed."

15. pulsū rēmōrum, "in rowing"; i.e. "in having oars." In the battle which followed the fact that the Roman ships had oars was an immense advantage.

reliqua, "all other things."

prō, "in view of."

16. illis: the ships of the enemy.

iis nostrae rôstrô nocere poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitudô), neque propter altitudinem facile telum adigebatur, et eadem de causâ minus commodê cõpulîs continebantur. Accedebat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sê ventô dedissent, et tempestâtem ferrent facilius et in vadis cõsisterent tûtius, et ab aestû relictæ nihil saxa et cautês timèrent; quârum rerum omnium nostris nâvibus câsus erat extimêscendus.

14. Complûribus expugnâtis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellêxit frûstrâ tantum laborem sũmî, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimî neque iis nocerî posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quæ ubi convênit ac primum ab hostibus vîsa est, circiter CCXX nâvês eõrum parâtissimæ atque omnî genere armõrum ôrnâtissimæ profectæ ex portû nostris adversæ cõn-

17. rôstrum, -i, *n.* [rôdô, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. 2.

noceô, nocere, nocui, nocitum, *intr.*, injure, hurt; nocens, *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. 4.

firmitudô, -inis, *f.* [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2.

19. cõpula, -æ, *f.*, grappling-hook. 1.

20. saevio, -ire, -iî, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. 1.

21. tûtô, *adv.* [tûtus, safe], safely, securely. 2.

22. cautês, -is, *f.*, reef. 1.

23. extimêscô, -timêscere, -timui, —, *tr.* [timêscô, *incept. of* timeô, fear], dread. 1.

3. reprimô, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [re-+premô, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. 1.

5. genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *

6. ôrnô, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; ôrnatus, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1.

17. nostræ: *sc. nâvês.*

18. adigebatur, "could be thrown."

19. cõpulîs: see Int. 64.

accedebat ut et ferrent et cõsisterent et timèrent, "there was the additional advantage that they weathered, etc.," or simply, "besides, they weathered, etc."

20. sê ventô dedissent, "ran before the wind."

21. cõsisterent, "came to anchor."

22. relictæ, "when left."

quârum rerum câsus, "the danger of these things."

23. nâvibus: dative of the agent.

Chap. 14. The naval battle. The

Romans ruin the rigging of the hostile ships.

1. expugnâtis: by the method described in chap. 12.

2. neque . . . posse, "and that they could not be injured." What is the literal translation? App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

6. armõrum, "equipment," including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostris: *sc. nâvibus.*

cõstitêrunt, "took their position"; from cõsistô. See the map on p. 232.

stitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtāe, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsui rēs praeeparāta ā nostris, falcēs praeacūtāe insertae affixae-
 15 que longuriis nōn absimili fōrmā mūrāliū falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsi adduc-

14. **praeeparō**, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1.

falc, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook; hook (for pulling down walls). 2.

inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. 1.

affigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [ad + figō, fix], fasten to. 1.

15. **longurius**, -ri, *m.* [longus, long], a long pole. 2.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. 1.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. 1.

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrāle pīlum**, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. 1.

16. **antenna**, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. 3.

mālus, -i, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (*up-right*). 1.

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. 1.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehendō, (prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (*fire*). 2.

7. **Brūtō**, **tribūnīs**, **centuriōnibus**: indirect objects of *cōnstābat*.

9. **quid . . . insisterent**, "what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt." These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions; App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559 4.

10. **rōstrō**: ablative of means.

nocērī: sc. *nāvibus hostium*; cf. references on *neque* . . . *posse*, l. 2.

turribus excitātis, "even when the towers were erected." These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. One appears in Fig. 12, Int. 64; but the sculptor represented it in miniature, so as to get it into the available space.

11. **ex**, "on."

12. **neque . . . et = et** (both) *nōn* . . . *et*. In translating, omit the first *et*.

13. **missa**, "those thrown." **erat magnō ūsui**, "was very useful." In fact this device saved the day.

15. **longuriis**: dative with *insertae* and *affixae*.

nōn . . . falcium, "of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks."

his . . . concidēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and broke it, whereupon the sail fell.

his: i.e. hooks. Ablative of means.

cum . . . comprehēnsi erant: mode? App. 241, b: G.-L. 584: A. 542: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4. For the

tique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, his ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum 20 erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur. 25

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. 5

17. nāvigiū, -gī, *n.* [nāvīgō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rump-tum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. 1.

18. abscidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. 1.

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall down fall. 1.

19. armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. 2.

21. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. 1.

tenses cf. note on sī quandō . . . dēportābant, 12, 6.

17. quibus: i.e. fūnibus.

18. cum: causal.

19. nāvibus, "of the ships"; a dative of reference modifying the whole clause, where a genitive might have been used instead; cf. *Caesari*, I, 31, 4.

22. in cōspectū, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 232.

23. paulō fortius, "a little braver than usual."

23. factum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of faciō*, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. 1.

25. dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. 1.

1. bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. 3.

2. ternī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. 1. circumstisō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *tr.* [sistō, stand], flock or rally around, surround, hem in. *

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb over; board. 1.

Chap. 15. Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.

1. cum circumsteterant: for mode see note on cum comprehēnsi erant, 14, 15.

singulās . . . ternae, "two or three . . . each." Only the disabled Gallic ships were thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.

3. quod, eī rei: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, cum . . . contendēbant

Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expug-
 10 nāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenirent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum
 5 coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaeque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā

7. malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. 1. tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. 1.

existō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. 1.

9. cōnsector, 1, *tr.* [sector, *freq. of* sequor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. 4.

10. interventus, -ūs, *m.* [inter-veniō, come between], coming; aid. 1.

11. terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (*pl.*) and orbis terrārum, the world. 3.

6. in . . . ferēbat, "in that direction toward which the wind was blowing."

9. singulās, "one by one."

11. cum pugnārētur, "when the battle had been going on." For this translation of the imperfect see note on cum pugnārētur, 5, 1.

hōrā quārtā: between about 8:30 and 9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. 16. The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their senate and sells the rest into slavery.

2. cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

usque, *adv.* (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with *ad*, until. 3.

2. iuventās, -ūtis, *f.* [iuvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. 1.

3. dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

4. ubique, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. 1.

8. vindicō, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. 1.

3. in quibus . . . fuit, "who had any ability to advise or any rank." eō: to the seat of war.

4. nāvium . . . fuerat, "whatever [of] ships they had had anywhere."

5. quibus, refers to both men and ships.

neque . . . habēbant, "did not know where to take refuge, etc." For construction see note on quid . . . insistērent, 14, 9.

7. eō gravius, quō, *lit.* "more severely on this account, in order that" = "the more severely, etc."

barbaris ius lēgātōrum cōservāretur. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

10

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēceraut, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucis diēbus Aulerci 5 Eburovicēs Lexovīque senātū suō interfecit, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs prae-dandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre 10 revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē

10. necō, 1, *tr.* [nec, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. 1.

3. Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, Viridovix (vī-rīd'ō-vīks), a chief of the Venelli. 4.

6. Eburovicēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lēr'sī ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz). 1.

auctor, -ōris, *m.* [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates;

promoter, instigator, adviser, author: auctor esse, advise. 1.

8. praetereā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. perdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give over, ruin; perditus, *pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 1.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, freebooter, bandit, robber. 1.

10. agricultūra, -ae, *f.* [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3.

10. reliquōs: i.e. all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence.

sub corōnā: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the custom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatucl (II, 33, 18) seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true that on the whole Caesar was merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the standards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. 17-19. Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.

Chap. 17. Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.

1. dum geruntur: for mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 604, 1.

Sabīnus: see 11, 8.

5. hīs paucis diēbus, "a few days before"; i.e. before the arrival of Sabinus.

7. nōlēbant: the senators.

8. undique ex Galliā, "from all parts of Gaul"; not simply from the Aremoric states. This was the Romans' third year in Gaul, and the long-continued war had unsettled everything.

11. idōneō . . . tenēbat, "shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects." Notice the three ablatives: rēbus is an ablative of specification: locō is an ablative of place, App.

tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cō-
sēdisset cotīdiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret,
ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabinus venīret,
15 sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur;
tantamque opiniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum
castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat,
quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente
quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte
20 aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn existimābat.

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opiniōne timōris idōneum quendam
hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxiliī causā
sēcum habēbat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitātiōibusque
persuādet utī ad hostēs trāseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī
5 ubi prō perfugā ad eōs venīit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, qui-
bus angustīis ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius
abesse quin proximā nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum

13. **prōducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -duc-
tum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth,
bring forth; prolong, protract; produce;
with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. *

14. **contemptiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [contem-
nō, despise], disdain, contempt. 1.

15. **carpō**, **carpere**, **carpsi**,
carptum, *tr.*, pluck: censure, jeer
at. 1.

18. **absēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.*
of **absum** be absent], absent, at a dis-
tance. 2.

19. **aequus**, -a, -um *adj.* even

level, equal; equitable, impartial, just;
aequus animus, equanimity, compo-
sure. 3.

2. **callidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd. 1.

3. **praemium**, -mī, *n.*, distinction,
prize, reward *

pollicitātiō, -ōnis *f.*, [polliceor,
promise], promise, offer. 2.

4. **ēdocēō**, -docēre, -docui, -doc-
tum, *tr.* [doceō, teach], teach thorough-
ly, inform in detail, explain. 1.

7. **clam**, *adv.*, secretly. 3.

151, b: *castris* appears to be an ablative
of place, but is an ablative of means,
App. 151, c.

12. **cum**, "although."

milium: sc. *passuum*.

spatiō: ablative of degree of differ-
ence; lit "opposite by a distance,
etc."

14. **hostibus**: dative of reference.

18. **eō absente**, "in the absence of
the mar.": i.e. Caesar.

20. **lēgātō**: dative of the agent with
dīmīcandum (*esse*); "that a legate ought
to fight."

Chap. 18. Sabinus tricks the ene-
my into attacking his camp.

2. **Gallum**, "a Gaul."

ex iis, " (one) of those."

5. **prō perfugā**, "pretending to be a
deserter."

6. **docet** has as objects the two sub-
stantive clauses *quibus* . . . *premātur*
(indirect question) and *abesse*, etc. (in-
direct discourse).

neque . . . **nocte**, lit. "and that it
was not farther off but that on the next
night," = "and that no later than the
next night."

ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra irī oportēre. Multae 10 rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cūctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex con- 15 ciliō dīmittunt quam ab iis sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut

9. **conclāmō**, 1, *intr.* [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1.

bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, **melius**; *sup.*, **optimē**. 2.

12. **cūctātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōnfirmō, assert], assurance. 1.

13. **parum**, *adv.* [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Ven-

eti, Venetian. 2.

14. **libenter**, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

17. **laetus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. 1.
explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **explōrō**, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. 1.

18. **sarmentum**, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. 1.

virgultum, -ī, *n.*, thicket, brush, brushwood. 1.

19. **pergō**, **pergere**, **perrēxi**, **perrēctum**, *intr.* [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. 1.

9. **negōtī . . . gerendī**, "of winning a victory."

10. **irī oportēre**, "(but) that they must go."

11. **superiōrum diērum**, "during the preceding days."

13. **spēs . . . bellī**, "the hope of (a fortunate outcome) of, etc." The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.

14. **quod . . . crēdunt**: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with **rēs**, l. 11.

15. **prius quam . . . concessum**, "until they had granted them permission." The fate of the senate, 17, 6, no doubt helped the council to yield. *Mode?* App. 236, b: G.-L. 577, 2, n. 2: A. 551, b, n. 2: B. 292: H.-B. 507, 4, c: H. 605, I.

17. **ut . . . victōriā**, "as if victory were assured."

18. **quibus . . . compleant**: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender.

1. **ab imō**, "from the bottom."

quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis
 daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus suos hortatus
 5 cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae
 feriebant onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri iubet.
 Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defatiga-
 tione, virtute militum et superiorum pignarum exercitatione,
 ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga
 10 verterent. Quos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti mag-
 num numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecuti
 paucos qui ex fuga evaserant reliquerunt. Sic uno tempore et
 de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior
 factus est, civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dederunt.
 15 Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est
 animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perfer-
 endas mens eorum est.

20. Eodem ferè tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam per-

7. defatigatio, -onis, *f.* [defatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. 1.

8. exercitatio, -onis, *f.* [exercitō, *freq. of* exerceō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

9. tergum, -i, *n.*, the back; terga vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab tergō, in the rear. *

10. vertō, vertere, verti, versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. *

12. evadō, -vadere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [vadō, go], escape. 1.

13. navalis, -e, *adj.* [navis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. 1.

15. alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. 2.

promptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. 1.

16. mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. 1.

17. mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animosque, minds and hearts; alienatā mente, bereft of reason. 4.

3. quam . . . spatii, "the least possible time."

5. cupientibus, *lit.* "to them desiring," "as they eagerly awaited it."

6. onera: the bundles of brush; 18, 18.

7. factum est opportunitate, "it resulted from the advantage, etc." The subject of *factum est* is *ut . . . verterent*.

8. militum: the Romans.

9. ac, "but." Latin usually says "and," when such an affirmative clause follows a negative one; English usually says "but."

11. equitēs: nominative.

13. Sabinus: *sc. certior factus est*.

14. Titurio: Titurius Sabinus.

15. ut . . . sic, "while . . . yet."

16. animus, "impulse."

17. mēns, "will-power."

Chap. 20-27. Crassus forces the Aquitani to submit.

Chap. 20. Crassus is attacked on the march by the Sotiates.

1. Crassus: read 11, 5-8, and see map facing p. 217.

vēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentis āmissis 5 profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitatūque comparātō, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae his regiōnibus, nōminatim ēvocātis, in Sotiātium finēs exercitum 10 intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiātēs magnis cōpiis coactis equitatūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde equitatū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostris subitō pedestres cōpiās, quas in convalle in insidiis collocāverant, ostendērunt. 15 Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

4. Praeconinus, -ī, m., Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyūs va-lē' rī-ūs prēk''ō-nī'nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. 1.

5. Manlius, -li, m., Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs mǎn'li-ūs), proconsul in 78 B.C. 1.

prōcōnsul, -is, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. 1.

6. mediocris, -cre, adj. [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking,

care. 4.

8. Tolōsa, -ae, f. (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. 1.

Carcasō, -ōnis, f. (Ee), Carcaso (kār'ka-sō). 1.

9. Narbō, -ōnis, m. (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. 1.

10. ēvocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvocātus, pf. part. as noun, reenlisted veteran. 3.

Sotiātēs, -um, m. (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). 4.

15. convallis, -is, f. [vallīs, valley], enclosed valley, defile. 1.

2. ante: see I, 1, 2.

3. paucis annis: twenty-two or twenty-three years before, in 78 or 79, B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitani seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praeconinus.

6. nōn mediocrem, "unusual."

8. viris: ablative absolute with

ēvocātis. These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges.

Tolōsā: place from which, with ēvocātis.

9. civitatēs, "cities." finitimae agrees with it.

his regiōnibus: Aquitania. The definite depends on finitimae.

12. quō: ablative of specification.

13. primum: the adverb.

16. disiectōs, "while scattered," in pursuit of the cavalry.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiātēs superioribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salutem positam putarent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātore et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscēntulō duce efficere possent perspicere cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptatā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius rei sunt longē peritissimī Aquitānī, proptereā quod multis locis apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostrōrum nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetratā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animis,

2. frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. 1.

4. adulēscēntulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of adulēscēns*, youth], a very young man. 1.

9. cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. 1.

11. aerāria, -ae, *f.* [aes, copper], copper mine. 1.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting;

shaft, mine. 1.

12. prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. 2.

1. intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; intentus, *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. 3.

Chap. 21. Crassus defeats the Sotiates and takes their town.

1. *superiōribus victōriis*: those mentioned in 20, 4-5. Case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431, a: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 432: H. 476, 1.

3. *quid . . . possent*: subject of *perspicere*.

imperātore, "commander-in-chief."

sine . . . legiōnibus: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers.

4. *adulēscēntulō duce*: ablative absolute.

5. *cuperent*: like *putarent*, with *cum*, 1. 1.

6. *ex itinere*: as in II, 12, 4.

8. *aliās*: the adverb.

9. *cuniculis āctīs*, "having driven tunnels." They probably tried to set fire to the agger from beneath, as it was made largely of wood.

culus rei, "an art in which." Case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 451, 1.

11. *diligentiā*: ablative of cause. The Romans may have dug countermines, thus meeting the enemy before they got under the agger.

14. *faciunt*, "they did so."

Chap. 22. The chief of the Sotiates vainly attempts to escape.

1. *rem*: the surrender of the arms.

aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtis (quōs illi solduriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iis fruuntur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae dēvōisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptionem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eādē dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium

2. Adiatunnus, -ī, m., Adiatunnus (ā'dī-a-tūn'ūs), the leader of the Sotiates. 2.

3. dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, tr. [voveō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus, pf. part. as noun,** a sworn follower. 2.

soldurius, -rī, m., vassal. 1.

4. commodum, -ī, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

fruo, frui, fructus sum, intr., en-

3. quōrum . . . condiciō, ut fruuntur, "whose position is this, that they enjoy."

4. ut . . . fruuntur . . . ferant . . . cōnsciscant; substantive clauses of fact (result).

commodis: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

unā: the adverb.

5. quōrum . . . dēdiderint: a determining clause, App. 231. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

sī . . . accidat: the mode is due to the same reason as that of *dēdiderint*. Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative; App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

7. memoriā: ablative of time within which.

joy. 1.

7. adhūc, adv. [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. 1.

8. recūsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with **periculum,** shrink from.

10. vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

1. Vocātēs, -um, m. (Ded), the Vocates (vō-kā'tēz). 2.

quisquam: why is this the proper indefinite? App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

8. devōisset: cf. note on *quōrum . . . dēdiderint*, 1. 5.

recūsāret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

cum his: this simply repeats *cum DC devōtis*, 1. 3, after the long parenthesis.

11. tamen, "nevertheless"; i.e. in spite of his attempt to escape after surrender. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuci, II, 33, and might have been punished as severely.

12. eādē: i.e. the same as those who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. 23. The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.

1. in finēs, etc.: see map facing p. 217.

et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōti, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū mūnītum paucis diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quō-
 5 queversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coopērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere
 10 cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituant. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter
 15 exiguitatem nōn facile didūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūctandum existimāvit quīn

2. Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEC), the Tarusates (tār''ū-sā'tēz). 2.

4. quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction, all around. 1.

10. Sertōrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'rī-ūs) a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72

3. oppidum: subject of *expugnātum* (*esse*).

paucis . . . erat, *lit.* "within the few days within which it had been come there," = "within a few days after his arrival."

7. citeriōris Hispāniae: Spain between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.

finitimae agrees with *quae* and governs *Aquitāniae*.

8. auctōritāte, "assurance."

10. ducēs, "as commanders."

Sertōriō: as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under

B.C. 1.

15. didūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. 1.

obsidēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. 2.

18. cūctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. 2.

him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army.

12. cōsuētūdine: ablative of accordance.

loca capere, "to choose suitable positions."

14. quod, "therefore"; conjunction, not pronoun.

15. nōn facile didūcī, "could not easily be divided." This and the following infinitives, through *augērī*, depend on *animadvertit*.

18. nōn . . . dēcertāret, "he thought he must not delay to fight a de

pugnā decertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium delātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

24. Primā lūce prōductis om̄ibus cōpiis, duplici acie institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōsili caperent exspectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitatemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrabantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō sine ullō vulnere victoriā potiri et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūctātiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs milites alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportere quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complerent, alii multis telis con-

3. etsi, conj. [et + si, if], even if, although. *

8. cōgitō, 1, tr. and intr. [co + agitō,

oislve battle."

On the quā clause, see App. 228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 298: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

19. cōnsilium, "a council of war."

20. pugnae: dative.

Chap. 24. Since the enemy refuses to meet him, Crassus attacks their camp.

1. duplici acie: The Roman force was smaller than that of the enemy, and this arrangement made a longer front than the usual triple line.

2. auxiliis . . . coniectis: the longer line of the enemy might be expected to turn both Roman flanks; therefore it was important that the wings consist of reliable Roman legionaries. Caesar never trusted the auxiliaries anywhere in the line.

4. sē . . . dimicātūrōs, "that it would be safe to fight."

consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

5. tūtius esse, "that it was still safer."

obsessis . . . interclūsō, "by blocking . . . and cutting off."

7. coepissent: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

8. impeditōs: both by their heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) and by the difficulty of fighting in marching order.

10. suā refers to the subject, *hostēs*.

11. opiniōne, lit. "impression" which they gave, = "appearance."

13. exspectāri . . . oportere, "that they ought not to delay longer."

quā . . . irētur: cf. 23, 18, note.

14. omnibus cupientibus, "to the delight of all."

Chap. 25. The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.

1. coniectis, "by throwing."

iectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēs-
que, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōfīdēbat,
lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus
5 comportandis speciem atque opīnionem pugnantium praeberent,
cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur
tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs
circumitis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāverunt nōn eādem
esse diligentīā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilēque
10 aditum habere.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnis
praemiis pollicitatiōibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri vellet
ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, ēductis iis cohortibus quae
praesidiō castris relictae intritae ab labōre erant et longiōre
5 itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent,
omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad
eās quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque his prōrūtis

2. dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive from or away, ward off. 1.

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. 1.

4. subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3.

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. 1.

6. timidē, *adv.* [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1.

8. circumeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. 1.

4. intritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + tritus, worn], unwearied. 1.

5. circumducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw around. 2.

7. prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], overthrow. 1.

3. quibus: the dative, since with *cōnfidō* the dative (App. 115) is regularly used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, a) of things.

4. subministrandis: to the legionary soldiers.

ad aggerem, "for an agger." The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

8. circumitis castris, "having ridden around the camp."

9. ab, "at."

Chap. 26. The Romans capture the camp and cut down the fleeing enemy.

1. cohortātus ut excitārent, "urging . . . to stimulate."

4. intritae ab labōre, "not worn out by fighting." *ab labōre* is strictly an ablative of separation, as if Caesar had said "free from"; hence the preposition.

longiōre, "roundabout."

7. diximus: in 25, 9.

prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid rei gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in 10 spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi dēspērātis omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōnsectātus ex milium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix 15 quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere 5 neglēxērunt.

8. **plānē**, *adv.* [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1.

11. **impugnō**, 1, *tr.* [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.

14. **campus**, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space or country. 1.

15. **Cantabrī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kān'ta-bri). 1.

2. **ultrō**, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. *

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-bēl'i). 1.

3. **Bigerriōnēs**, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the

Bigerriones (bī-jēr'ī-ō'nēz or bī'jēr-ī-ō'nēz). 1.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā'nī-ī). 1.

Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). 1.

Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā'tēz). 1.

4. **Auscī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci (aw'sī). 1.

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (gā-rūm'nī). 1.

Sibusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tēz). 1.

Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (De), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). 1.

8. **prius . . . quam**: see App. 236, c. **vidērī**: supply *possent* from *posset*.

9. **quid rei gererētur**, "what was going on"; subject of *posset*.

10. **nostrī**: i.e. those who were attacking in front.

quod, "a thing which." The antecedent is *redintegrātis viribus*.

12. **per**, "over."

14. **campis**: ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.

ex . . . numerō depends on *quārtā parte*.

15. **quae (milia) convēnisse** is the subject of the impersonal *cōstābat*, "who were known to have gathered."

16. **multā nocte**, "late at night."

Chap. 27. Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.

4. **paucae ultimae nātiōnēs**, "only a few tribes, the most remote"; probably those living among the Pyrenees.

5. **tempore**: cf. note on *quibus*, 25, 3.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapi-
ique supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam
lēgātōs dē pāce mīssissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōn-
5 fici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī
Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant max-
imās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque
esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque
omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar
10 pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim
vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus parti-
bus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī
celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et com-
plūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūtī paucōs
15 ex suis dēperdidērunt.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; *as noun*, those in the rear. 2.

1. exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, drive], finish, pass. 1.

3. umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never, never. 2.

8. continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of contineō, hold together], holding

together; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *as noun*, mainland, continent.

11. dispergō, -speregere, -spersi, -spersum, *tr.* [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

12. ēvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.

15. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

Chap. 28-29. Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapii.

Chap. 28. The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.

1. exācta, "past"; the participle used as an adjective.

2. omnī Galliā: Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, 1, 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.

3. quī essent, mīssissent: a clause of characteristic.

5. eō, "against them."

exercitum: on his march from the

Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 217.

quī, "but they."
ac, "than" or "from"; cf. *aliā atque*, 9, 2).

7. contendissent: the mode is due only to indirect discourse.

9. initium, "edge."
11. dispersis nostris: just as they had been surprised at the Sabis, II, 19 and 20.

13. complūribus: of the enemy.

14. longius, "too far."
impeditiōribus, "very difficult."

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vallō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtāe ut opus necessariō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrum diūtius sub pellibus milites continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquīs item cīvitatibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit.

1. *deinceps*, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. 1.

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, tr., cut; kill, slay. 2.

2. *imprūdēns, -entis, adj.* [*in- + prūdēns, prudent*], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. 1.

3. *māteria, -ae, f.*, material; wood,

timber. 4.

6. *pecus, -oris, n.*, cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat; flesh. 2.

9. *continuātiō, -ōnis, f.* [*continuu*, continuous], continuance, succession. 1.

imber, -bris, m., a rainstorm, rain. 1.

Chap. 29. Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. *nē quis impetus*, "that no attack."

inermibus . . . militibus: ablative absolute.

4. *conversam ad hostem*, "with their tops turned toward the enemy."

prō vallō, "to serve as a rampart."

Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

6. *cōfectō*, lit. "finished," = "cleared."

7. *ipsī*: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. *sub pellibus*: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.

BOOK IV. WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 217 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under the Roman yoke.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (**I, 31**), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reinforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against

the Suebi. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed to Deal from the nearest point in Gaul. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few nearby tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

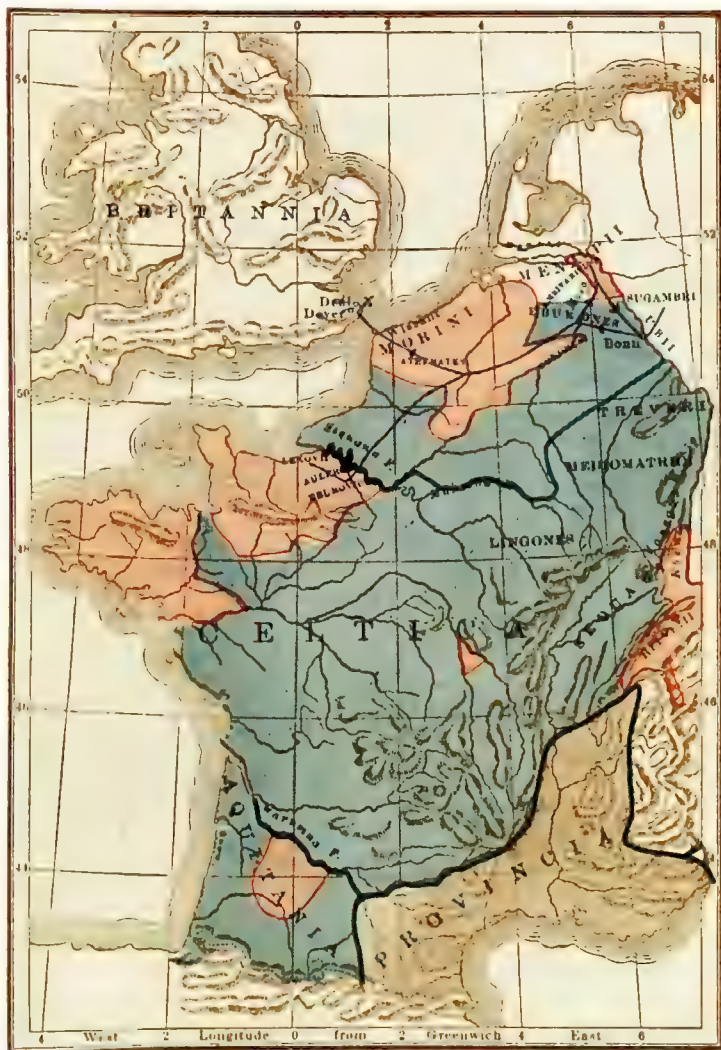
Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I**, 1-29, facing page 42.

The coloring in this map is the same as in the campaign map for Book **III**, facing page 217, except that the Morini and a part of the Menapii are colored red.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaigning is open to discussion. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, seem decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosæ and the Rhine. If the battle is rightly located, there is no valid argument for locating the bridge elsewhere than at Bonn. Holmes seems to have proved that Wissant, not Boulogne, was the sailing point for Britain. The landing point in Britain must have been either near Deal or a considerable distance west of Deal, near Hythe; it is almost certain that it was near Deal. The map on page 294 gives in more detail the parts of Gaul and Britain which are involved in discussions as to the sailing and landing points.



Campaign Map for Book IV

WALKER & CO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

1. Eā quæ secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā cum multitudīne hominū flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī dōmī mānsē-

1. Cn., *abbr. for Gnaeus* (nē'ūs), a Roman *praenomen*. 1.

Pompēius, -ī, *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), *better*, Pompey, *triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C.* 1.

2. Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, the Usipetes (ū-sip'ē-tēz). 4.

Tēncterī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tēngk'tē-rī). 4.

5. Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.* of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun, Suēbī* (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *

8. quotannis, *adv.* [quot, as many as+annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.

9. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

Chap. 1-4. Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. 1. Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. quī agrees with *annus*, though its antecedent is *hieme*; cf. *quod*, I, 38, 3, note.

quī . . . cōsulibus, "in the year when, etc."

Cn. Pompēiō, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate; Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned

at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā marī: probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map.

quō: the adverb.

8. singula: i.e. a thousand from each canton.

10 runt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem annō post in
armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec
ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparātī
agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in
locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maxi-
15 mam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in
vēnātiōnibus; quae res et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne
et libertate vitae, quod ā pueris nūllō officiō aut disciplinā assue-
facti nihil omnīnō contrā voluntatem faciunt, et virēs alit et
immānī corporum magnitudīne hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē
20 cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitūs

10. vicis, *gen. (no nom.)*, change; only in the *adv. phrase* in vicem, alternately, in turn. 1.

11. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr. [re- + maneō, remain]*, stay or remain behind, remain. *

12. sēparō, 1, *tr. [sē- + parō, prepare]*, prepare apart; separate; sēparātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. 1.

14. colō, colere, colui, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. 1.

15. lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk. 1.

vivō, vivere, vixi, victum, *intr.*, live; subsist on. 2.

16. vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. 1.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. 1.

17. disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction, system. 2.

assuefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. 2.

19. immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. 1.

20. frigidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. 1.
vestitus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, clothe] clothing. 1.

10. illōs: i.e. those who are fighting.
annō post, lit. "afterwards by a year," = "the following year."

12. ratiō atque ūsus, "the [theoretical] training and practice in."

privāti . . . est: i.e. all the land belonged to the state, none to individuals. This is generally true of barbarous peoples.

14. frūmentō, "on grain"; ablative of means with *vivunt*.

maximam partem: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 2: A. 397, a: B. 185, 1: H.-B. 388: H. 416, 2.

15. multumque . . . vēnātiōnibus, "are devoted to hunting."

16. quae res, "a practice which"; subject of *alit* and *efficit*.

17. quod . . . faciunt explains *libertate*.

ā pueris, "from boyhood."

nūllō officiō assuefacti, "trained by no service"; ablative of means.

19. hominēs: predicate accusative; "makes (them) men of, etc."

in eam . . . addūxērunt, lit. "have brought themselves into this custom," = "have trained themselves to such hardness."

20. locis frigidissimis, "though their climate is extremely cold"; ablative absolute.

vestitūs depends on *quicquam*. On the choice of indefinites, see App. 177: G.-L. 817, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. *Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēdant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentis, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippīis* 10

22. *lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, tr.*, wash; *in pass.*, bathe. 1.

3. *dēsiderō, i. tr.*, feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. 1.

dēlectō, i. tr., delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. 1.

4. *impēnsus, -a, -um, adj.*, expensive; *with pretium*, great. 1.

5. *dēfōrmis, -e, adj.* [*fōrma, form*], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. 1.

7. *dēsiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultum,*

intr. [*saliō, leap*], leap from or down, alight, dismount. *

8. *vēstigiū, -gī, n.* [*vēstigō, trace out*], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. 2.

10. *turpis, -e, adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2. *iners, -ertis, adj.* [*in-+ars, skill*], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. 1.

ephippiū, -pī, n., horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. 1.

21. *habērent, lavārentur*: translate by presents. The use of the imperfect illustrates the fact that the Romans usually regarded the perfect indicative (here *adduxērunt*) as a secondary tense, even when it seems to us to refer to present time.

Chap. 2. Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.

1. *mercātōribus*: dative of possessor.

eō, ut habeant, "on this account, that they may have."

cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

2. *quibus vēdant*: a purpose clause. Supply some word like "persons" as the antecedent of *quibus* and the object of *habeant*.

quam quō dēsiderent, "than because they desire." *Nōn quō* with the subjunctive is used to reject a reason. In

this sentence *magis quam* takes the place of *nōn*. The meaning is "not because they want anything, but because they wish to sell."

3. *iūmentis importātis nōn ūtuntur*: the important word is the participle *importātis*, as if he had said "they do not import the horses which they need."

4. *quaeque = et quae*.

6. *haec*: antecedent of *quae* (*iūmenta*): *summī . . . efficiunt*, lit. "make that they be (capable) of the greatest labor." See App. 104.

7. *pedibus*, "on foot."

9. *eōrum mōribus*, "according to their standards."

10. *habētur*, "is considered."

ephippiis: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they had no stirrups.

ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē a suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum numerum cīvitatū suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum sescenta agrī vacāre dicuntur.
- 5 Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubīī, quōrum fuit cīvitas ampla atque florēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; īī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsī propter propinquitatē Gallicīs sunt mōribus as-
- 10 suēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitatēque cīvitatīs finibus expellere nōn

11. ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. 1.

12. quamvis, *adv.* [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. 1.

13. remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. 1.

1. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.

5. Ubīī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bī-i). *

6. florēns, -entis, *adj.* [flōrēs, flower], flourishing, prosperous, in-

fluential. 2.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [capiō, take], comprehension, ideas. 1.

7. hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined; cultivated. 1.

8. ventitō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of veniō, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. 2.

11. amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. 1.

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. 1.

12. quamvis paucī, "however few (they may be)." Caesar does not exaggerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of German cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

vinum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. 8. Their treatment of the Ubii.

1. pūblicē, "for the state."

2. vacāre agrōs: subject of esse.

3. ūnā ex parte: i.e. on the east of the Suebi.

4. sescenta: this must be a great exaggeration. Caesar had no personal knowledge of the interior of Germany.

5. ad alteram partem: i.e. the northwest. See map.

fuit, "was (once)"; i.e. before their feat by the Suebi.

6. paulō: with hūmāniōrēs.

10. cum, "although."

multis . . . expertī, "in spite of many attempts in numerous wars."

potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēque redēgērunt.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēnctērī, quōs suprà diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multis locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāvērunt, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressi rūsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitatū cōfectō insciōs inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs

12. *humilis*, -e, *adj.* [*humus*, the ground], *on the ground*; low, humble, abject, weak. 1.

13. *infirmus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in-*+ *firmus*, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. 2.

3. *Germānia*, -ae, *f.* *Germania* (*jēr-mā'ni-a*), *better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine*. 1.

4. *triennium*, -ni, *n.* [*trēs*, three+ *annus*, year], three years. 1.

7. *dēmigrō*, 1, *intr.* [*migrō*, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate,

remove. 2.

11. *sēdēs*, -is, *f.* [*sedeō*, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4. *simulō*, 1, *tr.* [*similis*, like], make like; pretend. 2.

13. *inscius* -a, -um, *adj.* [*sciō*, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. 1.

15. *metus*, -ūs, *m.* [*metuō*, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; *metū territāre*, terrify; *hōc metū* = *metū huius rei*, from fear of this. 2.

Chap. 4. The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.

1. *in eādē causā*, "in the same condition"; i.e. of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and the Tencteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the northeast of the Suebi.

2. *suprà*: in 1, 2.

6. *multitudinis*: 430,000 persons, according to a later chapter.

7. *trāns*: on the German side.

habuerant: before the arrival of the Germans.

9. *vī contendere*, "force a passage."

10. *inopiam nāvium*: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.

13. *equitatū*: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the means employed by the Germans.

vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis
20 aluērunt.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gal-lōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, uti et viātōrēs etiam in-
5 vitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidis vul-gus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūtiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiō-
nibus permōti dē summis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum
10 eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

16. remigrō, 1, *intr.* [re-+migrō, move], move back, return. 2.

1. infirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

2. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. 1.

4. viātōr, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. 1.

8. prōnūtiō, 1, *tr.* [nūtiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with *sententia*, pronounce. 1.

auditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. 1.

19. eōrum cōpiis, "on their supplies"; those which the Menapii had stored up for their own use.

Chap. 5-6. Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite against him, hastens his preparations for war.

Chap. 5. Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.

3. nihil . . . committendum, "that no confidence should be placed in them."

4. cōsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

10. paenitet, paenitēre, paenituft, —, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as *pers. verb.*, repent (App. 109). 1.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. 2.

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. 2.

11. serviō, 4, *intr.* [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. 1.

figō, fingere, finxi, fictum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

uti: with *cōgant, quaerant, circumsistat*, and *cōgat*.

7. quāsque = *et quās*.

8. rēbus, "stories."

9. quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est, lit. "of which it must repent them"; App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, b: B. 209, 1: H.-B. 352, 1: H. 457.

11. plērique . . . respondeant, "give answers shaped to their wishes"; i.e. the wishes of the questioners.

6. Quā consuetudine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nullīs cīvitatibus ad Germānōs, invitātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent: omnia quae postulās- 5 sent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōfirmātīs equitatūque impe- 10 rātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit. #

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat.

2. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3

3. suspicor, 1, *tr.* [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *

4. invitō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

9. dissimulō, 1, *tr.* [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. 1.

10. permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.* [mulceō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. 1.

Chap. 6. Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.

2. *ad exercitum*: where was it? See III, 29, 11, and the map facing p. 254. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. *ea facta (esse)*, "that/those things had happened"; explained by the following clauses.

5. *ab Rhēnō discēderent*: i.e. to advance further into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

postulāscent: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

6. *fore parāta*, lit. "would be in a prepared condition." This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, *parātum iri*. The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in *invitātōs*.

lātius vagābantur, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them

had got as far as the Condrusi (see the map facing p. 254). The main body remained among the Menapii, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. *quī* refers only to *Condrūsōrum*.

10. *permulsīs et cōfirmātīs*: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

equitatū: it appears later that he secured 5,000.

11. *cōstituit*, "announced his decision." He had decided the matter long before.

Chap. 7-10. Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.

Chap. 7. Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.

1. *dēlectīs*, "having levied."

iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 254. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.

Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iīs
 vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs
 5 populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī laces-
 santur, quā armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuetūdō
 sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere
 neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs
 domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse
 10 amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuānt vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs
 armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī
 quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in
 terrīs esse nēmīnem quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus
 fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiā esse posse, sī in
 Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn
 potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs
 5 quī dari tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed
 licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint
 lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxi-
 lium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

8. ēiciō, -icere, -lēci, -iectum, *tr.*
 [iaciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive
 out, expel; cast up; sē ēicere, rush out,
 sally. 2.

9. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor, use], useful,

3. ā quibus: the Germans.

4. haec, "as follows." The haughty
 tone of the speech recalls the speeches
 of Divico, I, 13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.

priōrēs, "first"; i.e. they were not
 the aggressors.

5. recūsāre quā, "refuse to"; App.
 228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B.
 502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.

7. quicumque = omnibus (dative
 with resistere) quī.

8. haec tamen dicere, "this, how-
 ever, they would say."

10. attribuānt; the subjunctive rep-
 resents an imperative of the direct
 form.

11. ūnīs, "alone."

serviceable. 1.

11. possidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -ses-
 sum, *tr.*, take possession of, seize. 1.

3. tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, *tr.*,
 watch, guard, protect. 1.

12. reliquum nēmīnem, "no one
 else."

13. quem possint: a clause of char-
 acteristic.

Chap. 8. Caesar refuses Gallic
 land, but offers to let them settle
 among the Ubi.

1. quae vīsum est, "what seemed
 best." quae is the object of respondēre,
 to be supplied from respondit.

exitus, "the conclusion."

3. vērū, "right," "just."

quī: supply eōs as the antecedent.

7. Suēbōrum iniūriīs, "the wrongs
 done them by the Suebi."

8. hoc: i.e. that they allow the Usip-
 etes and the Tencteri to settle among

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēlibē-rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intēreā nē propius sē castra movērēt petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cognōverat enī magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque 5 causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius rē causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex

3. *propius*, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp. of prope*, near], nearer. *

5. *frūmentor*, 1, *intr.* [*frūmentum*, grain], get grain, forage. 4.

6. *Ambivaritī*, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambivariti (ām'vī-vār'i-tī). 1.

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. *

7. *interpōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place be-

tween, interpose; allege; cause; *fidem* interpōnere, pledge. 4.

1. *prōfluō*, -fluere, -fluxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. 1.

Vosegus, -ī, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vōs'ē-gūs), better, the Vosges Mountains. 1.

3. *Vacalus*, -ī, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'a-lūs) river, now the Waal. 1.

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vī). 1.

them. The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for, as the Ubii were nearly a match for the Suebi, the combined Ubii, Usipetes, and Tencteri should have more than held their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time to consider, but Caesar marches on.

2. *post diem tertium*, "on the third day"; i.e. the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.

3. *propius sē*: App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. *diēbus*: ablative of degree of difference.

6. *trāns*: to the west.

exspectārī equitēs: The German cavalry was far superior to Caesar's, and he could afford to take no risk. However, it is quite possible that the envoys were honest in asking time to

consider, for they can have had no power to bind their people to accept Caesar's proposition.

Chap. 10. Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their confluence.

1. *ex monte Vosegō*: more correctly from the plateau lying between the Vosges and the Cevennes.

2. *parte quādam*, etc.: the Rhine divides at the eastern end of the island of the Batavi. The southern stream, called Vacalus, flows west till it joins the Mosa. The combined Mosa and Vacalus flow on into the sea, making the southern boundary of the island. The confluence of the Mosa and the Vacalus was probably eighty miles from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is now nearer the sea, owing to a change in the river beds.

3. *inde*: from the confluence.

5 Lepontiis, qui Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōibus
 10 incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrassent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs
 5 quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohiberet, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferretur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīdū spatium daret. Haec omnia

5. Lepontii, -ōrum, *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pōn'shyī). 1.

6. Mediomatrici, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē'dī-ō-māt'ri-sī). 1.

Triboci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). 2.

7. citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* citō, put in motion], swift. 1.

8. diffuō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1.

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

10. piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. 1.

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. 1.

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. 1.

5. longō spatiō, "in a long course."

Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.

8. insulis effectis, "making islands."

10. sunt quī, "there are some who," is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic.

Chap. 11-15. Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.

Chap. 11. Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubi. Caesar grants a short truce.

2. ut erat cōstitūtum: translate after ad . . . revertuntur. See 9, 2.

5. antecessissent: implied indirect

discourse.

6. quōrum sī, "and if their."

7. fēcisset: for the future perfect of the direct form.

8. eā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs, "that they would accept the terms"; i.e. the offer to let them settle among the Ubi.

9. trīdū spatium: this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubi were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubi, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.

daret: for the imperative of the direct form.

Caesar eodem illō pertinēre arbitrābatur, ut tridui morā inter- 10
positā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē
nōn longius milibus passuum quattuor aquatiōnis causā prō-
cessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī
convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad
praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī 15
nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, si ipsī lacesserentur,
sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt,
quōrum erat quīnque milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius
octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frumentandī causā
ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs,
quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is 5
diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs
perturbāvērunt; rūsus hīs resistentibus cōsuētūdine suā ad
pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossis equīs complūribusque nostrīs dē-

10. *illō*, *adv.* [old *dat. of ille*],
thither, to that place, there (= thither). 1.

12. *aquatiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [aqua, water],
getting water. 1.

13. *frequēns*, -entis, *adj.*, in great
numbers, in crowds. 2.

14. *postulātum*, -ī, *n.* [postulō, de-
mand], demand, claim, request. 4.

17. *quoad*, *adv.* [quō, whither+ad,
to], to where; as long as, as far as; till,
until. 2.

3. *octingenti*, -ae, -a, *card. num.*
adj. [octō, eight], eight hundred. 1.

6. *indūtia*, -arum, *f.*, truce. 2.

8. *suffodiō*, -fodere, -fodi, -fossum,
tr. [sub+fodiō, dig], dig under; stab
underneath. 1.

10. *eodem illō pertinēre*, "tended
to that same object." See 9, 6, and
note. It is quite likely that Caesar was
mistaken. At any rate their request
for time to consult the Ubii was
perfectly natural, for they could not
know whether the Ubii would respect
Caesar's command (8, 8).

13. *hūc*: i.e. to the camping ground.

14. *convenirent*: see *daret*, l. 9. note.

15. *quī nūntiārent*, "men to give
orders."

17. *sustinērent*: i.e. they were
simply to defend themselves.

accessisset: implied indirect dis-
course for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. The German cavalry
treacherously attack and rout Cae-

sar's cavalry.

1. *ubi primum*, "as soon as."

3. *equitēs*: why not the ablative after
the comparative *amplius*? App. 139, b.
For this attack of 800 cavalry on 5,000,
compare 2, 11.

quī ierant: cf. 9, 5.

6. *impetū factō*: this attack cannot
have been authorized by the German
leaders. They certainly wanted a truce,
whatever their motives may have been,
and the defeat of Caesar's cavalry was
not important enough to tempt them to
break it. Either the German cavalry
had failed to receive orders, or it could
not resist the delight of attacking a
despised foe.

7. *cōsuētūdine*: cf. 2, 7.

iectis reliquos in fugam coniecērunt atque ita perterritos
 10 ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum
 agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris
 interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus,
 Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitate
 suā rēgnū obtinuerat amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus.
 15 Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum
 ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit
 fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus accep-
 tis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat,
 procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque
 20 interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs au-
 diendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī
 per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent;
 expectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiāe augērentur equitātusque
 5 reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gal-
 lōrum infirmitate quantum iam apud eōs hostēs unō proeliō
 auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia
 capiēda nihil spatī dandum existimābat. His cōstitutis
 rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātis et quaestōre cōmunicātō, nē

12. septuāgintā (LXX), *card. num.*
adj., indecl. [septem, seven], seventy.
 1.

13. Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Piso (pī'sō), an
 Aquitanian. 1.

5. dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind],
 madness, folly. 1.

9. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō,
 seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a
 class of officers in charge of the public
 revenues or the finances of the army. 3.

cōmunicō, 1, *tr.* [cōmūnis, com-
 mon], make common, communicate,
 impart, share. 1.

9. ita . . . ēgērunt, "drove them
 back in such a panic."

10. prius quam vēnissent: the sub-
 junctive is probably due to attraction,
 but may be explained by App. 236, b.

13. genere: case? App. 135: G.-L.
 395: A. 403, a: B. 215: H.-B. 418: H. 469, 2.

15. interclūsō: translate by a rela-
 tive clause.

Chap. 13. Caesar decides on venge-
 ance and detains the German leaders,

who have come to apologize.

1. neque iam, "no longer."

4. expectāre: subject of *esse*.
 dum augērentur: App. 235, b.

5. summae . . . esse, "was (an act)
 of the utmost folly."

6. quantum auctōritātis, "what
 prestige."

9. quaestōre: see Int. 39.

nē . . . praetermitteret, "not to let
 any opportunity for battle go by."

quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, 10 quod postridiē eius diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulatiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium pridīē commisissent, simul ut, sī quid 15 possent, dē indūtīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinēri iussit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

14. Acīē triplici īstitutā et celeriter VIII milium itinere cōfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī,

10. praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. 1.

11. māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early. 1.

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dis-

honesty. 2.

simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. 1.

11. quod, "(namely) that."

13. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

14. suī pūrgandī causā, "to excuse themselves." Construction? App. 291, a: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, c: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

contrā atque, "contrary to what."

15. ut . . . impetrārent, "to obtain whatever [lit. "if anything"] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him."

16. quōs oblātōs (*esse*), "that they had come into his power."

17. retinēri: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, 9, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as

follows: 1, a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; 2, a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; 3, irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; 4, a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; 5, the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. 14. Caesar surprises the German camp.

1. acīē . . . īstitutā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.

2. prius quam possent: App. 236, b.

et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsili
 5 habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpi-
 āsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā
 salutem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et
 concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī pristinī diēi perfidiā
 incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma
 10 capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter
 carrōs impedimentaue proelium commisērunt; at reliqua
 multitudō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis
 domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere
 coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō cum suōs inter-
 ficī vidērent, armīs abiectis signisque militāribus relictis sē ex
 castrīs eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī per-
 vēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā magnō numerō interfectō
 5 reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitū-

6. -ne, interrog. enclitic; in direct questions, simply sign of a question (App. 213, a); in indirect questions, whether; -ne . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne, whether . . . or. 2.

adversus, prep. w. acc. [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. 1.

an, conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. *

9. irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. [in+rumpō, break], break in-

to, rush into; force a way into, storm. 1.

13. passim, adv., in all directions. 1.

2. abiciō, -icere, -icēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. 2.

3. cōfluēns, -entis, f. [cōfluō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. 1.

5. praecipitō, 1, tr. [praeceps, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. 1.

4. et . . . et, "both . . . and."
 suōrum: i.e. their leaders, who had been detained by Caesar.

5. perturbantur -ne praestāret, "were in great confusion, (not knowing) whether it was better." On the kind of question see App. 214; 264, c.

9. quī: sc. ū as antecedent.

14. cōsectandōs: the beginning of the next chapter shows that the object was massacre, not the taking of prisoners.

Chap. 15. The Germans are routed and slaughtered.

3. Rhēnī: i.e. the Vacalus; see *parte quādam*, 10, 2, note.

4. reliquā, "further."

5. reliquī perierunt: some must have escaped. At any rate in later years there were Usipetes and Tencteri living east of the Rhine, not far from this battlefield. But they may be accounted for by the escape of the cavalry.

dine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iis quōs in castris retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcīt. Illi supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum veritī, 10 quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānsēundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli ut in Galliā venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum 5 Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiā quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum quam suprā commemorāvi prae-dandī frumentandique causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum his coniūnixerat. Ad quōs 10

6. pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. 2.

1. Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. 1.

2. iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with funera, appropriate. 4.

10. Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). 4.

6. oppressī, "overwhelmed."

ad ūnum, "to a man."

7. ex, "after," "relieved of."

9. discēdendī . . . fēcīt: if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.

12. libertātem, "permission" to remain.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's treatment of the Germans may have been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get German help. But the Germans replied (V, 55) that the thing had been tried twice, by Ariovistus and by the Tenceteri; they would tempt fortune no more.

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.

Chap. 16. Caesar's reasons for deciding to cross the Rhine.

2. iūstissima, "most valid," "strongest."

3. quod . . . voluit: in apposition with illa.

4. suis . . . rēbus, "for their own possessions too." The possessive usually follows its noun; why does it here precede?

cum intellegerent, "(as they would) when they should see"; implied indirect discourse for the future indicative.

6. accessit etiā quod, lit. "there was added also the fact that," = "moreover," "and besides."

7. suprā: see 9, 5.

cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, responderunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam
 15 esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubi autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae prohibē-
 20 rētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amicitia populī Rōmānī tūti esse
 25 possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvi Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum

13. finīō, 4, *tr.* [finis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. 1.

14. cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, Trānsrhēnānī, the people across the Rhine. 1.

12. (*ut*) dēderent: object of *postulārent*.

13. sē refers to the subject of *existimāret*, not to the speaker; so *suī*, l. 14.

14. cūr postulāret: mode? App. 268, III; 210, a.

suī . . . Rhēnum, "that anything across the Rhine belong to (lit. "be of") his authority or control."

17. obsidēs dederant: see II, 35, 5, note.

ōrābant, "kept begging." The envoys had been with him for some time, having come before the battle with the Germans; see 3, 7.

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. 2.

20. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. *

22. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.* Ariovistus (ā"rī-ō-vīs'tūs), a king of the Germans.

*

19. occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae, "affairs of state."

20. trānsportāret: in the same construction as *ferret*, l. 18.

21. reliquī temporis, "for the future."

futūrum: this and the following infinitives depend on a verb of saying implied in *ōrābant*.

Chap. 17. Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.

2. tūtum: an enemy could more easily prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dangerous means of retreat.

esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta dimēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modo dērectē ad perpendiculū, sed prōnē ac fastigātē ut secundum nātūram

5. rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness. 1.

8. tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. 2.

sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui, one and a half + pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. 1.

10. immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [in + mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trabibus immissis, beams being let in. 2.

11. dēfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.*

[figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. 1.

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. 1.

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake. 2.

dērectē, *adv.* [dērectus, straight], straight. 1.

12. perpendiculum, -ī, *n.*, plummet, plumb line. 1.

prōnē, *adv.* [prōnus, inclined], sloping downwards. 1.

fastigātē, *adv.* [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. 1.

3. neque suae . . . statuēbat, "he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc." *dignitatis* is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4. summa prōpōnēbātur, "presented itself as very great."

5. lātitudinem: the bridge was probably built near Bonn, where the river is a little more than a quarter of a mile wide.

6. id contendendum, "that he ought to make the effort."

8. bīna, "two." The distributive is used because there were many such timbers and they were handled two at a time. See plan, *a*, *a*.

dimēnsa *ad*, "measured according to"; i.e. they were made shorter or longer according to the depth of the river

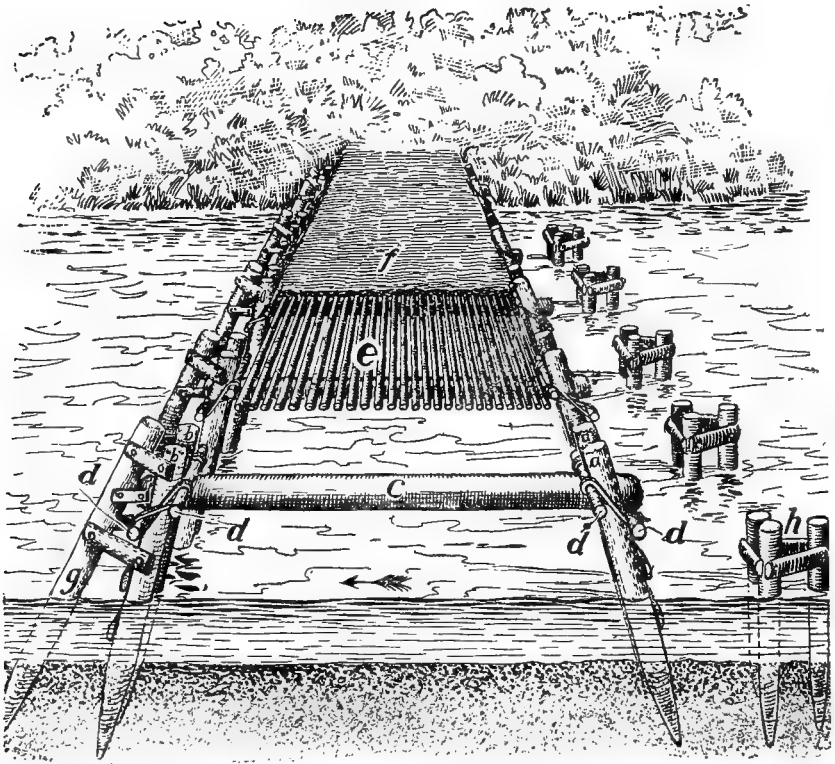
where they were driven into its bed.

9. intervāllō . . . iungēbat, "he joined together [by spiking wooden cross-pieces on them] with a space of two feet [between them]." See plan and the pile-driver. p. 273. *Intervāllō* is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. haec . . . dēfixerat, "when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there." They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile-driver (p. 273) stood, and were then handled by a derrick or some such simple machine. *dēfixerat*: mode? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 548: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

11. nōn . . . perpendiculum, "not vertically, like a pile"; i.e. as piles are usually driven.

12. ut . . . prōcumbent; i.e. sloping down-stream.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE

a, a, tigna bina, l. 8.
b, b, iis contraria duo (tigna), l. 13.
c, bipedālis trabs, l. 16.
d, d, d, d, fibulae, l. 17.

e, dērecta mātēria, l. 21.
f, longurī crātesque, l. 22.
g, sublica obliquē ācta, l. 23.
h, aliae (sublicae) suprā pontem, l. 25.

flūminis prōcumberent, iis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūcta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. 15 Haec utraque, insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūctūra distābat, binīs utrimque fibulīs ab

14. quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num.*
adj. [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. 1.

16. insuper, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. 1.

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [bis, twice + pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1.

13. iis . . . statuēbat: i.e. a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet downstream (ab inferiōre parte), but sloping against the current. See plan, b, b.

duo: we should expect *duo*, as in 1. 8.

14. quadrāgēnum: form? App. 16, e: G.-L. 33, 4: A. 49, d: B. 25, 6: H.-B. 71, 4: H. 84, 3.

The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water: the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. haec utraque, "these two pairs," is the subject of *distinebantur*.

A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, c). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the cross-beam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (*distinebantur*) by a pair of fastenings (*fibulae*) at each end of the two-foot cross beam.

quantum . . . distābat, lit. "as much as the joining of the

17. iūctūra, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. 1.

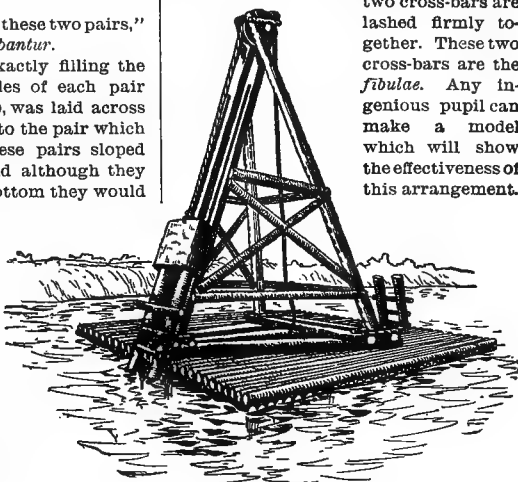
distō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. 1.

utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of

timbers stood apart." *quantum* is an accusative of extent of space and has *bipedālibus* as its antecedent.

17. fibulīs: it is not certain what these "fastenings" were. Those shown in the plan (d, d) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot cross-beam rests on a cross-bar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another cross-bar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the

two cross-bars are lashed firmly together. These two cross-bars are the *fibulae*. Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.



PILE-DRIVER

extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-
 riam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea
 20 rērum nātūra ut quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset hōc artius
 illigāta tenērentur. ~~¶~~ Haec dērēctā materiā iniectā contexēban-
 tur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius
 sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur,
 25 flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spa-
 tiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā

two], on each side, on both sides. 2.

fibula, -ae, *f.*, clasp; brace, fasten-
 ing. 1.

18. *disclūdō*, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [*claudō*, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. 1.

20. *aqua*, -ae, *f.*, water. 2.

artē, *adv.* [*artus*, close], closely, firmly. 1.

21. *illigō*, 1, *tr.* [*ligō*, bind], attach, hold or bind together. 1.

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dērigō*, put in line], straight. 1.

iniēcō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [*iaciō*, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

contexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, *tr.* [*texō*, weave], weave or bind together, connect. 1.

22. *crātēs*, -is, *f.*, wicker-work; fascine (*bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.*). 1.

cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [*sternō*, strew], strew over, cover over. 2.

sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; *nihilō sētius*, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. 2.

23. *obliquē*, *adv.* [*obliquus*, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. 1.

26. *truncus*, -i, *m.*, trunk of trees. 1.

18. *quibus* refers to *fibulis*. It is in the ablative absolute with *disclūsīs* and *revinctīs*.

disclūsīs: by the cross-beam and the piles.

in . . . *revinctīs*, "bound together in the opposite direction"; i.e. opposite to the direction of their separation.

19. *ea rērum nātūra*, "such was the nature of the structure."

20. *incitāvisset* is subjunctive by attraction.

hōc . . . tenērentur, "the more firmly the parts of the structure were bound together."

21. *haec* refers to the part of the structure already described, for which Caesar has no name. In modern engineering it is called a trestle-bent. There were probably between fifty and sixty

such trestle-bents. They were connected by timbers laid from one cross-beam to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (*dērēctā materiā*). Plan, *c.*

22. *nihilō sētius*: i.e. although the bridge was already very strong.

23. *et* is correlative with *et* in l. 25.

obliquē: i.e. they were driven in with a greater slant than the double piles had. See plan, *g.*

24. *quae prō ariete subiectae exciperent*, "which, set below as a buttress, were to withstand, etc."

25. *aliae*: sc. *sublicae agēbantur*. There is nothing in the text to show the number of these piles, but the plan (*h.*) suggests an effective defense.

spatiō: ablative of measure of difference with *suprā*.

essent ā barbaris missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

18. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tēncteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaeque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explorātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūtiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse utī dē oppidīs dēmi-grārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaeque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās

9. exportō, 1. *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out or away. 1.

10. sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. 1.

2. succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [sub+caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. 2.

4. posteāquam, *adv.* [postea, afterwards+quam, than], after. 4.

27. essent missae is subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for a future perfect indicative.

28. neu: why not *neque*?

Chap. 18. Caesar crosses the river and marches into the country of the Sugambrī.

1. diēbus decem quibus, *lit.* "within ten days within which," = "within ten days after"; cf. *paucis diēbus quibus*, III, 23, 3.

coepta erat: why passive? App. 86, a.

5. quibus petentibus: translate by a clause, "and when they, etc."

7. hortantibus iīs, *lit.* "those urging," = "on the advice of those."

8. quōs . . . habēbant: i.e. the cavalry. 16, 6, and probably other survivors of the massacre, 15, 5, note.

Chap. 19. Caesar ravages their country. As the Suebi have withdrawn, he returns to Gaul.

3. sī premerentur: implied indirect discourse for the future.

6. nūtiōs dīmisisse utī, "had sent messengers (urging) that."

9. hunc . . . ferē, "that this place had been chosen almost in the middle."

10 Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum expectāre atque ibi decertāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rēbus cōfectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō
 15 XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallīcis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia
 5 intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsui fore arbitrābatur, sī modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognovisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temerē

10. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*) there, in that place; (*of an incident just mentioned*) then, at this time. 1.

14. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. 1.

liberō, 1, *tr.* [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. 2.

16. ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [ūtilis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. 1.

1. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small, meager, limited. 1.

8. incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. 2.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

10. hīc, ibi: both words refer to the same place.

12. iis rēbus: explained by the substantive volitive (*ut*) clauses which follow.

13. ut . . . iniceret: cf. note at the end of chap. 15.

16. prōfectum: notice the *ō*; from what present?

Chap. 20-22. Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.

Chap. 20. Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.

1. exiguā . . . reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: "although only a small part . . . (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early."

4. hostibus nostris: indirect object of *subministrāta*.

subministrāta auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar's enemies.

6. magnō . . . fore, "it would be of great advantage to him."

sī adisset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. quae . . . incognita: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4, 19, we learn that a king of the Suessi-

praeter mercatōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam
 praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā 10
 Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōri-
 bus neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut
 quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī haberent
 aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum
 nāvium multitudinē idōneī portūs reperire poterat. 15

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,
 idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā prae-
 mittit. Hūc mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam
 primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs
 proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiec- 5
 tus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et quam
 superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet
 convenire. Interim, cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercatōrēs
 perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitatibus ad eum
 lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō 10
 populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis liberāliter polli-
 citus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent eōs domum

5. trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [trāiciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1.

9. Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni

(brī-tān'i); *better*, the Britons. 1.

11. obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. 1.

ones had been king of a part of Britain besides, and in VI, 13, we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.

9. illō: the adverb.

his ipsīs: the traders; dative with nōtum.

11. vocātis mercatōribus, "although he summoned, etc."

12. neque, etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on reperire.

Chap. 21. Caesar sends men in advance to gain information and to advise submission.

2. Volusēnum: either the subject of esse or the object of praemittit; supply eum in one place or the other. See what Caesar says of Volusenus in III, 5, 7;

he is the only tribune whom Caesar mentions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.

6. hūc: at a harbor among the Morini. This was probably Wissant, the point of France which is nearest to Britain: see map facing p. 254. The harbor is now filled with sand, but was in use during the middle ages.

10. quī polliceantur: a purpose clause, but best translated by a present participle.

dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promising are more often followed by the future infinitive with subject accusative, sē datūrōs esse.

remittit et cum iis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus
superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū
15 probābat et quē sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cuiusque auc-
tōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbatur, mittit. Hic
imperat quās possit adeat civitatēs, horteturque ut populi
Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.
Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, quantum ei facultātis dari
20 potuit quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet,
quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset
renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
moratur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt
quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod ho-
minēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellū populō
5 Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūros pollicē-
rentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus,
quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque
bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat ne-

13. Commius, -mī, m., Commius
(kōm'i-ūs), a chief of the Atrebates. 3.

15. fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, faith],
faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1.

3. excūsō, 1, tr. [causa, reason],
give reason for; excuse. 1.

4. imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+
peritus, experienced], inexperienced,
unskilled, ignorant. 4.

6. opportūnē, adv. [opportūnus,
fit], opportunely, seasonably. 1

13. Atrebātibus superātis: in the
battle with the Nervii, II, 23.

14. ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates.

15. sibi fidēlem: but Commius be-
came a leader in the general revolt
against him three years later. This is
why Caesar says *arbitrābatur*.

16. in hīs regiōnibus: i.e. in Bel-
gium.

magnī: genitive of value.

18. fidem sequantur lit. "follow
the protection (of)," = "surrender (to)."
sē: i.e. Caesar.

19. quantum . . . potuit, lit. "(as
much) as of opportunity could be given
to a man," = "as much as a man could."

20. quī . . . auderet: a clause of
characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to

blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty
which Caesar himself experienced in
landing with his army and the impris-
onment of Commius will show that Vol-
usenus could not possibly have landed
and returned.

Chap. 22. Caesar accepts the sur-
render of the Morini, and completes
his preparations for sailing.

3. cōsiliō, "behavior"; see III, 28.
hominēs: in apposition with the
omitted subject; "being barbarians."

4. cōsuētūdinis: of sparing those
who voluntarily surrendered.

5. fēcissent, imperāset: implied
indirect discourse for the perfect indica-
tive and the future perfect, respective-
ly.

que hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātis, praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

23. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem

9. antepōnō, -pōnere. -posuī, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. 1.

12. onerārius, -a, -um, adj. [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; *with nāvis*, transport, freight ship. *

contrahō. -trahere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 2.

16 quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+

minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

20. Sulpicius, -ci, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'li-ūs sūl-pīsh'yūs ruf'fūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*. 1.

1. nanciscor nancisci, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

2. solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtum, tr., loosen, untie; *with or without nāvēs*, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3.

9. hās . . . occupātiōnēs, "engaging in such trivial matters."

12. coāctis contractisque, "having levied and brought together."

13. quod . . . habēbat, lit. "whatever of ships of war he had besides," = "the ships which he had."

15. hūc accēdēbant, lit. "there were added to this number," = "he had in addition."

ā . . . octō, "eight miles[away]." If the chief harbor was Wissant, the smaller was Sangatte, east of Wissant.

16. tenēbantur quōminus possent, "were kept from being able": App. 228, c.

18. exercitum dūcendum dedit: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

Chap. 23-27. After a sharp contest Caesar effects a landing and accepts the surrender of the Britons.

Chap. 23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.

1. idōneam tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. tertiā vigiliā: just after midnight, the morning of August 27th. The first part of the night was spent in launching the ships, which had been

portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi
 5 circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur ut ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendū nēquāquam idōneum
 10 locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis, et quae ex Volusēnō cognovisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratio, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem
 15 mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iis administrārentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum ūnō

3. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr.* [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 1.

4. tardē, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly; *comp.* tardius, too slowly. 1.

6. expōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. 2.

7. angustē, *adv.* [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. 1.

8. litus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. 3.

9. nēquāquam, *adv.* [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. 1.

14. celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitate. 1.

instabilis, -e, *adj.* [in+stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. 1.

15. mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. 3.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. 2.

drawn up on the sandy beach, and in embarking.

4. tardius, "too late." The wind changed and delayed them for three days.

hōra quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this time of year the fourth hour began about 8:30 and ended after 9:30.

5. Britanniam attigit: probably at or near Dover. The hills spoken of are the famous chalk cliffs.

7. haec, "such."

10. dum convenirent: mode? App. 235, b.

ad hōram nōnam: somewhere near 3 P.M.

11. in ancoris, "at anchor."

13. ut . . . postulārent, "as military science, and especially as seaman-ship requires"; the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

14. ut quae habērent, *lit.* "as (things) which have,"="since it has to do with"; a causal relative clause, App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e, n. 1: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523, b: H. 592, 1.

15. (ut) administrārentur: the object of *monuit*.

ad tempus, "on the instant."

16. ventum et aestum secundum: on other grounds it is supposed that Caesar sailed northeast, to Deal; but it has been proved that at this time the tide was running southwest. Possibly

tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitatū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nōn pote-
rant, militibus autem ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis simul et dē nāvibus dēsilien-
dum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnand-
um, cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi
omnibus membrīs expeditis nōtissimis locis audācter tēla con-
icerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī
perterriti atque huius omninō generis pugnae imperitī nōn
eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cō-
suērunt ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ūbi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiō et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior,

2. essedārius, -rī, m. [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. 1.

6. ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+(g)nōtus, known; nōscō, know], unknown, unfamiliar. 1.

9. āridus, -a, -um, adj. [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. 3.

10. membrum, -ī, n., member of the body, limb. 1.

11. insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj. [suēs-cō, become accustomed + faciō, make] accustomed, trained. 1.

13. alacritās, -tātis, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

Caesar means that the tide was decreasing and the wind was so favorable that he could sail against the slackening current.

Chap. 24. The Britons try to prevent the landing.

2. quō genere, "a kind of troops which."

5. nisi . . . pōterant, "could be stationed only in deep water."

6. militibus: dative of the agent with *dēsiliendum*, etc., *erat*.

ignōtis . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

7. oppressis, "weighed down as they were"; in agreement with *militibus*.

8. cōsistendum, "keep their footing."

9. cum illi, "while the enemy."

12. nōn ūtēbantur, "did not display."

13. quō agrees with the nearer antecedent.

Chap. 25. Caesar brings his warships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.

2. inūsitiōr, "less familiar" than that of the transports. The latter were

paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad
 latus apertum hostium cōstitui atque inde fundis, sagittis,
 5 tormentis hostēs prōpelli ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō
 ūsui nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et
 inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac
 paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostris militibus
 cūctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae
 10 legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēli-
 citer ēveniret, 'Dēsilitē,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis
 aquilam hostibus prōdere; egō certē meum rei publicae atque
 imperātōri officium praestiterō.' Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset,
 sē ex nāvī prōlēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum
 15 nostrī, cohortāti inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-
 versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus cum
 cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod
 neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa sub-

4. funda, -ae, f., sling. 1.

sagitta, -ae, f., arrow. 1.

6. figurā, -ae, f. [figō, form], form, shape, figure. 1.

10. aquila, -ae, f., an eagle; a standard (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 3.

obtestor, 1, tr. [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1.

fēliciter, adv. [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. 1.

11. ēvenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-
 tum, intr. [veniō, come], turn out, re-
 sult. 1.

more like the trading vessels, with which
 the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expeditior, lit. "whose
 motion was freer for use," = "which
 were more easily managed."

4. latus apertum, "the right flank,"
 which was unprotected by shields.

9. quī, "the man who"

10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Plate
 I, 6, facing p. 27.

13. praestiterō: note the force of

inquam, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used
 only with direct quotations and following
 one or more words of the quotation, say. 1.

commilitō, -ōnis, m. [miles, soldier],
 fellow soldier, comrade. 1.

12. certē, adv. [certus, certain], cer-
 tainly; at least, at all events. 1.

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron. [cf.
 oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my
 own. 1.

15. dēdecus, -oris, n. [decus,
 honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1.

2. firmiter, adv. [firmus, strong],
 firmly. 1

the tense. "(whatever the result shall
 be) I at least shall have done my duty."

15. inter sē, "one another."

16. ex proximis nāvibus, "those
 who were in the nearest ships."

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the
 Britons are put to flight.

2. firmiter insistere, "get a firm
 footing."

signa subsequi: i.e. keep their for-
 mation by cohorts.

sequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi quibuscumque signis
 occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs
 vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex
 nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adori-
 ēbantur, plūrēs paucōs cīrcūmstēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in
 ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar,
 scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus
 complēri iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia
 submittēbat. Nostri, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus
 cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam de-
 dērunt, neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum
 tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad
 pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

15

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpē-
 runt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs
 datūrōs, quaeque imperāset factūrōs sēsē polliciti sunt. Ūnā
 cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprà dēmōn-
 strāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi ē
 nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta

4. aggregō, 1, *tr.* [ad+grex, flock],
 unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach.
 1.

9. scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. 1.
 speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [specu-
 lator, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1.

3. alius . . . nāvi, "men from dif-
 ferent ships."

quibuscumque . . . aggregābat,
 "gathered about whatever standards
 they chanced upon"; as in the battle
 with the Nervii, II, 21, 13.

5. ubi cōspexerant: the pluper-
 fect instead of the usual perfect with
ubi, expressing repeated action, just as
 the following imperfects do.

7. plūrēs, "several" of the enemy.
 in ūniversōs, "upon the main body."

9. scaphās, speculātōria nāvigia:
 these boats could be rowed into shallow
 water.

11. simul = *simul atque*.

10. labōrō, 1, *intr.* [labor, toil], toll,
 work hard; be anxious, troubled, or per-
 plexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed.
 3.

6. ōrātōr, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak],
 speaker; ambassador, envoy. 1.

13. neque, "but . . . not."
 longius, "very far."

14. capere, "reach." See note on
tardius, 23, 4.

hoc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry
 was an important part of every regular
 engagement.

Chap. 27. The Britons sue for peace.

3. datūrōs, factūrōs sēsē: the regu-
 lar construction after verbs of promis-
 ing; see note on *dare*, 21, 10.

4. suprà: see 21, 13.

6. cum, "although."

modō, "in the capacity of," "as."

dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōs-
 10 cerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in conti-
 nentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitā paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Intereā
 15 suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā, post diēm quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex
 5 castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant pro-
 fectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est

8. culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt.
 1.

9. imprudentia, -ae, *f.* [imprūdēns, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. 2.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* [in- + (g)nōscēns, knowing; nōs-

cō], forgive, pardon. 3.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

16. commendō, 1, *tr.* [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. 1.

3. lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, mild, smooth. 1.

8. eius rei: the treatment of Com-mius.

9. ut ignōscerētur, "that they be pardoned." In what case would "they" be, if expressed? App. 115, d.

10. cum lēgātis missis petissent, "after they had sent hostages and begged"; see 21, 10.

14. arcessitā, "for whom they had sent."

15. in agrōs, "to their farms."

Chap. 28-31. A storm turns back Caesar's cavalry and wrecks his fleet. Although he partially repairs the fleet, the Britons are encouraged to attack him.

Chap. 28. The cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.

1. post . . . quam = *diē quārtō postquam*. When *postquam* is divided, *post* is usually an adverb, "afterwards . . . than." Here it is a preposition. The day was August 30th, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckon-ing.

2. suprā, see 22, 15 and 23, 4.

6. aliae, aliae: the wind must have come from the north or northeast. The ships that were farthest out at sea were driven back at once; the others got some shelter west of Dover, but as the storm proved too severe they preferred to re-turn to Gaul rather than land on the hostile shore of Britain, miles from Cae-sar's camp.

propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complērentur, neces-
sariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt. 10

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs mari-
 timōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit; nostrisque
 id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās in
 āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad
 ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nos- 5
 tris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Com-
 plūribus nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancoris,
 reliquisque armāmentis āmissis ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna,
 id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta
 est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, 10
 et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod

10. *prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vec-*
tum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry forward;
pass., be carried forward, sail. 1.

1. *lūna, -ae, f., the moon. 2.*

5. *dēligō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], bind or*
tie down, fasten, moor. 2.

6. *auxilior, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid],*
give aid, help, assist, render assistance.
 1

7. *frangō frangere, frēgī, frāc-*
tum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discour-
age. 2.

9. *perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. [perturbō,*
disturb], disturbance, disorder, confu-
sion. 1.

10. *reportō, 1, tr. [re-+portō,*
carry], carry or bring back, convey.
 1.

8. *occāsum:* for construction see
 note on *propius sē*, 9, 3.

9. *cum complērentur*, "since they
 began to fill."

10. *adversā nocte*, "in the face of
 the night."

Chap. 29. The storm and the tide
 wreck Caesar's fleet.

1. *lūna plēna:* there was a full moon
 on the night of August 30th. This is
 what enables us to calculate the day of
 Caesar's arrival in Britain.

2. *aestūs maximōs:* the "spring"
 tide. The average rise and fall of the
 tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This
 tide, helped by the wind, rose much
 higher.

nostris . . . incognitum: the Ro-
 mans were best acquainted with the

Mediterranean, where the tides rise only
 a few inches. Yet they had had some
 experience with the tides in the war with
 the Veneti.

4. *quae . . . dēligatae*, "which were
 riding at anchor." The transports were
 heavier than the war-ships and Caesar
 had not thought it worth the effort to
 beach them.

6. *administrandī*, "of managing
 them."

9. *id quod* or *quae rēs* is commonly
 used instead of *quod* when the antece-
 dent is a clause.

10. *quibus possent:* a clause of
 characteristic.

11. *omnia quae erant ūsuī*, "all the
 things which were needed"; a determin-
 ing clause. App. 231.

omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxerunt rebellione factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūrātiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspiciābatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotidie in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictāe erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbatur et quae ad eas rēs erant usui ex continentī comparārī iubē-

8. reditus, -ūs, *m.* [redeō, return], returning, return. 1.

5. affigō, -figere, -fixi, -fictum, *tr.*, strike against; overthrow; damage.

12. hiemārī oportēre, "that they must pass the winter."

13. in hiemem, "for the winter."

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to renew hostilities.

1. prīncipēs: subject of *dūxerunt*, l. 6.

5. hōc, "on this account."

etiam, "still."

6. optimum: predicate adjective with *esse*, the subject being *prohibēre* and *prōducere*.

factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.

7. factā: translate as an infinitive, coördinate with *prohibēre*.

injure. 1.

6. aes, aeris, *n.* copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; aes allēnum, another's money, debt. 1.

rem, "operations."

8. hīs superātis, "if these (troops) were overpowered."

Chap. 31. Caesar repairs his fleet.

2. ex . . . eō, "from the disaster to his ships and from the fact."

3. quod accidit, "which really did happen."

4. cāsūs, "emergencies."

5. quae nāvēs, eārum, "of those ships which."

6. aere: iron was not much used in the construction of ships, because it rusts.

bat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigāri commodē posset effēcit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominū in agris remanēret, pars etiā in castra ventitāret, ii quī prō portis castrōrum in statione erant Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem maiorem quam cōsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōsili, cohōrtēs quāe in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in stationem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animādvērtit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

5. pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. 1.

10. cōnfestim, *adv.*, hastily, at once, immediately. 1.

14. dēmētō, -metere, -messuī, -messum, *tr.* [metō, reap], mow, reap. 1.

15. dēlitescō, -litescere, -lituī,

—, *intr.* [latescō, *incept.* of lateō, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. 1.

16. mētō, metere, messuī, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. 1.

18. essedum, -ī *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. 2.

8. summō studiō: the soldiers were as anxious to get away as Caesar was.

9. reliquīs . . . effēcit, *lit.* "made that it could be sailed by the rest," = "made the others fit to sail in."

Chap. 32-36. After repelling the Britons, who attack first one legion, then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 32. The Britons attack one legion while it is engaged in foraging.

1. frūmentātum: App. 295.

3. interpositā, "having arisen."

in agris remanēret: ostensibly en-

gaged in labor on the farms near the camp.

6. quam . . . ferret, "than usual."

7. id quod erat, "what was really the case"; explained by the clause *aliquid . . . consili*, "that some new plan had been entered upon."

8. cohōrtēs: probably four, one at each gate.

10. succēdere, "to take their places." armārī, "to arm themselves."

14. ūna, "only one."

17. incertis ordinibus: owing to

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsillunt et
 5 pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō ex-cēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, sī illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt uti in
 10 dēclivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tem-

circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

2. perequitō, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. 1.

3. rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. 1.

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of about thirty cavalymen. 1.

insinuō, 1, *tr.* [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. 1.

5. auriga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer. 1.

6. currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. 2.

7. receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive, retreat; refuge, shelter. 1.

8. stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. 1.

11. moderor, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. 1.

flectō, flectere, flexi, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. 1.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). 1.
 percurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run along or over. 1.

12. citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimē. 1.

1. novitās, -tātis, *f.* [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. 1.

the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed.

Chap. 33. How the Britons use their war-chariots in battle.

2. equōrum, "caused by the horses."

4. equitum turmās: the cavalry of the enemy, whom they thus attacked. Caesar had no cavalry this year, but this is a general description; in the next expedition his cavalry were thus defeated.

6. illi: the warriors, who had alighted.

7. expeditum receptum, "a ready retreat."

8. praestant, "display."

10. ac, "and even."

incitātōs, "when at full speed."

sustinēre, "to check"; depending on cōsuērint.

brevī, "quickly."

11. per, "along."

iugō: the crossbar attached to the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks.

Chap. 34. Caesar rescues the imperiled legion, and the Britons march against his camp.

1. rēbus: ablative of means.

nostris: indirect object of tulit. perturbātīs agrees with it.

novitāte, "because of the strangeness."

pore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacesendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī 5 tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuos complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitatemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāverunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōstrāverunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coactā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius 5 nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et

8. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [**con-****tinēō**, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

11. praedicō, 1, tr. [**dicō**, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

5. aliēnum, lit. "belonging to another," = "unfavorable." *suō*, "his own," almost illustrates the corresponding meaning, "favorable."

6. dum haec geruntur, "in the meantime."

7. quī . . . reliquī: mentioned in 32, 3.

9. quae continērent: App. 230, *u*, examples.

12. praedae faciendae: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans

12. praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder, spoil. 2.

14. peditātus, -ūs, m. [**pedes**, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry 1.

3. effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, tr and intr. [**ex**+**fugiō**, flee], flee from or away, escape. 1.

had left their baggage in Gaul. 30, 5. **sui liberandī**: see note on *sui pūrgandī*, 13, 14.

Chap. 35. The Britons are put to flight.

1. idem fore, ut, "that the same thing would occur . . . namely, that."

4. ante: in 21, 14 and 27, 4.

5. diūtius, "very long."

6. ac, "but"; for this translation see note on III, 19, 9.

7. tantō spatiō quantum . . . do-

vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvīgātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriāe duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infā delātae sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe

3. duplicō, 1, *tr.* [duplex, double], double, increase. 1.

4. aequinoctium, -tī, n. [aequus, equal + nox, night], the equinox. 1.

9. infā, *adv.* [inferus, below], below; *prep. with acc.,* below, smaller

than. 1.

2. trecentī, -ae, -a (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. 1.

5. orbis, -is, m., orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world. 1.

tuērunt, "over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted." *spatiō* is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural; see H.-B. 426, c.

Chap. 36. Caesar returns to Gaul.

2. hīs: dative of reference.

3. eōs . . . iussit: it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.

4. propinquā diē: ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 27th, and the equinox then fell on Sept. 24th, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.

hiemī . . . subiciendam, "that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather."

8. quōs reliquae, "as the rest." **capere,** "reach," "make." **et,** "but."

9. infā: to the south. They may have landed at Ambleteuse.

Chap. 37-38. The Morini revolt and are conquered.

Chap. 37. The Morini attack the troops from the two transports, but are repulsed.

1. quibus ex nāvibus: i.e. the two transports.

2. in castra: at Wissant.

3. pācātōs: see 22, 1-11.

4. primō: the adverb.

ita, "so very," "very."

5. pōnere, "to lay down."

orbe: a formation like the modern hollow square, used when troops were attacked on all sides.

factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia sex convēnerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt. Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs 10 ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis legionibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīonem fēcerant, mīsīt. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni vērunt. At Q. Titū- 5 rius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succisis, aedificiis incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō civitatēs 10 ex Britannia obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex litteris Caesaris diērum vīginti supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

3. siccitās, -tātis, *f.* [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. 1.

4. perfugium, -gī, *n.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. 1.

6. hominum: with *milia*.

Chap. 38. Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

3. siccitātēs: translate by the singular.

quō . . . habērent, lit. "had not where they could retreat," = "had nowhere to retreat"; App. 230, c.

4. quō perfugiō erant ūsī, lit. "which refuge they had used," = "the

refuge [i.e. the swamps] which they had used." For the fact see III, 28, 8.

6. quī . . . dūxerant: see 22, 18.

9. in Belgis: in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

12. diērum vīginti supplicātiō: see note on II, 35, 10, and notice the increased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.

THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

I, 13, 7-19. Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *facist*, in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt* *Helvētiī* ubi eōs *tū cōstitueris* atque esse *volueris*; sīn bellō persequī *persevērābis*, *remīniscere* et veteris incommodī populi Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum īī quī flūmen *trānsierant* suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtūtī *tribuere* aut *nōs dēspicere*; *nōs* ita ā patribus maiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut insidiīs *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlī committere* ut *hīc* locus ubi *cōstitimus* ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriam *prōdat*.

I, 14, 1-20. Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs quās *vōs commemorāvistis* memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō* quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī *accidērunt*; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre; sed eō *dēceptus est*, quod neque commissum ā sē *intelligēbat* quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum *putābat*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī *velit*, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim *temptāvistis*, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs *vexāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *potest*? Quod *vestrā* victoriā tam insolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūne iniūriās intulisse *admīrāminī*, eōdem *pertinent*. Cōnsuēvērunt enim *dī* immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī *volunt*, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi* *dabūntur*, utī ea quae *pollicēminī* *vōs* factūrōs *intelligam*, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsis

sociisque *intulistis*, item si Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, vobiscum *pācem faciam*.

20-23. Ita *Helvētiī* ā maiōribus suis *īnstitūtī sunt* utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērīnt; *huius rei populus Rōmānus est testis*.

I, 17, 2-13. *Sunt* nōn *nullī* quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. *Hī* sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem *dēterrent* nē frūmentum cōferant quod *dēbent*: [these men say] “Praestat, si (Haeduī) iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn *possunt*, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque *dubitāmus* quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī.” Ab isdem *vestra* cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs *geruntur* hostibus *ēnūntiantur*. *Hī ā mē* coērcērī nōn *possunt*; quīn etiam, quod *necessariō* rem coactus *tibi ēnūntiāvī*, *intellegō* quantō id cum periculō *fēcerīm*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potuī tacuī*.

I, 18, 6-24. *Ipse est Dumnorīx*, summā audaciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, *cupidus* rerum novarum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redēpta *habet*, proptereā quod illō licentē contrā licērī *audet* nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem *auxit* et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās *comparāvit*; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper *alit* et circum sē *habet*; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter *potest*, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō *collocāvit*, ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem *habet*, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs *collocāvit*. *Favet* et *cupit* Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, *ōdit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honoris *est* restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī *venit*; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam *habet* grātiā *dēspērat*.

I, 20, 2-12. *Sciō ista esse vĕra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit;* quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. *Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commoveor.* Quod sī quid ei ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur.

I, 30, 3-10. *Intellegimus, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetieris, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquērunt, utī . . . habērent.*

I, 31, 5-8. Nōn minus id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur quam utī ea quae volumus impetrēmus, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiatum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus.

8-56. Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae: hārum alterius principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamārunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs. Nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amīcitiā plūrimū ante in Galliā potuerant, coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . . imperiō essent. Ūnus ego sum ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs

obsidēs *darem*. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte *profūgī* et Rōmam ad senātum *vēnī* auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrando neque obsidibus *tenēbar*. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs *accidit*, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus *cōnsēdit* tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī *est* optimus tōtīus Galliae, *occupāvit* et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere *iubet*, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum **xxiv** ad eum *vēnērunt*, quibus locus ac sēdēs *parantur*. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus *pellentur* atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum *trānsībunt*; neque enim *cōnferendus est Gallicus* cum Germānōrum agrō, neque *haec cōnsuētūdō* victūs cum illā *comparanda*. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō *vīcīt*, quod proelium factum *est* ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter *imperat*, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs *poscīt* et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque *ēdit*, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntatem eius facta *est*. *Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius*; nōn *possunt* eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in *tē* populōque Rōmānō *erīt* auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem *est* faciendum quod Helvētiī *fēcērunt*, ut domō . . . experiantur. Haec sī *ēnūntiāta* Ariovistō *erunt*, nōn *dubītō* quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum *sunt* gravissimum supplicium sūmat. *Tū* vel auctōritāte *tuā* atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dētērrere *potes* nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā *potes* dēfendere.

I, **32**, 8-15. Hōc *est* miserior et gravior *fortūna* Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre *audent* absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītātē, velut sī cōram *adsit*, *horrent*, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās *datur*, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum *recēpērunt*, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius *sunt*, omnēs cruciātūs *sunt* perferendī.

I, **34**, 5-12. Sī quid *mīhi* ā Caesare opus esset, *ego* ad eum *vēnissem*; sī quid ille *mē vult*, illum ad *mē* venīre *oportet*.

Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eas partēs Galliae venīre *audeō* quās Caesar *possidet*, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem mīrum *vidētur* quid in *meā* Galliā, quam bellō *vīcī*, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī *sit*.

I, 35, 2-18. Quoniam tantō *meō* populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū *meō* rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus *est*, hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiā *refert*, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus *gravētur* neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum *putet*, haec *sunt* quae ab eō *postulō*: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam *trādūcat*; deinde, obsidēs quōs *habet* ab Haeduīs *reddat* Sēquanīsque *permittat* ut quōs ipsī *habent* voluntāte eius reddere illis *liceat*; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā *laccessat*, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum *īnferat*. Sī ita *fēcerit*, *mihi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque amīcitia cum eō *erit*; sī nōn *impetrābō*, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus *cēnsuit* utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblīcae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.

I, 36. Iūs *est* bellī ut quī *vīcerint* iīs quōs *vīcerint* quem ad modum *velint imperent*; item *populus Rōmānus* victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre *cōnsuevit*. Sī ego populō Rōmānō nōn *praescribō* quem ad modum suō iūre *ūtātur*, nōn *oportet mē* ā populō Rōmānō in *meō* iūre impediri. *Haeduī mihi*, quoniam bellī fortunam *temptāvērunt* et armīs congressī ac superātī *sunt*, *stipendiārīi sunt factī*. Magnam Caesar iniūriam *facit*, quī suō adventū vectīgālia *mihi* dēteriōra *facit*. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn *reddam*, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum *īnferam*, sī in eō *manēbunt* quod *convēnit* stipendiumque quotannis *pendent*; sī id nōn *fēcerint*, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit*. Quod *mihi* Caesar *dēnūntiat* sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglētūrum*, *nēmō mēcum* sine suā perniciē *contendit*. Cum *volet*, *congre-*

diātur: intellegat quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn *subiērunt*, virtūte *possint*.

I, 40, 3-47. Primum (*vōs incūsō*) quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō *dūcāminī vōbīs* quaerendum aut cōgitandum *putātis*. *Ariovistus* mē cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam *appetiit*; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum *iūdicet*? *Mihi* quidem *persuādētur*, cognitīs *meīs* postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque *meam* neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereāminī*? aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* diligentīā *dēspērētis*? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum est etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nobīs *accēperant sublevābant*. Ex quō iūdicārī *potest* quantum *habeat* in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā *timuistis*, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs *superāvistis*. Dēnique *hī sunt idem Germānī* quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiū congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque *superāvērunt*, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn *potuērunt*. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum *commovet*, *hī, eī quaerent*, reperīre *possunt* . . . *vīcis*. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus *fuit*, hāc nē ipse quidem *spērat* nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriā simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris *cōferunt faciunt* arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris *dēspērāre* aut praescribere *videantur*. Haec *mihi* sunt cūrae: frūmentum *Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs* *subministrant*, iamque *sunt* in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere *ipsī* brevī tempore *iūdicābitis*. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī *diciminī*, nihil eā rē *commoveor*; sciō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiens nōn fuerit, aut male rē

gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; *mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, felicitās Helveticōrum bellō est perspecta.* Itaque quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuī *repraesentābō* et hāc nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam primum intellegere *possim* utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs *valeat.* Quod sī praetereā nēmō *sequētur*, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne *ibō*, dē quā nōn *dubitō*, *mihique ea praetōria cohors erit.*

I, 44. *Trānsiī* Rhēnum nōn *meā* sponte, sed *rogātus* et *arcessītus* ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque *reliqui*; sēdēs *habēō* in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium *capiō* iūre belli quod victōrēs victis impōnere *cōsuērunt.* Nōn ego Gallis, sed *Galli mihi* bellum *intulērunt*; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum *vērērunt* ac contrā mē castra *habuerunt*; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō *pulsae ac superatae sunt.* Sī iterum experiri *volunt*, iterum *parātus sum* dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti *volunt*, inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus *pependērunt.* Amicitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnamētō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse *oportet*, atque hāc spē *petiī.* Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium *remittētur* et dēditiciī *subtrahentur*, non minus libenter *recūsābō* populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam *appetiī.* Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam *trādūcō*, id *mei* mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā *faciō*; eius rei testimonium est quod nisi *rogātus* nōn *vēnī* et quod bellum nōn *intulī*, sed *dēfendī.* Ego prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus.* Numquam ante hoc tempus *exercitus* populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus *ēgressus est.* Quid tibi *vīs?* Cūr in *meās* possessionēs *venīs?* Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut *illa vestra.* . Ut mihi concēdi nōn *oporteāt*, sī in *vestrōs* finēs impetum *faciam*, sic item vōs estis *inīquī*, quod in *meō* iūre *mē* *interpellātis.* Quod frātres ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs *dīcis*, nōn tam barbarus neque tam *imperītus sum* rērum ut nōn *sciam* neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis

auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haedui mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. *Dēbeō* suspicārī simulatā tē amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habēs, mei opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi *dēcēdēs* atque exercitum *dēdūcēs* ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod sī tē *interfēcērō*, multis nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum faciam; id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēō, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā tuā morte redimere possum. Quod sī *dēcēsseris* et liberā possessiōnem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē prae-miō *remūnerābō* et quaecumque bella gerī volēs sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam.

I, 45, 2-11. Neque mea neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdō patitur utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque ego iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō *superātī* sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciā redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportet, libera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō victā suis lēgibus utī voluit.

II, 3, 4-14. Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus. Neque (nōs) cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānique quī cis Rhēnum incolunt sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt; tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus utuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nobiscum habent, dēterrere potuerīmus quā cum hīs consentīrent.

II, 4, 2-28. Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēderunt, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique

sunt quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē *fit* utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī *sūmant*. Dē numerō eōrum omnia (*nōs*) *habēmus* explorāta, proptereā quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognōvimus*. Plūrimum inter eōs *Bellovacī* et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō *valent*; *hī possunt* cōficere armāta mīlia centum; *pollicitī sunt* ex eō numerō ēlecta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi *postulant*. Suessiōnēs *nostrī sunt finitimī*; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs *possident*. Apud eōs *fuit* rēx *nostrā* etiam memoriā *Dīviciācus*, tōtius Galliae *potētissimus*, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtīnuit*; nunc *est* rēx *Galba*; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque *summa* tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida *habent* numerō XII; *pollicentur* mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem *Nerviī*, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs *habentur* longissimēque *absunt*; quīndecim mīlia *Atrebātēs*, *Ambiānī* decem mīlia, *Morinī* xxv mīlia, *Menapiī* vii mīlia, *Caletī* x mīlia, *Veliocassēs* et *Viromandui* totidem, *Atuatucī* xix mīlia; *Condrūsī*, *Eburōnēs*, *Cae-rōsī*, *Caemānī*, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, *arbitrāmur* ad xl mīlia.

II, 14, 2-13. *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae *fuērunt*; *impulsī* ab suis principibus, quī *dīcēbant* Haeduōs ā tē in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs *dēfēcērunt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt*. Quī eius consilī principēs *fuērunt*, quod *intellegēbant* quantam calamitātem civitātī intulissent, in Britanniam *profūgērunt*. *Petunt* nōn solum *Bellovacī* sed etiam prō hīs *Haeduī* ut tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs *ūtāris*. Quod sī *fēceris*, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis*; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī *qua* bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōnsuērunt*.

II, 15, 8-15. *Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patiuntur vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existimant. Sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; incerpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtutem prōiēcērint; cōfirmant sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.*

II, 16, 2-9 *Sabis flūmen ā castrīs tuīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abest; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervī cōnsēdērunt adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectant ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis; expectantur etiam ab iīs Atuaticōrum cōpiae atque sunt in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetatem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidēbantur in eum locum coniēcērunt quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.*

II, 31, 3-13. *Nōn existimāmus Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinatiōnēs tantā celeritate prōmovēre possint. Nōs nostrarque omnia eōrum potestātī permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac dēprecāmur: sī forte prō tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam nōs ab aliīs audīmus, statueris nōs esse cōservandōs, nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbīs omnēs ferē finitimī sunt inimicī ac nostrae virtūtī invident; ā quībus nōs dēfendere trādītis armīs nōn possumus. Nōbīs praestat, sī in eum cāsum dēducēmur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēvimus.*

II, 32, 1-6. *Magis cōsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōservābō, sī priusquam mūrum ariēs attigerit vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditiōnis nulla est condiō nisi armīs trādītis. Id quod in Nervīis fecī faciam finitimisque imperābō nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferant.*

APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of *Belium Helveticum* (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
 - a. Before another vowel, or **h**; as *eō*, *nihil*.
 - b. Before **nd** and **nt**; as *laudandus*, *laudent*.
 - c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than **s**; as *laudem*, *laudat*.
2. A vowel is long:
 - a. Before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, and **nct**; as *inferō*, *cōsul*, *iūnxī*, *iūctum*.
 - b. When it results from contraction; as *isset*, for *iisset*.
3. A vowel is usually long:
 - a. In monosyllables not ending in **b**, **d**, **l**, **m**, or **t**; as *mē*, *hīc*, but *ab*, *ad*.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

a = <i>a</i> in <i>Cuba</i>	ā = <i>ah!</i>
e = <i>e</i> in <i>net</i>	ē = <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>
i = <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i>	ī = <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>
o = <i>o</i> in <i>for</i> (not as in <i>got</i>)	ō = <i>oh!</i>
u = <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>	ū = <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>
y = French <i>u</i> or German <i>ü</i> ; it rarely occurs.	

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

- ae** = *ai* in *aisle*
- oe** = *oi* in *oil*
- au** = *ow* in *how*

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'-oo*.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'-ee*. The diphthong appears in **cui**, **huic**, **cuius**, and **huius**.

a. When the consonant **i** (= **j**) stands between two vowels, as in **maior**, **eius**, **Troia**, and **cuius**, though **i** was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, **maiior**, **eiuis**, **Troiia**, and **cuiius**. The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

ai = *ai* in *aisle*

ei = *ey* in *they*

oi = *oi* in *oil*

ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can*, *go*

i (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*

n before **c**, **g**, **q**, and **x** = *ng* in *sing*

r pronounced distinctly

s as in *this*, never as in *these*

t as in *tin*, never as in *nation*

v = *w*

x = *ks*

ch, **ph**, **th** = *c*, *p*, *t*

bs, **bt** = *ps*, *pt*

qu = *qu* in *quart*

ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*

su = *sw* in *suādeō*, *suāvis*, *suēscō*, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in **mittō**, **annus**, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk*, *pen-knife*. We sound only one consonant in *ditty*, *penny*.

7. **i** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō**, the form **iciō** was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant **i** was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i**; as **dēiciō**, pronounced as if **dēiiciō**; **abiciō**, as if **abiiciō**.

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as *fe-rō*, *a-gō*, *mo-nē*.

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (*b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph*, or *th*, followed by *l* or *r*) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as *pa-tris*, *a-grī*. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as *pat-ris*, *ag-rī*.

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as *mit-tō*, *dic-tus*, *magis-ter*, *magis-trī*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of *laudō*, and the first syllable of *eius* (5, *a*).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants *x* and *z*. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: *est* is *est*, not *ēst*. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, *c*), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in *mit-tō* (6, *a*), *an-nus*, *dic-tus*, *par-tēs*, *nos-ter*.

c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then *pat-ris*, *ag-rī* (8, *b*). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as *om'nis*.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as *divi' sa*, *appel' lō*, *in' colunt*.

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as *Gallia'que*.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative

ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter*.

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-i
III.	{ consonant i	-is
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	ē	-ēi or -ei

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

lingua, f., tongue, language

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	lingua	a language (<i>as subject</i>) -a
<i>Genitive</i>	linguae	of a language, language's -ae
<i>Dative</i>	linguae	to or for a language. -ae
<i>Accusative</i>	linguam	a language (<i>as object</i>) -am
<i>Vocative</i>	lingua	O (<i>or thou</i>) language -a
<i>Ablative</i>	linguā by, from, in, or with a language	-ā

PLURAL

<i>Nominative</i>	linguae	languages (<i>as subject</i>)	-ae
<i>Genitive</i>	linguārum	of languages, languages'	-ārum
<i>Dative</i>	linguīs	to or for languages	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	linguās	languages (<i>as object</i>)	-ās
<i>Vocative</i>	linguae	O (<i>or ye</i>) languages	-ae
<i>Ablative</i>	linguīs	by, from, in, or with languages	-īs

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as *Belgae*, *m.*, the *Belgae*; *Matrona*, *m.*, the (*river*) *Marne*.

b. The locative singular ends in -ae; as *Samarobrīvae*, at *Samarobriva*.

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, -ir; the nominative neuter in -um.

<i>animus</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>mind</i>	<i>puer</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>boy</i>	<i>ager</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>field</i>	<i>vir</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>man</i>	<i>bellum</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>war</i>
--	---	---	--	---

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> animus	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>G.</i> animī	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bellī</i>
<i>D.</i> animō	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
<i>A.</i> animum	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>V.</i> anime	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>A.</i> animō	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> animī	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>G.</i> animōrum	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> animīs	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
<i>A.</i> animōs	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>V.</i> animī	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>A.</i> animīs	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>

<i>filius</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>son</i>	<i>Gāius</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>Gaius</i>	<i>Bōī</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>the Boīī</i>	<i>deus</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>god</i>
---	--	---	---

SING.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> filius	<i>Gāius</i>	<i>Bōī</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, dī</i>
<i>G.</i> fili	<i>Gāī</i>	<i>Bōiōrum</i>	<i>dei</i>	<i>deōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> filiō	<i>Gāiō</i>	<i>Bōīs</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diīs, dis</i>
<i>A.</i> filium	<i>Gāium</i>	<i>Bōiōs</i>	<i>deum</i>	<i>deōs</i>
<i>V.</i> fili	<i>Gāī</i>	<i>Bōī</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, dī</i>
<i>A.</i> filiō	<i>Gāiō</i>	<i>Bōīs</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diīs, dis</i>

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). *Vulgus*, *crowd*, is usually neuter. *Locus*, *m.*, *place*, has plural *loca*, *n.*, *places*.

b. The locative singular ends in -i; as *Agedincī*, at *Agedincum*.

c. Nouns in -ius regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in -i, instead of -ī and -ie, and nouns in -ium form the genitive in -i. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; *cōn-si'li*, of a plan; *ini'ti*, of a beginning.

d. Proper names ending in -āius, -ēius, and -ōius are declined like *Gāius* and *Bōi*.

e. A few words have -um instead of -ōrum in the genitive plural; *socium* (or *sociōrum*), of allies.

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in -i. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, -s or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, b or p. The nominative ending is -s.

prīnceps, *m.*, *chief*

Stem *prīncip-*

	SING.	PLUR.
N.	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>
G.	<i>prīncipis</i>	<i>prīncipum</i>
D.	<i>prīncipī</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>
A.	<i>prīncipem</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>
V.	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>
A.	<i>prīncipe</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, d or t. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is -s, and the final d or t of the stem is dropped before it.

laus, *f.*, *praise*

Stem *laud-*

mīles, *m.*, *soldier*

Stem *milit-*

caput, *n.*, *head*

Stem *capit-*

	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
N.	<i>laus</i>	<i>laudēs</i>		<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>		<i>caput</i>	<i>capita</i>
G.	<i>laudis</i>	<i>laudum</i>		<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>militum</i>		<i>capitis</i>	<i>capitum</i>
D.	<i>laudī</i>	<i>laudibus</i>		<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>militibus</i>		<i>capitī</i>	<i>capitibus</i>
A.	<i>laudem</i>	<i>laudēs</i>		<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>		<i>caput</i>	<i>capita</i>
V.	<i>laus</i>	<i>laudēs</i>		<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>		<i>caput</i>	<i>capita</i>
A.	<i>laude</i>	<i>laudibus</i>		<i>mīlite</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>		<i>capite</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, *g* or *c*. The nominative ending is *-s*, which unites with the final *g* or *c* of the stem to form *x*.

<i>lĕx</i> , F., <i>law</i> Stem <i>lĕg-</i>		<i>dux</i> , M., <i>leader</i> Stem <i>duc-</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> <i>lĕx</i>	<i>lĕgēs</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>lĕgis</i>	<i>lĕgum</i>	<i>ducis</i>	<i>ducum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>lĕgī</i>	<i>lĕgibus</i>	<i>duci</i>	<i>ducibus</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>lĕgem</i>	<i>lĕgēs</i>	<i>ducem</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>lĕx</i>	<i>lĕgēs</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>ducēs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>lĕge</i>	<i>lĕgibus</i>	<i>duce</i>	<i>ducibus</i>

21. Stems ending in a liquid, *l* or *r*. There is no nominative case-ending.

<i>cōsul</i> , M., <i>consul</i> Stem <i>cōsul-</i>		<i>pater</i> , M., <i>father</i> Stem <i>patr-</i>		<i>aequor</i> , N., <i>sea</i> Stem <i>aequor-</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> <i>cōsul</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>aequor</i>	<i>aequora</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>cōsulis</i>	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>patris</i>	<i>patrum</i>	<i>aequoris</i>	<i>aequorum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>cōsulī</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>patrī</i>	<i>patribus</i>	<i>aequorī</i>	<i>aequoribus</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>cōsulem</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>patrem</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>aequor</i>	<i>aequora</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>cōsul</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>aequor</i>	<i>aequora</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>cōsule</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>patre</i>	<i>patribus</i>	<i>aequore</i>	<i>aequoribus</i>

22. Stems ending in a nasal, *m* or *n*. There is no nominative case-ending, except in *hiems*, the only stem in *-m*. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final *n* and changes the preceding vowel to *ō*.

<i>homō</i> , M., F., <i>human being</i> Stem <i>homin-</i>		<i>ratio</i> , F., <i>reason</i> Stem <i>ratioñ-</i>		<i>flūmen</i> , N., <i>river</i> Stem <i>flūmin-</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> <i>homō</i>	<i>hominēs</i>	<i>ratio</i>	<i>ratioñēs</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>hominis</i>	<i>hominum</i>	<i>ratioñis</i>	<i>ratioñum</i>	<i>flūminis</i>	<i>flūminum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>hominī</i>	<i>hominibus</i>	<i>ratioñī</i>	<i>ratioñibus</i>	<i>flūminī</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>hominem</i>	<i>hominēs</i>	<i>ratioñem</i>	<i>ratioñēs</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>homō</i>	<i>hominēs</i>	<i>ratio</i>	<i>ratioñēs</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>homine</i>	<i>hominibus</i>	<i>ratioñe</i>	<i>ratioñibus</i>	<i>flūmine</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>

23. Stems ending in *s* (apparently *r*, because *s* changes to *r* between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in *s*, sometimes in *r*.

mōs, M., <i>custom</i>		honor, M., <i>honor</i>		tempus, N., <i>time</i>	
Stem mōs-		Stem honōs-		Stem tempos-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
G. mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	temporis	temporum
D. mōri	mōribus	honōri	honōribus	tempori	temporibus
A. mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
V. mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
A. mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	tempore	temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-is* or *-ēs* if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

25. Theoretically the *i* should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., *-em*, abl., *-e*, acc. plural either *-ēs* or *-is*. Neuters have abl. *-ī*.

turris, F., <i>tower</i>		hostis, M., F., <i>enemy</i>		caedēs, F., <i>slaughter</i>	
Stem turri-		Stem hosti-		Stem caedi-	
		SINGULAR			
N. turris		hostis		caedēs	
G. turris		hostis		caedis	
D. turri		hosti		caedi	
A. turrim or -em		hostem		caedem	
V. turris		hostis		caedēs	
A. turri or -e		hoste		caede	
		PLURAL			
N. turrēs		hostēs		caedēs	
G. turrium		hostium		caedium	
D. turribus		hostibus		caedibus	
A. turris or -ēs		hostēs or -is		caedēs or -is	
V. turrēs		hostēs		caedēs	
A. turribus		hostibus		caedibus	

cubīle, N., couchStem **cubīli-****vectīgal, N., tax**Stem **vectīgāli-**

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> cubīle	vectīgal
<i>G.</i> cubīlis	vectīgālis
<i>D.</i> cubīlī	vectīgālī
<i>A.</i> cubīle	vectīgal
<i>V.</i> cubīle	vectīgal
<i>A.</i> cubīlī	vectīgālī

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> cubilia	vectīgālia
<i>G.</i> cubīlium	vectīgālium
<i>D.</i> cubilibus	vectīgālibus
<i>A.</i> cubīlia	vectīgālia
<i>V.</i> cubīlia	vectīgālia
<i>A.</i> cubilibus	vectīgālibus

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), **m.**, *the Saone*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), **m.**, *the Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, **m.**, *fire*, and **nāvis**, **f.**, *ship*, often have **abl.-I**. **Mare**, **n.**, *sea*, is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-is**. Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās**, **-tātis**.

cliēns, m., retainerStem **cliēt-****urbs, f., city**Stem **urb-**

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

<i>N.</i> cliēns	cliētēs	urbs	urbēs
<i>G.</i> cliētis	cliētium	urbis	urbium
<i>D.</i> cliētī	cliētibus	urbī	urbibus
<i>A.</i> cliētem	cliētēs or -is	urbem	urbēs or -is
<i>V.</i> cliēns	cliētēs	urbs	urbēs
<i>A.</i> cliēte	cliētibus	urbe	urbibus

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

senex , M., <i>old man</i>	os , N., <i>bone</i>	vīs , F., <i>force</i>	bōs , M., F., <i>ox, cow</i>	Iuppiter , M., <i>Jupiter</i>
SINGULAR				
N. senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
G. senis	ossis	vīs	bovis	Iovis
D. senī	ossī	vī	bovī	Iovī
A. senem	os	vim	bovem	Iovem
V. senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
A. sene	osse	vī	bove	Iove
PLURAL				
N. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
G. senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum or boum	
D. senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	
A. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
V. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
A. senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

- Masculine* are nouns in ō (except those in -dō, -gō, -iō) -or, -ōs, -er, -es.
- Feminine* are nouns in -dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x, and in -s when preceded by a consonant.
- Neuter* are all others; namely, nouns in -a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in -u; nominative masculine in -us, nominative neuter in -ū.

passus , M., <i>pace</i>		cornū , N., <i>horn</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
G. passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
D. passuī	passibus	cornū	cornibus
A. passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
V. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
A. passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

- Domus*, *house*, *manus*, *hand*, *Idūs*, *Ides*, are feminine.
- The dative singular of nouns in -us sometimes ends in -ū.
- The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in -ubus.

d. *Domus*, *F.*, *house*, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>domuum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>domui</i> or <i>domō</i>	<i>domibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>domum</i>	<i>domōs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>domō</i> or <i>domū</i>	<i>domibus</i>
<i>Loc.</i>	<i>domi</i> (<i>at home</i>)	

FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in *-ē*; nominative in *-ēs*. Usually feminine.
diēs, *M.*, *day* *rēs*, *F.*, *thing*

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

a. *Diēs* in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is *-ēi* after a vowel, *-ei* after a consonant. *-ē* is sometimes used instead of either.

c. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. *Aciēs*, *spēs*, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

magnus, *large*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>magnus</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>	<i>magnārum</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>magnō</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>magnum</i>	<i>magnam</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnōs</i>	<i>magnās</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>magne</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>magnō</i>	<i>magnā</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>

liber, free

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
G. liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D. liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
A. liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
V. liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
A. liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

noster, our

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G. nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D. nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
A. nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
V. noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
A. nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius (in *alter* usually -ius) and the dative singular in -ī in all genders. These are *alius*, *another*, *sōlus*, *only*, *tōtus*, *whole*, *ūllus*, *any*, *nūllus*, *no*, *ūnus*, *one*, *alter*, *the other*, *uter*, *which* (of two), *neuter*, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in *magnus*. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of *alius*.

SINGULAR

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G. ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius
D. ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
A. ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
A. ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
N. alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G. alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
D. aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
A. alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
A. aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and *i*-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of *two* or *three terminations* have only *-ī* in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

SING.		fortior, braver ,		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neuter			Mas. and Fem.	Neuter
N. fortior	fortius			fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G. fortiōris	fortiōris			fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D. fortiōrī	fortiōrī			fortiōribus	fortiōribus
A. fortiōrem	fortius			fortiōrēs	fortiōra
V. fortior	fortius			fortiōrēs	fortiōra
A. fortiōre	fortiōre			fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives; but *plūs*, *more*, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

SING.		PLUR.	
Neuter	Mas. and Fem.		Neuter
N. plūs	plūrēs		plūra
G. plūris	plūrium		plūrium
D.	plūribus		plūribus
A. plūs	plūrēs or -īs		plūra
A. plūre	plūribus		plūribus

35. One termination.

SING.		vetus, old		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.			Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. vetus	vetus			veterēs	vetera
G. veteris	veteris			veterum	veterum
D. veterī	veterī			veteribus	veteribus
A. veterem	vetus			veterēs	vetera
V. vetus	vetus			veterēs	vetera
A. vetera	vetero			veteribus	veteribus

a. Here belongs *princeps*, *chief*. *Dives*, *rich*, also belongs here, but has *ditia* for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

acer, *sharp*

SING.			PLUR.		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
G. <i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
D. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
A. <i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
V. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
A. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

a. Here belong *celeber*, *famous*, *equester*, *equestrian*, *pedester*, *pedestrian*; names of months in *-ber*; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

omnis, *all*

SING.		PLUR.	
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
G. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
D. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
A. <i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs or -īs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
V. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
A. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

a. Here belong all adjectives in *-is*, *-e*.

38. One termination.

audāx, *bold*

SING.		PLUR.	
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
G. <i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>
D. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>
A. <i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs or -īs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
V. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
A. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>

oriēns, *rising*

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
G. orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
D. orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
A. orientem	oriēns	orientēs or -is	orientia
V. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
A. oriente or -ī	oriente or -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in -āns and -ēns. Participles usually have the ablative singular in -ī only when used as adjectives, in -ē when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are -ior, -ius; superlative, -issimus, -a, -um. They are added to the *base* of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: *altus, high; altior, -ius, higher; altissimus, -a, -um, highest; fortis, brave; fortior, braver; fortissimus, bravest.*

40. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding -rimus to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: *ācer, sharp* (base, ācr-), *ācrior, ācerrimus.*

41. Most adjectives in -ilis are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding -limus to the *base* of the positive. They are *facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; humilis, low; gracilis, slender.* Example: *facilis, faciliior, facillimus.*

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.

malus, peior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.

magnus, maior, maximus, great, greater, greatest.

parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.

multus, plūs, plurimus, much, more, most.

dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right. dexterous, etc.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

- (*citrā*, adv., *on this side*) **citerior**, **citimus**, *hither*, *hithermost*.
 (*dē*, prep., *down*) **dēterior**, **dēterrimus**, *worse*, *worst*.
 (*intrā*, prep., *in, within*) **interior**, **intimus**, *inner*, *inmost*.
 (*prae*, prep., *before*) **prior**, **prīmus**, *former*, *first*.
 (*prope*, adv., *near*) **propior**, **proximus**, *nearer*, *next*.
 (*ultrā*, adv., *beyond*) **ulterior**, **ultimus**, *farther*, *farthest*.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

- exterus**, **exterior**, **extrēmus** (**extimus**), *outer*, *outmost*.
inferus, **inferior**, **īfimus** (**īmus**), *lower*, *lowest*.
posterus, **posterior**, **postrēmus** (**postumus**), *latter*, *last*.
superus, **superior**, **suprēmus** (**summus**), *higher*, *highest*.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*. Example: **idōneus**, *suitable*; **magis idōneus**, *more suitable*; **maximē idōneus**, *most suitable*.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding -ē to the base; as **lātus**, *wide*, **lātē**, *widely*; from adjectives of the third declension by adding -ter or -iter to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in nt add only -er; as **audāx**, *bold*, **audācter**, *boldly*; **fortis**, *brave*, **fortiter**, *bravely*; **prūdēns**, *prudent*, **prūdentē**, *prudently*. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as **multum**, *much*, **facile**, *easily*.

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as **lātius**, *more widely*, **audācius**, *more boldly*, **fortius**, *more bravely*, **prūdentius**, *more prudently*, **plūs**, *more*, **facilius**, *more easily*.

c. The *superlative* is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the *superlative* of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as *lātissimē*, *most widely*, *audācissimē*, *most boldly*, *fortissimē*, *most bravely*, *prūdētissimē*, *most prudently*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *facillimē*, *most easily*.

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each*, etc.

Roman			
Numerals	Cardinal	Ordinal	Distributive
	I. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
	II. duo, -ae, -o	secundus or alter	bīnī
	III. trēs, tria	tertius	ternī or trīnī
	IV. quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
	V. quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
	VI. sex	sextus	sēnī
	VII. septem	septimus	septēnī
	VIII. octō	octāvus	octōnī
	IX. novem	nōnus	novēnī
	X. decem	decimus	dēnī
	XI. ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
	XII. duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
	XIII. tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
	XIV. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
	XV. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
	XVI. sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
	XVII. septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
	XVIII. duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī
	XIX. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī
	XX. vigintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī
	XXI. ūnus et vigintī (vigintī ūnus)	vicēsīmus prīmus	vicēnī singulī
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus	duodētricēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus	ūndētricēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus	tricēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī

LXX. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī
LXXX. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī
XC. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī
C. centum	centēsīmus	centēnī
CI. centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) prīmus	centēnī (et) singulī
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	ducēnī
CCC. trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecēnī
CCCC. quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	quadringēnī
D. quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	quīngēnī
DC. sescentī	sescentēsīmus	sescēnī
DCC. septingentī	septingentēsīmus	septingēnī
DCCC. octingentī	octingentēsīmus	octingēnī
DCCCC. nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī
M. mille	millēsīmus	singula mīlia
MM. duo mīlia	bis millēsīmus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending *-ēnsīmus* is often used for *-ēsīmus*.

48. Of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are declined; *quattuor* to *centum*, inclusive, are indeclinable; *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, inclusive, are declined like the plural of *magnus* (31); *mille* as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of *cubile* (25) and generally spelled *mīlia*. Ordinals are declined like *magnus*, distributives like the plural of *magnus*.

49. For the declension of *ūnus* see 32. Its plural usually means *only* or *alone*, but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, *ūna castra*, *one camp*. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

duo, two			trēs, three	
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
A. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
A. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by *et*; as *trēs et quadrāgintā*, *three and forty*; or the tens may precede without an *et*; as *quadrāgintā trēs*, *forty three*. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without *et*; as *ducentī (et) vīgintī*, *two hundred and twenty*. In com-

binations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without *et*; as *duo milia sescenti vīginti sex*, *two thousand six hundred and twenty six*.

PRONOUNS

51.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, <i>ego, I</i>		Second person, <i>tū, you (thou)</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>G. meī</i>	<i>{ nostrum</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>{ vestrum</i>
	<i>{ nostrī</i>		<i>{ vestrī</i>
<i>D. mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually *is, he, ea, she, id, it, 57*; or, when *him, them*, etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

b. *nostrum* and *vestrum* are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); *nostrī* and *vestrī*, as objective genitives (98).

c. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, *uōbīs-cum, with us*.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

First person, <i>meī,</i> <i>of myself</i>		Second person, <i>tui,</i> <i>of yourself</i>		Third person, <i>sui,</i> <i>of himself, etc.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>G. meī</i>	<i>{ nostrum</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>{ vestrum</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sui</i>
	<i>{ nostrī</i>		<i>{ vestrī</i>		
<i>D. mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>

a. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, *sēcum, with himself*.

53.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1st pers. meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i>	noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>
2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, <i>your</i> (of one)	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (of more than one)
3d pers. { suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its</i> (when referring to the subject)	suus, -a, -um, <i>their</i> (when referring to the subject)
eius (gen. sing. of is) <i>his, her, its</i> (when not referring to the subject)	eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) <i>their</i> (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54.

hic, *this* (near the speaker)

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G. huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D. huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
A. hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
A. hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, *hoc*, is pronounced *hocc* when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See 6, a.

55.

iste, *that* (near the person spoken to)

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G. istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D. istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A. istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
A. istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

56. Ille, *that* (something more remote) is declined like iste.

57.

is, *this, that, he, she, it* (unemphatic)

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. is	ea	id	īī, eī	eae	ea
G. eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	īīs, eīs	īīs eīs	īīs, eīs
A. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
A. eō	eā	eō	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs	īīs eīs

58.

Idem, the same

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Idem		eadem	idem	idem or eīdem	eadem	eadem
G. eiusdem		eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eīdem		eīdem	eīdem	īsdem or eīsdem	īsdem or eīsdem	īsdem or eīsdem
A. eundem		eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
A. eōdem		eādem	eōdem	īsdem or eīsdem	īsdem or eīsdem	īdem or eīsdem

59.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ipse		ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsīus		ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī		ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsās	ipsīs
A. ipsum		ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
A. ipsō		ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

60.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, who

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. quī		quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G. cuius		cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cui		cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A. quem		quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
A. quō		quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. *Quicumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The *quī* of *quicumque* is declined regularly. *Quisquis*, *quicquid* (*quidquid*), and *quodquō* are the only common forms of *quisquis*.

b. The preposition *cum* is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as *quibuscum*, *with whom*.

61.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, *quae*, *quod*, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. *Quis*, *quid*, the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, who?**SING.**

<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> quis	quid
<i>G.</i> cuius	cuius
<i>D.</i> cui	cui
<i>A.</i> quem	quid
<i>A.</i> quō	quō

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; **quisnam**, *who, pray?*

b. **Cum** is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62.**INDEFINITE PRONOUNS**

The indefinite pronouns are **quis**, **quī**, and their compounds. **Quis** and **quī** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE

quis, quid, *any one*
aliquis, aliquid, *some one*
quispiam, quidpiam, *some one*

quisquam, quicquam (quidquam),
any one (abl. sing. and entire
plural supplied by ūllus, -a, -um)
quīvis, quaevis, quidvis }
quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet }
any one etc., you like
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *a cer-*
tain man
quisque, quidque, *each*

ADJECTIVE

quī, quae (qua), quod, *any*
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, *some*
quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam,
some
(adjective supplied by ūllus)

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis }
quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet }
any you like
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a*
certain
quisque, quaeque, quodque, *each*

a. In **quī** and **aliquī** the nominative and accusative plural neuter are **qua** (or **quae**) and **aliqua**.

b. In the declension of **quīdam**, **m** becomes **n** before **d**; as **quendam**.

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	ā	-āre
II.	ē	-ēre
III.	e (i, u)	-ere
IV.	i	-ire

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: *active and passive*,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: *active*,—present participle; gerund: *passive*,—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: *active*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: *active and passive*,—future infinitive; *active*,—future participle; supine: *passive*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of *laudō* are :

laudō, laudāre (present stem, *laudā*).

laudāvī (perfect stem, *laudāv*).

laudātum (supine stem, *laudāt*).

The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui*

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

Imperfect

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

Future

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

Perfect

fui	fuimus
fuisti	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt or -ēre

Pluperfect

fueram	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fuerat	fuerant

Future Perfect

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

Imperfect

essem (or forem)	essēmus (or forēmus)
essēs (or forēs)	essētis (or forētis)
esset (or foret)	essent (or forent)

Perfect

fuero	fuerim	fuerim	fuerimus
fuero	fueris	fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerit	fuerit	fuerint

Pluperfect

fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE				PARTICIPLE	
<i>Present</i>				<i>Fut. futūrus</i>	
2d pers.	es	este		INFINITIVE	
<i>Future</i>				<i>Pres. esse</i>	
2d pers.	estō	estōte		<i>Perf. fuisse</i>	
3d pers.	estō	suntō		<i>Fut. futūrus (esse) or fore</i>	

67.

FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>		<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
laudō	laudāmus	laudem	laudēmus
laudās	laudātis	laudēs	laudētis
laudat	laudent	laudet	laudent
<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
laudābam	laudābāmus	laudārem	laudārēmus
laudābās	laudābātis	laudārēs	laudārētis
laudābat	laudābant	laudāret	laudārent
<i>Future</i>			
laudābō	laudābimus		
laudābis	laudābitis		
laudābit	laudābunt		
<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Perfect</i>	
laudāvī	laudāvimus	laudāverim	laudāverimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis	laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāvit	laudāverunt	laudāverit	laudāverint
	or -ēre		
<i>Pluperfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
laudāveram	laudāverāmus	laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis	laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāverat	laudāverant	laudāvisset	laudāvissent
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
laudāverō	laudāverimus		
laudāveris	laudāveritis		
laudāverit	laudāverint		

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. laudā laudāte

Future

2d pers. laudātō laudātōte

3d pers. laudātō laudantō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. laudāns

Fut. laudātūrus

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudāre

Perf. laudāvisse

Fut. laudātūrus (esse)

SUPINE

Acc. laudātum

Abl. laudātū

GERUND

Gen. laudandī

Dat. laudandō

Acc. laudandum

Abl. laudandō

FIRST CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.

laudor

PLUR.

laudāmur

laudāris or -re

laudāminī

laudātur

laudantur

Imperfect

laudābar

laudābāmur

laudābāris or -re

laudābāminī

laudābātur

laudābantur

Future

laudābor

laudābimur

laudāberis or -re

laudābiminī

laudābitur

laudābuntur

Perfect

laudātus sum

laudātī sumus

laudātus es

laudātī estis

laudātus est

laudātī sunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.

lauder

PLUR.

laudēmur

laudēris or -re

laudēminī

laudētur

laudentur

Imperfect

laudārer

laudārēmur

laudārēris or -re

laudārēminī

laudārētur

laudārentur

Perfect

laudātus sim

laudātī sīmus

laudātus sis

laudātī sītis

laudātus sit

laudātī sint

Pluperfect

laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant

Pluperfect

laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus esset	laudātī essent

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. laudāre	laudāmini
------------------	-----------

Future

2d pers. laudātor	
3d pers. laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudārī*Perf.* laudātus esse*Fut.* laudātum irī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. laudātus*Fut.* laudandus

68.

SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

Imperfect

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

Imperfect

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

Future

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

Perfect

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt <i>or -ēre</i>

Perfect

monuerim	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

Pluperfect

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

Pluperfect

monuissem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

Future Perfect

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. monē monēte

Future

2d pers. monētō monētōte

3d pers. monētō monentō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns Fut. monitūrus

SUPINE

Acc. monitum Abl. monitū

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre

Perf. monuisse

Fut. monitūrus (esse)

GERUND

Gen. monendī

Dat. monendō

Acc. monendum

Abl. monendō

SECOND CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **moneor, monērī, monitus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
moneor	monēmur
monēris or -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
monear	moneāmur
moneāris or -re	moneāmini
moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris or -re	monēbāminī
monēbātur	monēbantur

Future

monēbor	monēbimur
monēheris or -re	monēbiminī
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

Pluperfect

monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

Future Perfect

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. monēre	monēminī
------------------------	-----------------

Future

2d pers. monētor	
3d pers. monētor	monentor

Imperfect

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris or -re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monitus sīs	monitī sītis
monitus sit	monitī sint

Pluperfect

monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus esset	monitī essent

INFINITIVE

*Pres. monēri**Perf. monitus esse**Fut. monitum iri*

PARTICIPLE

*Perf. monitus**Fut. monendus*

69.

THIRD CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
dūcō	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcit	dūcunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

Imperfect

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

Future

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

Perfect

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt or -ēre

Pluperfect

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

Future Perfect

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. dūc*	dūcite
---------------	--------

Future

2d pers. dūcitō	dūcitōte
3d pers. dūcitō	dūcuntō

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	dūcēns
<i>Fut.</i>	ductūrus

Imperfect

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

Perfect

dūxerim	dūxerīmus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis
dūxerit	dūxerint

Pluperfect

dūxissem	dūxissēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis
dūxisset	dūxissent

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcere*Perf.* dūxisse*Fut.* ductūrus (*esse*)

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	ductum
<i>Abl.</i>	ductū

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	dūcendī
<i>Dat.</i>	dūcendō
<i>Acc.</i>	dūcendum
<i>Abl.</i>	dūcendō

* Irregular for dūce.

THIRD CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum*

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
<i>dūcor</i>	<i>dūcimur</i>
<i>dūceris or -re</i>	<i>dūcimini</i>
<i>dūcitur</i>	<i>dūcuntur</i>

Imperfect

<i>dūcēbar</i>	<i>dūcēbāmur</i>
<i>dūcēbāris or -re</i>	<i>dūcēbāmini</i>
<i>dūcēbātur</i>	<i>dūcēbantur</i>

Future

<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcēmur</i>
<i>dūcēris or -re</i>	<i>dūcēmini</i>
<i>dūcētur</i>	<i>dūcentur</i>

Perfect

<i>ductus sum</i>	<i>ductī sumus</i>
<i>ductus es</i>	<i>ductī estis</i>
<i>ductus est</i>	<i>ductī sunt</i>

Pluperfect

<i>ductus eram</i>	<i>ductī erāmus</i>
<i>ductus erās</i>	<i>ductī erātis</i>
<i>ductus erat</i>	<i>ductī erant</i>

Future Perfect

<i>ductus erō</i>	<i>ductī erimus</i>
<i>ductus eris</i>	<i>ductī eritis</i>
<i>ductus erit</i>	<i>ductī erunt</i>

IMPERATIVE

Present

<i>2d pers. dūcere</i>	<i>dūcimini</i>
------------------------	-----------------

Future

<i>2d pers. dūcitor</i>	
<i>3d pers. dūcitor</i>	<i>dūcuntor</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
<i>dūcar</i>	<i>dūcāmur</i>
<i>dūcāris or -re</i>	<i>dūcāmini</i>
<i>dūcātur</i>	<i>dūcantur</i>

Imperfect

<i>dūcerer</i>	<i>dūcerēmur</i>
<i>dūcerēris or re</i>	<i>dūcerēmini</i>
<i>dūcerētur</i>	<i>dūcerentur</i>

Perfect

<i>ductus sim</i>	<i>ductī sīmus</i>
<i>ductus sis</i>	<i>ductī sītis</i>
<i>ductus sit</i>	<i>ductī sint</i>

Pluperfect

<i>ductus essem</i>	<i>ductī essēmus</i>
<i>ductus essēs</i>	<i>ductī essētis</i>
<i>ductus esset</i>	<i>ductī essent</i>

INFINITIVE

*Pres. dūcī**Perf. ductus esse**Fut. ductum iri*

PARTICIIPLE

*Perf. ductus**Fut. dūcendus*

70.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

Imperfect

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

Future

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

Perfect

audivī	audivimus
audivistī	audivistis
audivit	audivērunt or -ēre

Pluperfect

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

Future Perfect

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. audi	audīte
---------------	--------

Future

2d pers. auditō	audītōte
3d pers. auditō	audiuntō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

Perfect

audiverim	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

Pluperfect

audivissem	audivissēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis
audivisset	audivissent

INFINITIVE

*Pres. audire**Perf. audivisse**Fut. auditūrus (esse)*

PARTICIPLE

Pres. audiēns *Fut.* auditūrus

SUPINE

Acc. auditum *Abl.* auditū

GERUND

Gen. audiendī
Dat. audiendō
Acc. audiendum
Abl. audiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: audior, audīrī, auditus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audior	audīmur
audīris or -re	audīmini
audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect

audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris or -re	audiēbāmini
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris or -re	audiēmini
audiētur	audientur

Perfect

auditus sum	audītī sumus
auditus es	audītī estis
auditus est	audītī sunt

Pluperfect

auditus eram	audītī erāmus
auditus erās	audītī erātis
auditus erat	audītī erant

Future Perfect

auditus erō	audītī erimus
auditus eris	audītī eritis
auditus erit	audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris or -re	audīrēmini
audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

auditus sim	audītī sīmus
auditus sis	audītī sītis
auditus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect

auditus essem	audītī essēmus
auditus essēs	audītī essētis
auditus esset	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. audīre audīmini

Future

2d pers. audītor

3d pers. audītor audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīri

Perf. auditus esse

Fut. auditum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. auditus

Fut. audiendus

71.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

Imperfect

capiēbam	capiēbāmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis
capiēbat	capiēbant

Future

capiam	capiemus
capies	capietis
capiet	capient

Perfect

cēpī	cēpimus
cēpistī	cēpistis
cēpit	cēpērunt
	or -ēre

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capiam	capiamus
capias	capiatīs
capiat	capiant

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

Perfect

cēperim	cēperīmus
cēperīs	cēperītis
cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. cape	capite
---------------	--------

Future

2d pers. capitō	capitōte
3d pers. capitō	capiuntō

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns	<i>Fut.</i> captūrus
----------------------	----------------------

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i> captum	<i>Abl.</i> captū
--------------------	-------------------

Pluperfect

cēpissēmus	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere*Perf.* cēpisse*Fut.* captūrus (esse)

GERUND

Gen. capiendī*Dat.* capiendō*Acc.* capiendum*Abl.* capiendōTHIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capior	capimur
caperis or -re	capimini
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris or -re	capiēbāmini
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris or -re	capiēmini
capiētur	capiēntur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capiar	capiāmur
capiāris or -re	capiāmini
capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris or -re	caperēmini
caperētur	caperentur

<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Perfect</i>	
captus sum	capti sumus	captus sim	capti simus
captus es	capti estis	captus sis	capti sitis
captus est	capti sunt	captus sit	capti sint
<i>Pluperfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
captus eram	capti erāmus	captus essem	capti essēmus
captus erās	capti erātis	captus essēs	capti essētis
captus erat	capti erant	captus esset	capti essent
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
captus erō	capti erimus		
captus eris	capti eritis		
captus erit	capti erunt		
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Pres.</i> capī	
2d pers. capere	capimini	<i>Perf.</i> captus esse	
<i>Future</i>		<i>Fut.</i> captum iri	
2d pers. capitor			
3d pers. capitor	capiuntor		
PARTICIPLE			
<i>Perf.</i> captus			
<i>Fut.</i> capiendus			

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and *-ōvī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve*, *vē*, or *vī* before *r* or *s*.

Examples: *laudāstī* for *laudāvistī*; *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*; *dēlērunt* for *dēlēvērunt*; *nōrim* for *nōverim*.

b. Perfects in *-īvī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *iis* it usually contracts to *is*.

Examples: *audiī* for *audīvī*; *audieram* for *audīveram*; *audiisse* for *audīvisse*.

DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

hortor, urge vereor, fear sequor, follow partior, share

INFİNITIVE

<i>Pres. hortārī</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>partīrī</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus esse</i>	<i>veritus esse</i>	<i>secūtus esse</i>	<i>partītus esse</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus (esse)</i>	<i>veritūrus (esse)</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i> (esse)	<i>partītūrus</i> (esse)

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. hortāns</i>	<i>verēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>partiēns</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus</i>	<i>veritus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>partītus</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus</i>	<i>veritūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>partītūrus</i>
<i>Fut. Pass. hortandus</i>	<i>verendus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>partiendus</i>

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partitum, -tū

74.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fīdō, fidere, fīsus sum, trust

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future or intended action*. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb *sum*: thus,

Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,

Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise, etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation or necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb *sum*: thus,

Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.

Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of *sum* see 66. *Sum* is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions *ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super*. *Praesum* has a present participle, *praesēns*.

78. In *absum*, *sum* is inflected in the same way, but *ā* is used for *ab* before *f*, giving *āfuī, āfutūrus*, etc. There is a present participle *absēns*.

79. In *prōsum*, *sum* is inflected in the same way, but the preposition *prō* has its original form *prōd* before all forms of *sum* beginning with *e*; as, *prōdesse, prōderam*. The present tense is, *prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt*.

80. *Possum*, *be able, can*, is a compound of *pot-* and *sum*.

Principal parts: *possum, posse, potuī*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt</i>	<i>possim</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>poteram</i>	<i>possem</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>poterō</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>potuī</i>	<i>potuerim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>potuerō</i>	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	posse	<i>Pres.</i> potēns
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse	

81. . ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem
<i>Fut.</i>	feram	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī	tulerim
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram	tulissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> fer ferte	<i>Pres.</i> ferre	<i>Pres.</i> ferēns
<i>Fut.</i> fertō fertōte fertō feruntō	<i>Perf.</i> tulisse <i>Fut.</i> lātūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

SUPINE

lātum, -tū

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, ferimini, feruntur	ferar
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ferre, feriminī	<i>Pres.</i> ferri	<i>Perf.</i> lātus
<i>Fut.</i> fertor fertor, feruntor	<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse <i>Fut.</i> lātum iri	<i>Fut.</i> ferendus

82. volō, velle, volui, *be willing*
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *be unwilling*
mālō, mälle, mālui, *prefer*

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī	nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. velle</i>	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf. voluisse</i>	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. volēns</i>	nōlēns
---------------------	--------

83. Fīō, be made, be done, become, happen, is the irregular passive of **faciō, make.** Note the **i** before all vowels, except before **e** in the combination **-er**.

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fīō, fis, fit	fiam
	fimus, fitis, fiunt	
<i>Imp.</i>	fīēbam	fierem
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum	factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram	factus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus erō	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> <i>fī, fite</i>	<i>Pres.</i> <i>fieri</i>	<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus</i>
	<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus esse</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <i>faciendus</i>
	<i>Fut.</i> <i>factum iri</i>	

84. *eō, ire, iī, itum, go*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i> <i>eō, is, it,</i> <i>īmus, itis, eunt</i>	<i>eam</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <i>ibam</i>	<i>irem</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ibō</i>	
<i>Perf.</i> <i>iī for ivī</i>	<i>ierim</i>
<i>Plup.</i> <i>ieram</i>	<i>iissem or issem</i>
<i>Fut. Per.</i> <i>ierō</i>	

IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> <i>i, ite</i>	<i>Pres.</i> <i>ire</i>	<i>Pres.</i> <i>iēns (Gen. euntis)</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>itō, itōte</i> <i>itō, euntō</i>	<i>Perf.</i> <i>iisse or isse</i> <i>Fut.</i> <i>itūrus (esse)</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <i>itūrus</i>
GERUND		SUPINE
<i>eundī, etc.</i>		<i>itum, -tū</i>

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, *ii* usually contracts to *i* before *s*.

85. *Dō, dare, dedī, datum, give*, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short *a*. *ā* appears only in the following active forms,—*dās, dā, dāns*.

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects *meminī, I remember; ōdī, I hate; and coepī, I have begun*. Notice that *meminī* and *ōdī* have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i> <i>meminī</i>	<i>ōdī</i>	<i>coepī</i>
<i>Plup.</i> <i>memineram</i>	<i>ōderam</i>	<i>coeperam</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i> <i>meminerō</i>	<i>ōderō</i>	<i>coeperō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
<i>Plup.</i>	meminissē	ōdissem	coepissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i>	mementō
<i>Plur.</i>	mementōte

INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
<i>Fut.</i>		ōsūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	ōsus	coeptus
<i>Fut.</i>	ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of *coepī* the passive form *coeptus sum* is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: *laudāri coeptus est, he began to be praised.*

87.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:—

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as *pluit, it rains.*

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: *decet, it becomes; libet, it pleases; licet, it is permitted; miseret, it causes pity; oportet, it is right; paenitet, it repents; piget, it displeases; pudet, it shames; rēfert, it concerns; taedet, it wearies.* All of these except *rēfert* belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as *accēdit, it is added, from accēdō, I approach.*

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as *pugnātur, it is fought.*

SYNTAX

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: *Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.*

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coordinate clauses*, and are connected by *coordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Galli fūgērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate or dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before*. Example: *ubi Caesar vēnit, Galli fūgērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.*

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

92. The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in the *soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject) *fights, he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin *mīles* would be used in the first sentence, *mīlitem* in the second, and *mīlitī* in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but *militem*, *a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while *multōs annōs*, *many years*, is quite probably so used. *Dicit pīlum militem vulnerāvisse* might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. *Persuāsit*, *he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: *ā milite interfectus est*, *he was killed by a soldier*; *cum milite vēnit*, *he came in company with a soldier*.

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

RULE: *A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.*

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. RULE: *A predicate noun is connected with the subject by sum or a verb of similar meaning.*

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded*, and the like. Examples: *Pisō fuit cōsul*, *Piso was consul*; *Pisō factus est cōsul*, *Piso became consul*; *Pisō appellātus est cōsul*, *Piso was called consul*. For the (predicate accusative) with verbs of *calling*, etc., see 126.

b. RULE: *An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.*

EXAMPLES: *Pisō, cōsul, militi Pisōnī gladium dedit*. *Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.*

96.

NOMINATIVE

RULE: *The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i. e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).*

EXAMPLE: *Gallia est divisa* (I, 1, 1), *Gaul is divided.*

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. GENERAL RULE: *A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.*

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98-105.

A genitive may be either (a) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as *domus Caesaris*, *Caesar's house*; or (b) *predicative*, connected by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning; as *domus est Caesaris*, *the house is Caesar's*.

a. **Appositional Genitive.** [But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i. e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: *tuorum comitum sentina* (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades*.

ATTRIBUTIVE

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives. These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as *amor*, *love*, *amō*, *I love*. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: *amor patris*, *the love of the father*, may imply that *the father loves*, (subjective), or that *some one loves his father* (objective); *occasum solis* (I, 1, 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); *regni cupiditate* (I, 2, 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive may express the possessor.*

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: *finibus Belgarum* (I, 1, 16), *by the territory of the Belgae*; *finibus vestris*, *by your territory*.

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede *causā* or *grātiā*, for the sake of. Examples: *huius potentiae causā* (I, 18, 14), *for the sake of this power*; *meā causā*, *for my sake*.

100. Descriptive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: *huiusce modī senātūs cōsultum* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *a decree of this kind*; *triū mēnsium molita cibāria* (I, 5, 7), *provisions for three months*.

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

RULE: *The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.*

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: *eōrum ūna pars* (I, 1, 15), *one part of them*; *hōrum omnium fortissimī* (I, 1, 6), *the bravest of all these*; *ubinam gentium sumus* (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in (not of) the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on *satis* used substantively. Examples: *quantum bonī* (I, 40, 17), *how much (of) good*; *satis causae* (I, 19, 6), *sufficient (of) reason*.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with quīdam. Example: *ūnus ē filiīs captus est* (I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured*.

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: *hī omnēs* (I, 1, 3), *all of these*.

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: *The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.*

Example: *aciem legiōnum quattuor* (I, 24, 3), *a battle line (consisting) of four legions*.

PREDICATIVE

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as *est hominis*, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man*. Example: *est hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis* (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs*.

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: *senātūs cōsultum est huiusce modī*, *the decree is of this kind*.

105. The Genitive of Value. With *sum* and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, *indefinite* value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are *magnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris*. Example: *tantī eius grātiā esse ostendit* (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value*.

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. RULE: *Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.* They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious (of)*, *desirous (of)*, *mindful (of)*, *sharing (in)*, *skilled (in)*, and their opposites, and *plēnus*, *full (of)*. Examples: *bellandī cupidī* (I, 2, 13), *desirous of fighting*; *rei militāris perītissimus* (I, 21, 9), *most skilled in military science*.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: *tui similis* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you*; *vērī simile* (III, 13, 11), *probable (like the truth)*.

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: *locum medium utriusque* (I, 34, 2), *a place midway between them*.

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: *Memini, bear in mind, reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.*

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: *reminiscerētur veteris incommodī* (I, 13, 11), *he should remember the former disaster*; *veteris contumēliae oblivisci* (I, 14, 7), *to forget the former insult*.

108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

RULE: *Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.*

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: mē inertiae condemnō (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

109. Verbs of Emotion.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.*

The personal verb misereor, pity, also takes the genitive. Examples: mē meōrum factorum numquam paenitēbit (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds*; mē eius miseret or eius misereor, *I pity him.*

110. Interest and Rēfert.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs interest and rēfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, interest is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: reī publicae intersit (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state*; meā interest, *it is to my interest.*

111. **RULE:** Potior occasionally governs the genitive.

For potior with the ablative see 145. Example: Galliae potiri (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object.

GENERAL RULE: *The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.*

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

RULE: *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. The dative is usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: *eī filiam dat* (I, 3, 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter*.

a. *Dōnō*, *give*, *present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: *eī librum dōnō*, *I give (to) him a book*; *eum librō dōnō*, *I present him with a book*.

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially *cōsulō*, *consult* or *consult for*, and *metuō*, *fear* or *fear for*. Examples: *sī mē cōsulis* (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice)*; *cōsulite vōbīs* (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests)*.

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: *eī filia datur*, *his daughter is given to him*.

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

RULE: *The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

EXAMPLES: *civitātī persuāsīt* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state*; *novīs rēbus studēbat* (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution*; *Allobrogibus imperāvit* (I, 28, 7), *he commanded the Allobroges*.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as *audiēns sum*, *obey*, and *fidem habēre*, *trust*. Example: *cui fidem habēbat* (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted*.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: *prōvinciāe militum numerum imperat* (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province*; *id iīs persuāsīt* (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this* (literally, *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs *dēlectō*, *delight*, *iubeō*

command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: *Labiēnum iubet* (I, 21, 5), *he commands Labienus*.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: *Caesarī persuādēō, I persuade Caesar*, becomes *Caesarī ā mē persuādētur, Caesar is persuaded by me* (literally, *it is persuaded to Caesar*).

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from*, it is sometimes called the dative of separation.

RULE: *The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.*

EXAMPLES: *cum omnibus praestārent* (I, 2, 5), *since they excelled all*; *finitimīs bellum inferre* (I, 2, 12), *to make war upon their neighbors*; *mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praeficit* (I, 10, 7), *he puts Labienus in command of the works*; *scūtō militī detractō* (II, 25, 13), *having snatched a shield from a soldier*.

II. RULE: *The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.*

EXAMPLE: *sī Haeduīs satisfaciant* (I, 14, 19), *if they should make restitution to the Haedui*.

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, *aggredior, attack*; *incendō, burn*; *interficiō, kill*; *oppugnō, assault*; but there are many others. Example: *eōs aggressus* (I, 12, 9), *having attacked (or attacking) them*.

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: *illum in equum intulit* (VI, 30, 15), *he put him on a horse*.

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: *mūnitiōnī Labiēnus praeficitur*, *Labienus is put in command of the works*.

117. Dative of Possessor.

RULE: *The dative is used in the predicate with sum to denote the possessor.*

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*. Examples: *mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally *a book is to me*); *demonstrant sibi nihil esse* (I, 11, 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

118. Dative of the Agent.

RULE: *The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: *nōn expectandum sibi statuit* (Caes. I, 11, 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: *civitātī ā tē persuādendum est*, *the state must be persuaded by you*.

119. Dative of Purpose.

RULE: *The dative may express purpose or tendency.*

This dative is especially common with *sum*. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: *quem auxiliō Caesarī miserant* (I, 18, 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar*, lit. *whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar*; *quī novissimis praesidiō erant* (I, 25, 14), *who were guarding the rear*, lit. *who were for a guard to the rear*.

120. Dative of Reference.

RULE: *The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.*

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: *cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent* (I, 5, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself*; *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt* (I, 31, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet*.

121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: *Tongilium mihi ēdūxit* (Cic. Cat. II, 4.), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius*, or simply *he took out Tongilius*.

122. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE: *Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.*

Examples: *plēbī acceptus* (I, 3, 14), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people*; *proximī sunt Germānis* (I, 1, 9), *they are nearest to the Germans*; *castris idōneum locum* (VI, 10, 5), *a place suitable for a camp*.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: *ad amicitiam idōneus*, *suitable for friendship*.

b. The adjectives *propior* and *proximus* and the adverbs *propius* and *proximē* sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition *prope*. Example: *proximī Rhēnum* (I, 54, 3), *nearest the Rhine*.

c. For *similis* and *dissimilis* see 106, b.

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: *The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.*

Example: *certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse* (I, 12, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across*.

124. Direct Object.

RULE: *The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.*

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as *puerum laudat*, *he praises the boy*; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as *coniūrātiōnem fēcit*, *he made a conspiracy*.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: *puer laudātur*, *the boy is praised*; *coniūrātiō facta est*, *a conspiracy was made*.

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially *ad*, *circum*, *in*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *trans*, have transitive meanings. Example: *ire*, to go, intransitive; but *flūmen trānsire*, to cross (go across) the river.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125-127).

125. **Two Objects.** A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also cēlō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.*

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*. Examples: *Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for the grain*; *eadem ab aliis quaerit* (I, 18, 5), *he asked the same question of others*.

b. **RULE:** *Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.*

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (128, a). Examples: *eōs hoc moneō* (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice*; *sī quid ille sē velit* (I, 34, 6), *if he wanted anything of him*.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: *Haedui frūmentum flāgitābantur*, *the Haedui were asked for the grain*; (ii) *hoc monentur*, *they are given this advice*.

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.*

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: *quem rēgem cōstituerat* (IV, 21, 14), *whom he had appointed king*; *Caesarem certiōrem fēcit*, *he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain)*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: *qui rēx cōstitūtus erat*, *who had been appointed king*; *Caesar certior factus est* (I, 12, 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain)*.

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: *Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.*

Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt* (cf. I, 12, 6), *they led three parts across the river*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt*, *three parts were led across the river*.

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: *An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.*

Examples: *eam vitam vivere*, *to live that life*; *trīdūi viam prōcēdere* (I, 38), *to advance a three days' march*.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative*. Examples: *id iis persuāsit* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); *multum posse*, *to have much power*.

b. **Adverbial Accusative.** A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are multum, *much*, plūs, *more*, plūrimum, *most*, plērūmq̄ue, *for the most part*, and nihil, *not at all*. Here belong also id temporis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time*, and maximam partem (IV, 1, 14), *for the most part*. Example: *multum sunt in venātiōne* (IV, 1, 15), *they engage much in hunting*.

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE: *An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.*

Example: *O fortunātam rem publicam* (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *Oh, fortunate state!* The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.

130. Accusative of Time and Space.

RULE: *The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, *diēs, day; pēs, foot*. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: *rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat* (I, 3, 10), *he had held the royal power many years*; *mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant* (I, 2, 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles*.

131. Place to Which.

RULE: *Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: *ad iūdicium coēgit* (I, 4, 14), *he brought to the trial*; *in agrum Nōricum trānsierant* (I, 5, 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory*; *sē Massiliam cōferet* (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles*; *domum reditiōnis* (I, 5, 6), *of a return home*.

a. *Ad* is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *towards* (not *to*), or *in the neighborhood of*. Example: *ad Genavam pervenit* (I, 7, 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva*.

132.

VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: *dēsilitē, commilitōnēs* (IV, 25, 11), *jump down, comrades*.

133.

ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

RULE: *Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.*

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I. Examples: *suīs finibus eōs prohibent* (I, 1, 13), *they repel them from their own territory*; *quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent* (IV, 34, 9), *which kept the enemy from battle*; *ā Bibracte aberat* (I, 23, 2), *he was distant from Bibracte*.

a. *Place from which*: with verbs expressing motion:—

RULE: *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: *ut dē finibus suīs exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out from their territory*; *quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant* (I, 8, 2), *who had gathered from the province*; *Rōmā profūgērunt* (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome*; *domō exire* (I, 6, 1), *to go out from home*.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of*.

b. **RULE:** *With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.*

Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear*; *proeliō abstinēbat* (I, 22, 11), *refused battle* (literally *refrained from battle*).

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: *The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.*

Examples: *amplissimō genere nātus* (IV, 12, 13), *born of the highest rank*; *sorōrem ex mātre (nātam)* (I, 18, 16), *his sister on his mother's side*.

136. Ablative of Material.

RULE: *The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.*

Example: *nāvēs factae ex rōbore* (III, 13, 5), *the ships were made of oak*.

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: *The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.*

The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: *exercitum ab Helvêtiis pulsum* (I, 7, 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii*.

138. Ablative of Cause.

RULE: *Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.*

Examples: *grātiā et largitiōne* (I, 9, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving*; *quod suā victoriā glōriārentur* (I, 14, 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory*.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by *causā* and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with *ob*, *per*, or *propter*; and by *dē* or *ex* with the ablative. Examples: *propter angustias* (I, 9, 2), *because of its narrowness*; *quā dē causā*, (I, 1, 11), *and for this reason*.

139. Ablative of Comparison.

RULE: *With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.*

Examples: *lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōsilia* (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day*; *nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum* (I, 15, 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When *quam* is used for *than*, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. *Plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are often used instead of *plūs quam*, etc. Example: *quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore* (V, 8, 19), *of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time*.

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

RULE: *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

Example: *ut cum omnibus cōpiis exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops*.

In military phrases *cum* is sometimes omitted.

Example: *Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis* (II, 19, 1), *Caesar followed with all his troops*.

141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: *The ablative modified by an adjective may ascribe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: *hominēs inimicō animō* (I, 7, 15), *men of unfriendly disposition*; *nōndum bonō animō vidērentur* (I, 6, 11), *they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit)*.

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: *Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.*

Examples: *pars cum cruciātū necābātur* (V, 45, 5), *some were killed with torture*; *magnis itineribus* (I, 10, 8), *by forced marches*.

a. Ablative of Accordance.

RULE: *In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.*

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—*cōnsuētūdine*, *iūre*, *iussū* (*iniussū*), *lēge*, *mōribus*, *sententiā*, *sponte*, *voluntāte*. Examples: *iniussū suō* (I, 19, 4), *without his orders*; *mōribus suis* (I, 4, 1), *in accordance with their customs*; *suā voluntāte* (I, 20, 11), *in accordance with his wish*.

b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

RULE: *Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.*

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: *imperiō populī Rōmānī* (I, 18, 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people*; *intervallō pedum duōrum iungēbat* (IV, 17, 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet*.

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: *The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: *rēgnī cupiditate inductus* (I, 2, 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power*.

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except *plēnus*, 106); *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *trust in*; *nītor*, *rely upon*; *laccessō* (*proeliō*), *provoke (to battle)*; *assuēfactus*, *assuētus*, *accustomed to*; *frētus*, *relying upon*. Examples: *nātūrā loci cōfidēbant* (III, 9, 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country*; *nūllō officiō assuēfacti* (IV, 1, 17), *accustomed to no obedience*.

144. Ablative of the Way.

RULE: *The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.*

Examples: *frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat* (I, 16, 5), *the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone*; *eōdem itinere contendit* (I, 21, 8), *he advanced by the same road*.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with *ūtor*, *use*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *fulfill*, *potior*, *get possession of*, *vēscor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: *eōdem ūsī cōsiliō* (I, 5, 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan*; *imperio potiri* (I, 2, 6), *to get possession of the government*.

146. Ablative with opus est.

RULE: *The ablative of means is used with opus est and usus est, meaning there is need of.*

Example: *Caesari multis auxiliis opus est*, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries*.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with *opus* as predicate noun. Example: *sī quid opus esset* (I, 34, 5), *if he needed anything*.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with *opus est*. Example: *sī opus factō esset* (I, 42, 19), *if there should be need of action*.

147. Ablative of Price.

RULE: *With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: *parvō pretiō redēpta* (I, 18, 9), *bought up at a low price*.

148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

RULE: *The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.*

Compare 139. Examples: *nihilō minus* (I, 5, 1), *lit. less by nothing, = nevertheless*; *paucis ante diēbus*, (I, 18, 25), *a few days before* (*lit. before by a few days*).

a. *Eō . . . quō*, in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the*. Example: *eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent* (I, 14, 3), *lit. he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly, = he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened*.

149. Ablative of Specification.

RULE: *The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.*

Examples: *linguā inter sē differunt* (I, 1, 3), *they differ in language*; *maior nātū*, *older (greater in birth)*.

a. The ablative is used with dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy. Example: *ipsis indignum* (V, 35, 11), *unworthy of themselves*.

150. Ablative Absolute.

RULE: *A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.*

RULE: *Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."*

The construction is called *absolute* because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) *remōtis equīs proelium commisit* (I, 25, 2), *having sent the horses away, he began the battle*; (translated by prepositional phrase) *M Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus* (I, 2, 2), *in the consulship of, etc.*; *eō dēprecātōre* (I, 9, 4), *by his mediation*; (translated by subordinate clause) *omnibus rēbus comparātis diem dicunt* (I, 6, 13),

when everything was ready they set a day; *Sēquanīs invītīs ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), if the Sequani should refuse they could not go; *monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat* (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain he waited for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) *locīs superiōribus occupātīs . . . conantur* (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous positions and tried, etc.

151. Place in Which.

RULE: Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with *in*.

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: *in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt* (I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. **RULE:** Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives *domī*, at home, and *rūrī*, in the country, are also in regular use. Examples: *Samarobrivae* (V, 24, 1), at Samarobriva; *domī largiter posse* (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. **RULE:** No preposition is regularly used with *locō*, *locīs*, *parte*, *partibus* when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by *tōtus*.

Examples: *nōn nullīs locīs trānsitur* (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several places; *vulgō tōtīs castrīs* (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So *ab* and *ex* are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with *in* if the construction is at all appropriate. Examples: *ūnā ex parte* (I, 2, 7), on one side; *cotidianīs proeliīs contendunt* (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; *memoriā tenēbat* (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: *eō tempore* (I, 3, 14), at that time; *id quod ipsī diēbus viginti aegerrimē cōfēcerant* (I, 13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in (within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: *cā tōtā nocte iērunt* (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: *ab*, *absque*, *cōram*, *cum*, *dē*, *ex*, *prae*, *prō*, *sine*, *tenus*.

a. The forms *ab* and *ex* must be used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*. It is always safe to use *ā* and *ē* before words beginning with a consonant, though *ab* and *ex* are often found.

b. *Cum* is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. *In* and *sub* with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively. *Subter* and *super* sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb *sum* or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, *a*); as, *flūmen est lātum*, *the river is wide*. An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, *flūmen lātum*, *the wide river*.

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: *Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Examples: *homō bonus*, *a good man*; *mulieri bonae*, *to a good woman*; *bellōrum magnōrum*, *of great wars*.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: *vir bonus et mulier*, *a good man and woman*; *bella et victōriae magnae*, *great wars and victories*.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: *hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī*, *the men and their characters are good*; *hominēs et arma sunt magnī*, *the men and their arms are large*; *montēs et flūmina sunt magna*, *the mountains and rivers are large*.

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men*, and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women*. The neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a). Examples: **multī**, *many men*; **multōrum**, *of many men*; **multae**, *many women*; **multārum**, *of many women*; **multa**, *many things*; **multārum rērum**, *of many things*.

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: **invītus vēnit**, lit. *he came unwilling*, = *he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come*; **prīmus vēnit**, lit. *he the first came*, = *he came first*, or *he was the first to come*.

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, **imū**, **īfīmū**, *the bottom of*; **mediū**, *the middle of*; **summū**, *the top of*; **prīmū**, *the first part of*; **extrēmū**, *the last part of*; **reliquū**, *the rest of*. Examples: **in colle mediō** (I, 24, 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope*; **summū mōns** (I, 22, 1), *the top of the mountain*; **prīmā nocte** (I, 27, 12), *in the first part of the night*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*.

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *too*, the superlative by *very*. Examples: **diūturniōrem impūnitātem** (I, 14, 15), *quite long immunity*; **cupidius īsecūtī** (I, 15, 5), *following too eagerly*; **monte Iūrā altissimō** (I, 2, 9), *by the very high mountain Jura*.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam**, with or without a form of **possum**. Examples: **quam maximum numerum** (I, 3, 3), **quam maximum potest numerum** (I, 7, 4), *as great a number as possible*, or *the greatest possible number*.

162.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: *ego maneō, tū abīs, I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: *utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus* (II, 1, 1), *as I (lit. we) have said before.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. GENERAL RULE: *Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.*

They correspond to *myself, himself, etc.*, in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself, etc.*, must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him*, where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: *Suī and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

Example: *eum videō quī sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.*

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: *In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject suī and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of *suī* or *suus*. Example: *Caesar dicit mē sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).*

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with *inter* to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other.* Examples: *inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent* (I, 9, 10), *that they give hostages to each other.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: *Caesar exercitum dūxit, Caesar led (his) army.*

a. *Suus* is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun *suū*, and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. *Hic* refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: *hic liber, this book (near me).*

169. *Iste* refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: *iste liber, that book (near you).* When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. *Ille* refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: *ille liber, that book (yonder).*

a. *Ille* and *hic* are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter*. *Hic* is usually *the latter*, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. *Is* is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When *is* is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways, — the man, a man, such a man, that, etc.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. *Ipse* emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self*, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: *ipse Caesar eum laudat, Caesar himself praises him; ipse Caesar sē laudat, Caesar himself praises himself.*

a. *Ipse* is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: *meus ipse liber*, *my own book (the book of me myself)*; *vester ipsorum liber*, *your own book (the book of you yourselves)*.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. RULE: *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.*

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: *Caesar, quem laudō*, *Caesar, whom I praise*; *ego, qui eum laudō*, *I, who praise him*; *Caesar et Cicerō, qui mē laudant*, *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me*.

a. Coordinate Relative. It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (*and*, *but*, etc.) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *relinquēbātur ūna via, quā ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go*. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *quī* (I, 15, 5), *they*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. RULE: *Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after sī, nisi, nē, and num.*

Example: *sī quis laudat*, *if anyone praises*.

175. RULE: *Aliquis (aliquī) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.*

Example: *aliquis dicat*, *some one may say*.

176. *Quispiam* has almost exactly the same meaning as *aliquis*, but is rare. Example: *quispiam dicat*, *some one may say*.

177. RULE: *Quisquam and ullus are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with nē), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.*

Examples: *neque quemquam laudō*, *nor do I praise anyone*; *cur quisquam iudicaret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

178. *Nesciō quis* (*nesciō quī*), originally meaning *I know not who*, is often used in a sense very much like that of *aliquis*, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: *nesciō quis laudat*, *some one or other praises*.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. **RULE:** *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: *Caesar laudatus est*, *Caesar was praised*; *mulierēs laudatae sunt*, *the women were praised*.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: *multitūdō vēnērunt*, *a great number came*; *duo milia occisi sunt*, *two thousand were killed*.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: *homō et mulier occisi sunt*, *the man and the woman were killed*; *ego et tū vēnimus*, *you and I came*.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus*, *Caesar and Labienus came*; *neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit*, *neither Caesar nor Labienus came*; *filia atque finus ē filiis captus est* (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken*.

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: *Matrona et Sēquana dividit* (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: *laudat*, *he praises*; *laudatur*, *he is praised*; *eī crēditur* (115, d) lit. *it is believed to him* = *he is believed*.

THE MODES

182. The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name *mode* is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

183. The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: *laudat, he praises; nōn laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?*

184. The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*). Examples: *laudet, let him praise or may he praise; imperō ut laudet, I command that he praise, i. e., I give the command "let him praise."*

b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the *potential*. Examples: *laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); est qui laudet, he is a man who would praise.*

c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: *laudātur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises. Compare laudātur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.*

185. The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: *laudā, praise (thou); dēsilite (IV, 25, 11), jump down.*

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudārī, he says that Caesar is praised.*

187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. RULE: *Nōn*, *not*, and *neque*, *and not*, *nor*, are used to negative statements and questions.

That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: *nōn laudat*, *he does not praise*; *nōn laudet*, *he would not praise*; *nōnne laudat?* *does he not praise?*

b. RULE: *Nē*, *not*, and *nēve*, *and not*, *nor*, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).

But *nē . . . quidem*, *not even*, is used in statements. Examples: *nē laudet*, *let him not praise*, or *may he not praise*; *nē laudat quidem*, *he does not even praise*.

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: *laudāvit*, *he praised*, simply puts the action in the past; *laudāverat*, *he had praised*, means that the action was already completed in the past time; *laudābat*, *he was praising*, means that the action was going on in the past time; and *laudātūrus erat*, *he was going to praise*, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: *laudat*, *he praises* (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: *oppida sua omnia incendunt* (I, 5, 3), *they burned (burn) all their towns.*

b. With such expressions as *iam diū, iam pridem*, for a long time, *multōs annōs*, for many years, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē moneō*, *I have been warning you for many years.* There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with *dum*, etc., see 234, a.

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example; *laudābat*, *he was praising.*

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as *laudābat*, *he used to praise*, or *he kept praising.* It is less often used of attempted past action; as *laudābat*, *he tried to praise.*

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē monēbam*, *I had been warning you for many years.*

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: *laudābō*, *I shall or will praise, or be praising.*

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with *have*. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: *laudāvī*, *I have praised.*

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, *vēnī*, *I have come*, is nearly equivalent to *I am here.* A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially *nōvī*, *cognōvī*, *I know* (literally *I have found out*), and *cōsuēvī*, *I am accustomed* (literally *I have become accustomed*). Cf. the English, "I've got it," for "I have it."

II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: *laudāvi, I praised.*

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: *laudāveram, I had praised.*

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: *vēneram, I had come, i. e., I was there; nōveram, I knew; cōnsuēveram, I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: *laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: *vēnerō, I shall have come, i. e., I shall be there; nōverō, I shall know; cōnsuēverō, I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of *sum*. Examples: *laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; laudātūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudātūrus erit, he will be about to praise.*

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived....., planned..... But Caesar went....." Then *planned* and *went* are perfects, each being

thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned*, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived, had planned But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

RULE: *In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.*

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.
2. After *dum*, *while* (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: *laudet*, *let him praise*, is a command to praise in the future; *imperāvit ut laudāret*, *he commanded that he praise*, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

Present	= present or future
Imperfect	= imperfect or future to a past
Perfect	= perfect or future perfect
Pluperfect	= pluperfect or future perfect to a past

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So *rogō quid faciās* regularly means *I ask what you are doing*, and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do*. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by *rogō quid factūrus sis*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: *I come*, or *I shall come*, *that I may praise*, *laudem*; *I came* *that I might praise*, *laudārem*. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the *rule of sequence of tenses*, can be followed.

RULE: *In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.*

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

Principal Tenses			
INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	rogō, <i>I ask</i>	Present	quid faciat, <i>what he is doing</i>
Future	rogābō, <i>I shall ask</i>	Perfect	quid fecerit, <i>what he has done (or did)</i>
Present perfect	rogāvi, <i>I have asked</i>		
Future perfect	rogāverō, <i>I shall have asked</i>		
Historical Tenses*			
Imperfect	rogābam, <i>I was asking</i>	Imperfect	quid faceret, <i>what he was doing</i>
Historical perf.	rogāvi, <i>I asked</i>	Pluperfect	quid fecisset, <i>what he had done</i>
Pluperfect	rogāveram, <i>I had asked</i>		

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence. Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high, is to be put into Latin, cum sint* would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction *quod sunt*.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: *temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus defuerit* (II, 21, 9), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity*.

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: *diem dicunt quā diē conveniant* (I, 6, 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble*; *omne frūmentum combūrunt ut parātiōrēs ad pericula subeunda essent* (I, 5, 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger*.

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. RULE: *The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.*

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

dicō eum	laudāre	laudātūrum esse	laudāvisse
lit. <i>him</i>	<i>to be praising</i>	<i>to be about to praise</i>	<i>to have praised</i>
<i>I say that he</i>	<i>is praising</i>	<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
dicam eum,			
<i>I shall say that he is praising</i>		<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
dixi eum,			
<i>I said that he</i>	<i>was praising</i>	<i>would praise</i>	<i>had praised</i>

a. With such perfects as ¹⁻*dēbui*, ²⁻*licuit*, ³⁻*oportuit*, ⁴⁻*potui*, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc. Example: *laudāre potui* lit. *I was able to praise*, = *I could have praised*.

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by fore (*futūrum esse*) *ut*, *it will (would) be that*, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: *dicit fore ut timeat*, lit. *he says that it will be that he fears*, = *he says that he will fear*; *dixit fore ut laudārētur*, lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised*, = *he said that he would be praised*.

STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: *Caesar vēnit*, *Caesar came*; *Caesar nōn veniet*, *Caesar will not come*.

207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (184, b) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called *potential*. Examples: *Caesar veniat*, *Caesar would come*; *Caesar nōn vēnissēt*, *Caesar would not have come*; *velim*, *I should like*.

208. The Potential Subjunctive (184, b) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase *aliquis dicat*, *some one may say*. In an independent sentence the student should always express *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, by such words as *possum* and *licet*. Example: *nēmō dubitet*, but usually *nēmō dubitare potest*, *no one can doubt*.

QUESTIONS

USE OF MODES

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: *quis veniet?* *who will come?* *quis veniat?* *who would come?* *quis dubitet?* *who can doubt* (implying that no one can)?

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: *quid faciam?* *what shall I do?* *what am I to do?*

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: *cūr dubitem?* *why should I doubt?*

211. A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: *quis vēnit?* *who came?* *quālis est?* *what sort of man is he?* *ubi est?* *where is he?*

213. RULE: Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic *-ne* is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: *scrībitne epistolam?* *is he writing a letter?* *epistolamne scrībit?* *is it a letter that he is writing?*

b. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer *yes*, the interrogative particle is *nōne*.

Example: *nōne epistolam scrībit?* *is he not writing a letter?*

c. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer *no*, the interrogative particle is *num*.

Example: *num epistolam scrībit?* *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. *Utrum* may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or *-ne* may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by *an*; or not is *annōn*. Examples: *utrum pugnāvit an fūgit?* *pugnāvitne an fūgit?* *pugnāvit an fūgit?* *did he fight or run away?* *pugnāvit annōn?* *did he fight or not?*

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use *ita*, *sānē*, etc., for *yes*, *nōn*, *minimē*, etc., for *no*. Example: *epistolamne scrībit?* *scrībit*, *yes*; *nōn scrībit*, *no*.

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is *nē* (188, b).

217. RULE: *An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *laudēmus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.*

218. RULE: *A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.*

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: *venīte, come (ye); mementō, remember.*

219. RULE: *A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōlī, nōlīte, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.*

A prohibition is less often expressed by *cavē* (with or without *nē*), *take care*, and the present subjunctive; or by *nē* and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: *nōlī dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāveris.*

220. RULE: *A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.*

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and are usually introduced by *utinam* (not to be translated).

a. RULE: *A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.*

Example: (*utinam*) *adsit, may he be here!*

b. RULE: *A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

c. RULE: *A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: *utinam adesset, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!*

COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coordinating conjunction*. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for*, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that*, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, *a-c*).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive *quod* clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, *c*) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the *ut* clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. RULE: *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, nē, quō, or a relative.*

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: *hominēs mīsit quī vidērent*, *he sent men to see*, lit. *who were to see*.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *quō* is used. Example: *vēnit quō facilius vidēret*, *he came that he might see more easily*, lit. *by which the more easily he might see*.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction *ut* is used. Example: *vēnit ut vidēret*, *he came to see*, *that he might see*, or *in order to see*; *venit ut videat*, *he comes to see*.

b. In negative clauses the conjunction *nē* is always used. Example: *hoc fēcit nē quis (not ut nēmō) vidēret*, *he did this that no one might see*, or *to keep anyone from seeing*.

RESULT CLAUSES

226. RULE: *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, *a*. For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: *mōns impendēbat*, *ut perpaucī prohibēre possent* (I, 6, 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check*; *incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit* (I, 12, 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined*; *tam fortis est ut pugnet*, *he is so brave that he would fight*, or *as to fight*, or *that he fights*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called *complementary clauses*, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as *I command*, *I hinder*, *the result is*.

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses*. The older name, *substantive purpose clauses*, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: *imperō ut eās*, *I command you to go*, does not mean *I command in order that you may go*, but rather *I give the command "go"*.

a. **RULE:** Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*.

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command*, *permit*, *persuade*, *request*, *resolve*, *strive*, *urge*, *wish*, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after *iubeō*, *command*, *cōnor*, *attempt*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*. See 280, a. *Ut* is often omitted after verbs of *asking*, *commanding*, and *wishing*, especially after *volō*. The subjunctive, usually without *ut*, is often used with *oportet*, *it is right*, and *licet*, *it is permitted*; but see 276. Examples: *civitātī persuāsīt ut exīrent* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave*; *civitātī persuāsīt nē exīrent*, *he persuaded the citizens not to leave*; *oportet eat*, *he ought to go*; *eī licet eat*, *he may go*; *obsidēs utī dent perficit* (I, 9, 11), *he causes them to give hostages*.

b. **RULE:** Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with *nē* meaning *that*, or *ut* meaning *that not*.

But *nē nōn*, *that not*, is often used instead of *ut*. Examples: *timeō nē veniat*, *I fear that he will come* (originally *timeō*: *nē veniat*, *I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come*); *timeō ut* (or *nē nōn*) *veniat*, *I fear that he will not come* (originally *timeō*: *veniat*, *I am afraid: let him or may he, come*; *ut* or *nē nōn* was then used as the opposite of *nē*).

c. **RULE:** Verbs meaning *avoid*, *hinder*, *prevent*, and *refuse* may take the subjunctive with *nē*, *quān*, or *quōminus*.

But the infinitive may be used instead. *Nē* is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, *quīn* after a *negative*, *quōminus* after *either positive or negative*. Examples: *eum impediō nē*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I hinder him from coming*; *eum nōn impediō quīn*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I do not hinder him from coming*; *neque recūsātūrōs quōminus esset* (I, 31, 24), and that they would not refuse to be.

SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called *ut* clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn when the subject is not a conscious agent.*

Compare 228, a. Example: *montēs efficiunt ut nōn exīre possint*, *the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave.*

b. **RULE:** *Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative *quod* clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: *his rēbus fiēbat ut vagārentur* (I, 2, 1 f), *the result was that they wandered.*

c. **RULE:** *Such phrases as mōs est, cōsuētūdō est (it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with *ut* or *nē*) may be used with such phrases, especially with *iūs est*, *lēx est*. Example: *mōs est ut ex equīs pugnent*, *it is their custom to fight on horseback.*

d. **RULE:** Negated verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quīn.

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with num, an, or si is used, as *whether* is in English. Dubitō with the infinitive means *hesitate*. Example: *nōn est dubium quīn hoc fēcerit*, *there is no doubt that he did this.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. GENERAL RULE: *The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.*

The subjunctive is not used in *all* relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

a. RULE: *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.*

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like *is = (such) a man* (171, a), *eius modī, such*, or an adjective modified by *tam*. Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses*. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *is est quī pugnet, he is a man who fights; secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent* (IV, 34, 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp (= such storms that they kept); tam improbus quī nōn fateātur* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit.*

b. RULE: *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.*

So after *est quī*, *there is a man who*; *nōn* or *nēmō* or *nūllus est quī*, *there is no one who*; *quis est quī?* *who is there who?* *sōlus* or *ūnus est quī* *he is the only man who*; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *nūllī sunt quī putent, there are none who think; erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exire possent* (I, 6, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave.*

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can*, *could*, or by *should*, *ought*. Examples: *ūnum (iter) vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur* (I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved; neque commissum intellegeret quārē timēret* (I, 14, 6), *he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.*

DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. RULE: *Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.*

Example: *ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam* (I, 1, 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.*

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. RULE: *A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.*

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: *Dumnorīgī, quī principātum obtinēbat, persuādet* (I, 3, 14), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power*; the same meaning could be expressed by *Dumnorīgī (is principātum obtinēbat) persuādet*.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is *cum* which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

While, as long as

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. RULE: *Dum meaning while (i. e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.*

See 198, a, 2. Example: *dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est* (I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

b. RULE: *Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i. e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.*

Example: *quoad potuit, restitit* (IV, 12, 16), *he resisted as long as he could.*

Until

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. RULE: *Dum, donec, and quoad meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Gallī fuērunt liberī dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

b. RULE: *Dum, donec, and quoad meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Examples: *Gallī exspectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.*

Before

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

a. RULE: *Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Gallī inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

b. RULE: *Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Example: *Gallī magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar venīret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar's arrival.*

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the *prius* or *ante* standing in the principal clause, and the *quam* at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where *quam* does. Example: *Gallī prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in a.*

After

237. RULE: *Postquam, after, ut, ubi, when (after, not while), simul ac, cum primum, as soon as (immediately after), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.*

Example: *ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 7, 6), *when they were informed of it they sent envoys.*

Cum

238. Cum has three chief uses:—

temporal, *when, after*;
causal, *since, because*;
adversative (concessive), although.

It is in reality an undeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time* or *at a time*, sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with *cum* is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

239. Causal and Adversative Cum.

RULE: *Cum meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.*

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: *quae cum ita sint, perge* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on*; *hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys*; *cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit* (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening.*

240. Temporal cum. Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

RULE: *Cum meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.*

RULE: *Cum meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.*

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

241. Temporal Cum with the Indicative.

a. Clauses of Date.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like *tum* or *eō tempore* is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: *tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam* (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haedui* (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders.*

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *whenever* is usually followed by the indicative.

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (159). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of *cum*; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: *haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat* (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases) he put two others opposite.*

c. Inverted Cum Clauses.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the *cum* clause.

In the most common type of *cum* clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the *cum* clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: *vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Galli cohortāti (sunt) inter sē* (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another (for cum prōcessisset, ... cohortāti sunt, when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.).*

242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: *cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur* (II, 1, 1), *when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him* (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); *cum civitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est* (I, 4, 2), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this *cum* clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *whenever* is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: *cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvelle-re poterant* (I, 25, 7), *when the iron had bent* (in each of many cases), *they could neither draw it out, etc.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *cum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, or by the relative. The conjunctions *nam*, *enim*, *etenim*, *for*, *introduce coordinate clauses.*

244. **RULE:** *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, *because*, *since*, *are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.*

When the writer wishes to imply *because* (*as he said*), (*as he thought*), (*as I said*), (*as I thought*), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) *reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt* (I, 1, 11), *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight*; (with the subjunctive) *quod sit dēstitūtus queritur* (I, 16, 18), *he complained because (as he said) he had been deserted.*

245. **RULE:** *Cum*, *since*, *because*, and often *quī*, *since he*, *etc.*, *are used with the subjunctive.*

But the indicative is often used with *quī*, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If *praesertim*, *especially*, stands in a subjunctive *quī* or *cum* clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) *illī autem, quī omnia praeclāra sentīrent, negōtium suscepērunt* (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter*; (with the indicative) *fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī adaequārunt* (V, 8, 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc.* For example with *cum*, see 239.

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. *RULE: Quamquam, although, and etsī, tametsī, even if, although, are used with the indicative.*

Example: *etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverant, tamen suspicābātur* (IV, 31, 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected.* But *quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by *and yet*.

247. *RULE: Cum, although, and less commonly quamvis (in Cicero), however much, however, although, quī, although he, etc., ut, although, are used with the subjunctive.*

Examples: (for *cum* see 239) *quamvis senex sit, fortis est*, *however old he may be, he is brave*; *ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent* (Caes. III, 9, 17), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.* But the indicative is sometimes used with *quī* when the adversative idea is clear.

SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

248. *RULE: Substantive clauses with quod, that, employ the indicative.*

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: *illa praetereō, quod Maelium occīdit* (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the *quod* clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that, whereas*. Example: *quod ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem dēspicere* (compare I, 13, 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

250. The connectives are the conjunctions *sī, if, sī nōn, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sin, but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. Undetermined Present or Past (253). *sī pugnāt, vincit, if he fights he conquers; sī pugnāvit, vicit, if he fought he conquered.*

b. Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254). *sī pugnāret, vinceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; sī pugnāvisset, viciisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. More Vivid (Confident) Future (256). *sī pugnābit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.*

d. Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257). *sī pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.*

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying

that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE: *A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.*

Examples: sī fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave I praise him; quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi prō patriā pugnavit nōn fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country he was not brave.

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE: *A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: sī fortis esset eum laudārem, if he were brave I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi prō patriā pugnavisset eum nōn laudāvisssem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); sī pugnavisset eum laudārem, if he had fought I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning could or ought, or such expressions as it would be hard, or just, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: sī fortis esset pugnāre poterat, if he were brave he could fight (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); sī fortis fuisset pugnāre dēbuit or dēbu-erat, if he had been brave he ought to have fought (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).

B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.*

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him*, means *if I shall see him I shall tell him*, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first he will tell him*, means *if he shall have arrived first*, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: *sī pugnābit eum laudābō*, *if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him*; *quī pugnāverit laudābitur*, *whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised*.

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive*

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: *sī pugnet vincat*, *if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer*; *quī pugnet laudētur*, *whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised*; *sī nōn pugnāverit eum nōn laudem*, *if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him*.

MIXED CONDITIONS ▢

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: *sī veniat hīc adsumus*, *if he should come we are here*.

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single

word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: *damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat* (I, 4, 3), (*if*) *condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him*; *dicat*, *he would say* (if he should be asked); *velim*, *I should like*. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. RULE: *Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.*

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often *nē*. This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come: I will*, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us*; *modo nē (or nōn) discēdat eum vidēbō*, *if only he do not leave I shall see him*.

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. RULE: The subjunctive is used with *ac sī, quam sī, quasi, ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī*, as if, just as if.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: *currit quasi timeat*, *he runs as if he were afraid*; *cucurrit quasi timēret*, *he ran as if he were afraid*.

INDIRECT QUOTATION

A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. GENERAL RULE: *The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.*

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as *he asked "where are you going?"*; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I (or he) was going*. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. RULE: *Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) *quis veniat?* *who would come?* (indirect) *rogō quis veniat*, *I ask who would come*; (direct) *quid faciam?* *what am I to do?* (indirect) *rogāvī quid facerem*, *I asked what I was to do*.

264. RULE: *All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) *quis vēnit?* *who came?* (indirect) *rogō quis vēnerit*, *I ask who came*; (direct) *ubi est?* *where is he?* (indirect) *mihi dixit ubi esset*, *he told me where he was*.

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (213) the indirect form is introduced by *num* or *-ne*, *whether* (no difference in meaning). *Sī* is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether*. Examples: (direct) *venitne?* *is he coming?* (indirect) *rogō num veniat*, or *rogō veniatne*, *I ask whether he is coming*; *expectāvit sī venirent*, *he waited to see whether they would come*.

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but *or not* is expressed by *necne*, instead of *annōn*. Examples: *rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset, an fūgisset*, *I asked whether he had fought or run away*; *rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset necne*, *I asked whether he had fought or not*.

B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. *Direct discourse* repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: *he said, "the soldiers are brave."* *Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: *he said that the soldiers were brave*.

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

Principal Clauses

266. Declarative Sentences. RULE: *Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).*

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: *miles est fortis*, the soldier is brave, becomes *dixit militem esse fortem*, he said that the soldier was brave.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences. RULE: *Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is *nē*. Examples: *ad Id. Apr. revertimini*, return about the thirteenth of April, becomes *respondit: . . . ad Id. Apr. reverterentur* (I, 7, 19), he replied . . . : (that) they should return, etc.; *is ita ēgit: . . . nē . . . dēspiceret* (I, 13, 14), he should not despise (from an original *nōli dēspicere* (219), do not despise).

268. Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE: *An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Example: *respondit: . . . quid sibi vellet* (I, 44, 24), what did he want (for an original *quid tibi vis*, what do you want?)?

II. RULE. *An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.*

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266) Example: *respondit: . . . num memoriam dēpōnere posse* (I, 14, 8), could he forget (for an original *I can not forget [can I?]*)?

III. RULE. *A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Example: *incūsavit: . . . cūr quisquam iūdicāret* (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose (for an original *iūdicet*. See 210, a)?

269. Subordinate Clauses. RULE: Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: *incūsāvit: . . . ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod . . . superāssent* (I, 40, 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original *iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis*).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by *et*, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since *quō* connects with the preceding sentence *posse* might have been a subjunctive.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking*.

a. **Repraesentatiō.** But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: *respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pācem esse factūrum* (I, 14, 16), *he replied . . . that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of *saying* or *thinking*; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset*, *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.*

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence. So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after *dicit*, imperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after *dicit*, pluperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the perfect stem.

Other Changes

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of *sui* or *suus* (rarely of *ipse*). See 165.

All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: *hunc militem laudō*, *I praise this soldier*, may become *dico mē hunc militem laudāre*, *I say that I praise this soldier*, or *dicit sē illum militem laudāre*, *he says that he praises that soldier*. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now to then*, *here to there*, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, a. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in *-ūrus esse*. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in *-ūrus fuisse*.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. *Sī pugnāret eum laudārem*, *if he were fighting I should praise him*, becomes, after either *dicit* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*; *sī pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem*, *if he had fought I should have praised him*, becomes, after either *dicit* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*.

C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. **RULE:** The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with *quod*, etc. (244) It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: *Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised*; *erat eī praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae visae essent* (I, 23, 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said *nisi meae copiae visae erunt*, *unless my forces shall be seen*).

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. RULE: Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.

Example: *cum certissimae rēs accēderent, quod Helvētiōs trādūxisset* (I, 19, 1), since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the *Helvetii*.

THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. RULE: Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.

Such are verbs meaning *be able*, *be accustomed*, *attempt*, *begin*, *cease*, *dare*, *determine*, *ought*, *wish*, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a. Examples: *ire potest*, he can go; *ire potuit*, he could have gone, literally he was able to go; *ire dēbet*, he ought to go; *cōstituērunt comparāre* (I, 3, 2), they determined to prepare.

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: *fortis esse cōnātur*, he tries to be brave.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With *licet*, it is permitted, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: *ire oportet*, one must go, literally to go is right; *ire oportuit*, one ought to have gone (205, a), literally to go was right; *ei ire licuit*, he might have gone, literally to go was permitted to him; *ire necesse est*, one must go.

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-

sative. But with *licet* a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: *fortem esse oportet*, *one ought to be brave*; *virō licet esse fortī (fortem)*, *a man may be brave*, lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave*.

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. *RULE: The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or adjective.*

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, *a*, and 229, *c*. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with *licet* the dative is much more common. Examples: *mē ire oportet*, *I ought to go*; *Caesarem ire oportuit*, *Caesar ought to have gone* (205, *a*); *mē ire necesse est*, *I must go*.

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. *RULE: The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.*

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) *Caesar vēnisse fertur*, *Caesar is said to have come*; (impersonal) *Caesarem vēnisse dictum est*, *it has been said that Caesar came*.

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with *iubeō*, *order*, *vetō*, *forbid*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*, which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, *a*). Example: *militēs pugnāre iussit*, *he ordered the soldiers to fight*.

b. With *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*, regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: *volō eum ire*, *I wish him to go*; *cupiō mē esse clēmentem* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful*.

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But *posse* may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity. Examples: *id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant* (VII, 26, 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this*, = *they hoped to accomplish this*; *sēsē potiri posse spērānt* (I, 3, 22), *they hoped that they could get possession*.

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. Historical Infinitive. RULE: The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.

Example: *cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain*.

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: *victus fūgit* may mean *he was conquered and fled*, when he had been conquered he fled, or because he had been conquered he fled; *victus fugiet* may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated *hōc vīsō* (150) *fūgit*, lit. *this having been seen*.

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses *dum* with the present indicative (234, a,) or *cum* with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, a). Examples: *he was killed (while) fighting*, sometimes *pugnāns occisus est*, usually either *dum pugnāt occisus est*, or *cum pugnāret, occisus est*; *seeing this he fled*, *cum hoc vīdisset fūgit*.

b. Remember that *he is running* is always *currit*, never *est currēns*.

285.

FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of *sum*, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: *praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant* (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them*, = *except what they intended*, etc.

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as *laudandus est*, *he is to be praised*, *he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: *Caesar est mihi laudandus*, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me*, = *I must praise Caesar*; *mihi pugnandum fuit* (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me*, = *I had to fight*.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially *cūrō*, *cause, have* (literally *take care*), *dō*, *give over*, *suscipio*, *undertake*. Examples: *pontem faciendum cūrat* (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made*; *cōsulibus senātus rem publicam dēfendendam dedit*, *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls*.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually

be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: *vīsus fūgit*, *having been seen he fled*; *Caesare vīso fūgit*, *having seen Caesar he fled*; literally, *Caesar having been seen he fled*. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: *Caesarem cōspicātus fūgit*, *having seen Caesar he fled*.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of *habēō*. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: *magnās cōpiās coāctās habet*, *he has great forces (which he has) collected*, or *he has collected great forces (and still has them)*; while *magnās cōpiās coēgit*, *he (has) collected great forces*, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as *post urbem conditam*, *after the founding of the city*; literally, *after the city founded*.

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: *fug'endī causā* (99, a), *for the sake of fleeing*; *ad persuādendum eī* (115), *for persuading him*; *urbem videndī causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction *urbem videndī causā*, *videndī* is the genitive modifying *causā*, and *urbem* is the direct object of *videndī*. In the gerundive construction *urbis videndae causā*, *urbis* is the genitive mod-

ifying *causā* and *videndae* agrees with *urbis*, literally *for the sake of the city to be seen*. Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city*.

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. I. RULE: *If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.*

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: *eī crēdendī causā*, *for the sake of believing him* (115).

a. But the gerundive of *ūtor*, *fruo*, *fungo*, *potior*, and *vēscor* (145) is used. Example: *spēs potiundī oppidī* (II, 7, 5), *hope of taking the town*.

II. RULE: *If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.*

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) *ad effēminandōs animōs* (I, 1, 8), *to weakening the courage*; (usually) *urbis videndae causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*; sometimes *urbem videndī causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With *causā* and *grātiā* it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: *bellandī cupiditās*, *a desire of fighting*; *Caesaris* (or *Caesarem*) *videndī cupidus*, *desirous of seeing Caesar*; *bellandī causā vēnit*, *he came to fight (for the sake of fighting)*.

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used.—*meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, or vestrī* with a genitive in *-ī* (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: *suī cōservandī causā*, *for the sake of saving themselves*. The usual gerund would be *sē cōservandī*; the gerundive *suī cōservandōrum*.

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially *ad* expressing purpose. Examples: *parātus ad proficiscendum*, *ready to set*

out; ad Caesarem videndum (gerundive, see 289, II), venit, *he came to see Caesar.*

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions *ab, dē, ex, in,* and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: *in quaerendō reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandis (III, 25, 4), by furnishing stones.*

THE SUPINE

295. RULE: *The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

It may govern a direct object. Examples: *gratulātum vēnērunt (I, 30, 2), they came to offer congratulations; lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium (I, 11, 4), they sent envoys to ask aid.*

296. RULE: *The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).*

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs *audiō, cognōscō, dicō, faciō, videō,* is most commonly found; and with the adjectives *facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mirābilis,* and the expressions *fās est, nefās est, opus est.* Example: *perfacile factū (I, 3, 16) lit. very easy as to the doing, = very easy to do.*

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were *Iānuārius (-a, -um), Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis (-e), Maius, Iūnius, Quīntilis, Sextilis, September (-bris, -bre), Octōber, November, and December.* Later *Quīntilis* was changed to *Iūlius*, in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Sextilis* to *Augustus*, in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called

the days "the third before the Ides", "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (*Kalendae*,—*ārum*, *f. pl.*) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnae*,—*ārum*, *f. pl.*) were the seventh, the *Ides* (*Īdūs*,—*-uum*, *f. pl.*) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example *a. d. IV. Īd. Iān.* = *ante diem quārtum Īdūs Iānuāriās*. The logical, but less usual form is *diē quārtō ante Īdūs Iānuāriās*, *on the fourth day before the Ides of January*. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH)

(ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = *Kal. Iān.*

($13 + 1 - 4 = 10$) Jan. 10 = *a. d. iv. Īd. Iān.* ($13 + 1 - 10 = 4$).

($28 + 2 - 8 = 22$) Feb. 22 = *a. d. viii. Kal. Mār.* ($28 + 2 - 22 = 8$).

($7 + 1 - 4 = 4$) July 4 = *a. d. iv. Nōn. Iūl.* ($7 + 1 - 4 = 4$).

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of *laudō*, *moneō*, and *audiō*, respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of *hortor*, *vereor*, and *partior* (App. 73).

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in *Italics* are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, enclosed in parentheses. They correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

Pronunciation of Proper Names. It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

ä = a in <i>mat</i> .	ē = e in <i>me</i> .	ō = o in <i>note</i> .
ā = a in <i>mate</i> .	ē = e in <i>fern</i> .	ô = o in <i>or</i> .
ä = a in <i>arm</i> .	ī = i in <i>is</i> .	ū = u in <i>up</i> .
ā = a in <i>Cuba</i> .	ī = i in <i>ice</i> .	ū = u in <i>use</i> .
ē = e in <i>met</i> .	ō = o in <i>not</i> .	ū = u in <i>rude</i> .

y has the sounds of i, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= y in youth), or to indicate an i sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant y, as in *Lūcius* = lū/shyūs.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

The main accent is indicated by a single mark ('), the lighter, secondary accent by a double mark (").

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (*Nervii*, *Helvetii*, etc.), rather than the anglicized forms (*Nervians*, *Helvetians*, etc.). Most of these anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage, none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.

VOCABULARY

A., *abbr. for Aulus* (aw'lūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 6.

a., *abbr. for ante*. I, 6.

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), **abs** (*before tē, and in some compounds*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duobus, two miles away: (4) with the pass, voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after.* I, 1.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, 12.

abdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. I, 11.

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go away, depart.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. IV, 15.

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir tree.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iunctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], disjoin, detach.

abs, *see ā*.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. III, 14.

absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of absum, be absent], absent, at a distance. I, 32; III, 17.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. III, 14.

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], keep away from.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I, 22.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. III, 2.

absum, abesse, āfui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. I, 1.

abundō, 1, *intr.* [unda, wave], overflow; abound.

ac, *see atque*.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; accēdēbat, it was added. I, 19.

accelerō, 1, *intr.* [ad+celerō, hasten], hasten.

acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of accipiō, accept], acceptable, beloved by (*with dative*). I, 3.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; accidit, it happens. I, 14.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *tr.* [ad+caedō, cut], cut into.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [ad+capiō, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I, 14.

acclivis, -e, *adj.* [ad+clivus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. II, 29.

acclivitās, -tātis, *f.* [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. II, 18.

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, Acco (āk'ō), a chief of the Senones.

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. III, 13.

accommodō, 1, *tr.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. II, 21.

accūrātō, *adv.*, carefully.

accurrō, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, intr. [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. I, 22.

accūsō, 1, tr. [ad+causa, cause, case], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. I, 16.

acerbē, adv. [acerbus, harsh], harshly, with pain.

acerbitās, -tātis, f. [acerbus, harsh], harshness, rigor.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj., harsh, biting, severe.

ācerrimē, see ācriter.

acervus, -i, m., a heap, mass. II, 32.

aciēs, -ēi (old gen., aciē), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; **prima**, the van; **media**, the centre; **novissima**, the rear. I, 22.

acquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr. [ad+quaerō, seek], seek or gain in addition, win, acquire.

ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **ācerrimē** (App. 40). I, 26.

actuārius, -a, -um, adj. [agō, move, drive], fitted with oars.

actus, see agō.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part.* of acuō, sharpen], sharpened, pointed.

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward: (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I, 1.

adactus, see adigō.

adaequō, 1, tr. [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. I, 48; II, 32.

adamō, 1, tr. [amō, love], love strongly, covet. I, 31.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], place on; add.

adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I, 3.

adēptus, see adimō.

adeō, adv. [eō, thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.

adeō, -ire, -ī, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, 7.

adeptus, see adipiscor.

adequitō, 1, intr. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. I, 46.

adhaerēō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesum, intr. [haerēō, stick], cling or stick to.

adhibeō, 2, tr. [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, 20.

adhortor, 1, tr. [hortor, encourage], encourage, incite.

adhūc, adv. [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. III, 22.

adiaceō, -iaceōre, -iacui, —, intr. [iaceō, lie], lie near or close to, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -i, m., Adiatunnus (ā'dī-ā-tūn'ūs), the leader of the Sotiates. III, 22.

adicō, -icere, -īcī, -iectum, tr. [iacō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, 1.

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). II, 21.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr. [emō, take], take away, remove.

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus sum, tr., attain to, gain.

aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, 43; II, 15.

adiudicō, 1, tr. [iudicō, judge], adjudge, assign.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnetum, tr. [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. III, 2.

adiutor, -ōris, m. [adiuvō, aid], helper, abettor, assistant.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, 17.

administer, -trī, m. [minister, servant], attendant; priest.

administrō, 1, tr. [minister, servant],

serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. II, 20.

admiror, 1, *tr.* [*mīror*, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.

admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [*mittō*, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (*a horse*). I, 22.

admodum, *adv.* [*modus*, measure], *up to the measure*; very much, very; *with num.*, fully; *with neg.*, at all. III, 13.

admoneō, 2, *tr.* [*moneō*, warn], warn.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultum, *intr.*, grow up.

adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *tr.* [*orior*, arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, 13.

adsum, *adesse*, *affui*, *intr.* [*sum*, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. I, 16.

adolēscēns, -entis, *m.* [*pres. part. of adolēscō*, grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; III, 7.

adolēscēntia, -ae, *f.* [*adolēscēns*, youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.

adolēscēntulus, -i, *m.* [*dim. of adolēscēns*, youth], a very young man. III, 21.

adventus, -ūs, *m.* [*veniō*, come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.

adversārius, -rī, *m.* [*adversus*, turned against], antagonist, foe.

adversus, -a, *um*, *adj.* [*pf. part. of adversō*, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; *adversō flūmine*, up the river; *in adversum ōs*, full in the face. I, 18.

adversus, *prep. w. acc.* [*adversus*, turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.

advocō, 1, *tr.* [*vocō*, call], call to, summon.

advolō, 1, *intr.* [*volō*, fly], fly to or against, rush on or at.

aedificium, -cī, *n.* [*aedificō*, build], building, house. I, 5.

aedificō, 1, *tr.* [*aedēs*, house + *faciō*, make], build, construct. III, 9.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

aegrō, *adv.* [*aeger*, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, *aegrius*; *sup.*, *aegerrimē* (App. 40). I, 13.

Aemilius, -lī, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mīl'i-ūs), I, 23.

aequāliter, *adv.* [*aequālis*, equal; *aequus*, equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.

aequinoctium, -tī, *n.* [*aequus*, equal + *nox*, night], the equinox. IV, 36.

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [*aequus*, equal], equality; fairness, equity; *animi aequitās*, contentment. I, 40.

aequō, 1, *tr.* [*aequus*, equal], make even or equal, equalize. I, 25.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; *aequus animus*, equanimity, composure. I, 43; III, 17.

aerāria, -ae, *f.* [*aes*, copper], copper mine. III, 21.

aes, *aeris*, *n.* copper; *anything made of copper*, coin, money; *aes allēnum*, *another's money*, debt. IV, 31.

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. I, 54; II, 2.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*aestimō*, value], valuation.

aestimō, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20.

aestivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*aestus*, heat; *aestās*, summer], of summer, summer. **aestuārium**, -rī, *n.* [*aestus*, tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging; tide; *minuente aestū*, at ebb tide. III, 12.

aetās, *aetātis*, *f.*, period of life, age. II, 16.

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, everlasting.

afferō, *afferre*, *attulī*, *allātum*, *tr.* [*ad* + *ferō*, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 43; II, 1.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*ad* + *faciō*, do], do to, treat, affect; *magnō dolore afficere*, to annoy greatly. I, 2.

affigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [*ad* + *figō*, fix], fasten to. III, 14.

affingō, -*ingere*, -*finxi*, -*factum*, *tr.* [*ad* + *ingō*, *invent*], *invent* in addition.

affinitās, -*tātis*, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. I, 18.

affirmātiō, -*ōnis*, *f.* [*affirmō*, *affirm*; *ad* + *firmus*, *strong*], declaration, assertion.

affixus, *see* **affigō**.

affictō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of affigō*, *strike* against, *damage*], *damage* greatly, *shatter*, *injure*; *harass*, *distress*. III, 12.

affigō, -*figere*, -*fixi*, -*factum*, *tr.*, *strike* against; *overthrow*; *damage*, *injure*. IV, 31.

affore, *fut. inf. of adsum*.

Africus, -*i*, *m.*, *Africus* (āf'ri-kūs), the southwest wind.

āfui, *see* **absum**.

Agedincum, -*i*, *n.* (Be), *Agedincum* (āj'ē-dīng'kūm), *now* *Sens*.

ager, *agri*, *m.*, *field*, *land*; *district*, *territory*. I, 2.

agger, *aggeris*, *m.*, *material* for earth-works, *earth*; *embankment*, *mound*; *rampart*. II, 12.

aggressor, -*gredi*, -*gressus sum*, *tr.* [*ad* + *gradior*, *step*], *advance* to or against; *attack*. I, 12.

aggregō, 1, *tr.* [*ad* + *grex*, *flock*], *unite* in a *flock*; *assemble*; *join*, *attach*. IV, 26.

agitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of agō*, *move*; *discuss*], *discuss*.

agmen, -*inis*, *n.* [*agō*, *move*], *a moving body*; *a marching column*; *army*; *in agmine*, on the *march*; *primum agmen*, the *van*; *novissimum* or *extrēmum agmen*, the *rear*. I, 15.

agō, *agere*, *ēgi*, *actum*, *tr.*, *set* in motion; *drive* (*of animals*); *move* forward, *advance* (*of military works*); *do*, *transact*, *carry on* (*of business*); *discuss*, *speak*; *hold* (*conventum*); *give*, *render* (*grātiās*); *plead* (*causam* or *rem*); *quod agitur*, the *matter* in hand; *rēs agitur*, something is at stake. I, 13.

agricultūra, -*ae*, *f.* [*ager*, *land* + *colō*, *cultivate*], *cultivation* of the *land*, *agriculture*. III, 17.

alacer, -*cris*, -*cre*, *adj.*, *lively*, *eager*, *active*, *ready*, *joyous*. III, 19.

alacritās, -*tātis*, *f.* [*alacer*, *lively*], *liveliness*, *ardor*. I, 41; IV, 24.

ālārius, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* [*āla*, *wing*], on the *wing*; *pl. as noun*, *auxiliaries*. I, 51.

albus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, *white*.

alcēs, -*is*, *f.*, *elk*.

Alesia, -*ae*, *f.* (Cf), *Alesia* (a-lē'zhyā), *now* *Alise Ste. Reine*.

aliās, *adv.* [*alius*, *another*], at another place, elsewhere; at another time;

aliās . . . **aliās**, at one time . . . at another. II, 29.

aliēnō, 1, *tr.* [*aliēnus*, of another], *make* another's or foreign; *estrangle*, *alienate*; **aliēnātā mente**, *maddened*.

aliēnus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* [*alius*, *other*], of or belonging to another, another's; *strange*, *alien*, *unfamiliar*; *unfavorable*; *foreign* to the purpose; **aes aliēnum**, *debt*; **aliēnissimī**, *entire strangers*. I, 15.

aliō, *adv.* [*alius*, *other*], to another place, person or thing, elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, *adv.* [*aliquis*, *some* + *diū*, *long*], for some time. I, 40.

aliquandō, *adv.* [*aliquis*, *some*], at some time, at length, finally.

aliquantō, *adv.* [*aliquantus*, *some*], somewhat, a little. III, 13.

aliquantus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, *some*, *considerable*; *neut. as noun with partitive gen.*, a good deal, not a little.

aliquis, -*quid*, and **aliqui**, -*qua*, -*quod*, *indef. pron.* [*quis*, *who*. App. 62, a], *some* one, something; *anyone*, anything, any. I, 14.

aliquot, *indecl. num. adj.* [*quot*, *how* many], *some*, *a few*, *several*. III, 1.

aliter, *adv.* [*alius*, *other*], *otherwise*; **aliter** . . . **ac**, *otherwise* . . . *than*. II, 19.

alius, -*a*, -*ud*, *gen. alius* (App. 32), *another*, *other*; **alius** . . . **alius**, *one* . . . *another*; *in pl.*, *some* . . . *others*. I, 1.

allātus, *see* **afferō**.

alliciō, -*licere*, -*lexi*, -*lectum*, *tr.*, *attract*, *allure*, *entice*.

Allobrogēs, -*um*, *m.* (Dfg), the *Allo-*

broges (ä-löb'rö-jéz), *a powerful Gallic people in the Province.* I, 6.

alö, alere, alui, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, 18.

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl. (Cghi), the Alpes (äl'pēz), *better, the Alps.* I, 10.

alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (*of two*); second; the one; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other. I, 2.

alternus, -a, -um, adj. [alter, the other], one after another, in turn.

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (*of timber*). I, 8.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun*, the deep, the sea. I, 2.

alūta, -ae, f., soft leather. III, 13.

ambactus, -ī, m., vassal.

Ambarri, -ōrum, m. (Cf), the Ambarri (äm-bär'i), *clients of the Haedui.* I, 11.

Ambiāni, -ōrum, m. (ABde), the Ambiani (äm'bi-ā-ni). II, 4.

Ambiārii, -ōrum, m. (Bbc), the Ambiārii (äm'bi-bā-ri-i).

Ambiliati, -ōrum, m., the Ambiliati (äm'bi-lī-ā-ti), III, 9.

Ambiorix, -igis, m., Ambiorix (äm-bi'ō-rīks), *king of the Eburones.*

Ambivareti, -ōrum, m. (Ce), the Ambivareti (äm'bi-vār-ē-ti), *clients of the Haedui.*

Ambivariti, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Ambivariti (äm'bi-vār-i-ti). IV, 9.

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

āmentia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. I, 40.

āmentum, -ī, n., strap or thong, fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.

amīcitia, -ae, f. [amīcus, friend], friendship. I, 3.

amīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; *as noun, m.*, a friend, an ally. I, 3.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. I, 28.

amor, -ōris, m. [amō, love], love. I, 20.

amplē, adv. [amplus, large], largely;

comp., amplius, more, farther. I, 35; II, 16.

amplificō, 1, tr. [amplus, large+faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, 14.

amplitūdō, -inis, f. [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. IV, 3.

amplius, see amplē and amplius.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius, comp. as noun**, more, a greater number, a greater distance. I, 15.

an, conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. I, 40; IV, 14.

Anartēs, -ium, m., the Anartes (ā-när'tēz), *a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.*

Ancalitēs, -um, m. (Ac), the Ancalites (ān-kāl'i-tēz).

anceps, ancipitis, adj. [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. I, 26.

ancora, -ae, f., anchor; in ancoris, at anchor. III, 13.

Andebrogus, -gī, m., Andebrogus (än'dē-brō'jyūs). II, 3.

Andēs, -ium, or Andī, -ōrum, m. (Ce), the Andes (än'dēz) or Andī (än'dī). II, 35.

ānfractus, -ūs, m., circuitous route.

angulus, -ī, m., corner.

angustē, adv. [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. IV, 23.

angustiae, -ārum, f. pl. [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, 9.

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in angustō, in a critical condition. I, 2.

anima, -ae, f., breath, life, soul.

animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. and intr. [animus, mind+ad+vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in, punish. I, 19.

animal, -ālis, n. [anima, breath of life], a living creature, animal.

animus, -i, *m.*, soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; **animi causā**, for amusement; in **animō habēre**, intend. I, 1.

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], of last year.

annus, -i, *m.*, year. I, 3.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], yearly. I, 16.

anser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

ante (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously;

(2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance of. I, 3.

anteā, *adv.* [ante, before+eā, this], formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* I, 17.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8.

antecursor, -ōris, *m.* [currō, run], fore-runner; *pl.*, vanguard.

anteferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear. App. 81], bear or carry before; prefer.

antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. III, 14.

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. IV, 22.

antevertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], put before, prefer.

antiquitus, *adv.* [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, 4.

antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. I, 18.

Antistius, -ti, *m.*, Gaius Antistius Reginus (gā'yūs ān-tis'ti-ūs rē-jī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Antonius (mār'kūs ān-tō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants, afterward triumvir.

Ap., *abbr. for* Appius (āp'i-ūs), a Roman praenomen.

aperiō, -perire, -perui, -pertum, *tr.*, open, expose.

apertē, *adv.* [apertus, open], openly, manifestly.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere apertō, on the unprotected flank. I, 25.

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo (ā-pōl'ō),

apparō, 1, *tr.* [ad+parō, prepare], prepare, make ready.

appellō, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1.

appellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. III, 12.

appetō, -petere, -petivi (-peti), -itum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+petō, seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, 40.

applicō, 1, *tr.* [ad+plicō, fold], apply; sē applicāre, lean.

apportō, 1, *tr.* [ad+portō, carry], bring.

approbō, 1, *tr.* [ad+probō, approve], favor, approve.

appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [ad+propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. II, 10.

appulsus, *see* appellō.

April, *abbr. for* Aprilis, -e, *adj.*, of April, April. I, 6.

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. III, 13.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, 17.

aquātio, -ōnis, *f.* [aqua, water], getting water. IV, 11.

aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard, (*as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion*). IV, 25.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (āk'wī-lē-yā), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. I, 10.

aquilifer, -eri, *m.* [aquila, eagle+ferō, bear], standard-bearer.

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (āk'wī-tā'nī-ā), Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. I, 1.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (āk'wī-tā'nī), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. I, 1.

Arar, **Araris** (*acc. -im*), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (ā'rār), the modern Saone. I, 12.

arbiter, -tri, *m.*, umpire, arbitrator.

arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [arbiter, umpire], decision or judgment (*of the arbiter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, 36.

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [arbitrator, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, 17.

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 20.

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsum, *intr.*, burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.

Arduenna, -ae, *f.* (ABig), Arduenna (ār'dū-en'ə), better the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul.

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. II, 33.

Arecomici, Arecomici (ār'ē-kōm'i-si), see **Voicæ**.

Aremoricae, -arum, *f.* (Bbcd), *adj.*, maritime, Aremorian.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silver plate or coin.

argilla, -ae, *f.*, white clay.

aridus, -a, -um, *adj.* (āreō, be dry), dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. IV, 24.

ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. II, 32.

Arlovistus, -ī, *m.*, Arlovistus (ār'ri-ō-vis'tus), a king of the Germans. I, 31; IV, 16.

Aristius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Aristius (mār'-kūs a-ris'tī-ūs), a military tribune.

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. I, 4.

armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 14.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. II, 10.

armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; armātus, *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, armed; armātī, as *noun*, armed men. I, 40; II, 4.

Arpinēus, -ī, *m.*, Galus Arpineius (gā'yūs ār'pī-nē'yūs), a knight in Caesar's army.

arripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [ad+rapio, seize] take or seize hurriedly.

arroganter, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arro-

gant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.

ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art; *pl.*, the arts.

artē, *adv.* [artus, close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.

articulus, -ī, *m.*, joint.

artificium, -ci, *n.* [ars, art + faciō, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.

artus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, dense, thick.

Arvernus, -ī, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'nī), possibly the Arvernians. I, 31.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+scandō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. I, 21.

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 21.

asciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, *tr.* [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). I, 5.

aspectus, -ūs, *m.* [aspiciō, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.

asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough, violent.

assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ad+sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.

assistō, assistere, astiti, —, *intr.* [ad+sistō, stand], stand by or near.

assuēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. IV, 1.

assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed.

at, conj., but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.

atque, ac, (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. I, 1.

Atrebās, -bātis, *m.*, (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā'tēz). II, 4.

Ātrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Atrius (kwīn'tūs ā'trī-ūs), one of Caesar's officers.

attexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [ad+texō, weave], weave on.

atingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tactum, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, 1.

attribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, tr. [ad+tribuō, assign], assign, allot. III, 1.

attuli, see afferō.

Atuatuca, -ae, f. (Af), Atuatuca (ät'ü-ät'ü-ka), a stronghold of the Eburones.

Atuatucl, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Atuatucl (ät'ü-ät'ü-si). II, 4.

auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author; auctor esse, advise. III, 17.

auctoritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, 3.

auctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of augeō, increase], increased, advanced. I, 43.

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, 18.

audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. *Comp.*, audācius; *sup.*, audācissimē. I, 15.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. I, 18.

audiō, 4, tr., hear, hear of; dictō audiēns, obedient. I, 39; II, 12.

auditiō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. IV, 5.

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, 18.

Aulercl, -ōrum, m., the Aulercl (aw-lēr'si), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulercl Eburouices (ēb'ü-rō-vi'sēz), (Bd), III, 17; (2) Aulercl Cenomani (sē-nōm'a-ni), (Bd); (3) Aulercl Brannouices (brān'ō-vi'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulercl Diablintes (dī'a-blīn'tēz), (Bc), II, 34.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], of gold, gold.

auriga, -ae, m., charioteer. IV, 83.

auris, -is, f., ear.

Aurunculēus, -i, m., Lucius Aurunculeus Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng'kü-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Cæsar's lieutenants. II, II.

Ausci, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Ausci (aw'si). III, 27.

ausus, see audeō.

aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or. I, 1.

autem, conj., but (a weak adversative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I, 2.

autumnus, -i, m., autumn.

auxi, see augeō.

auxiliāris, -e adj. [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. III, 25.

auxilior, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, 29.

auxilium, -ii, n. [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops; reinforcements. I, 11.

Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -i, n. (Ce), Avaricum (a-vār'ikūm), the stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. I, 40.

āvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, take away.

āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; *pf. part. as adj.*, with back turned. I, 16.

avis, -is, f., bird. IV, 10.

avus, -i, m., grandfather. I, 12.

Axona, -ae, m. (Bf), the Axona (āk'sō-na), a river, now the Aisne. II, 5.

B.

Bacēnis, -is, f. (Ahi), Bacenis (ba-sē-nis), the forest Bacenis, between the Cheruci and the Suebi.

Baculus, -i, m., Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs seks'ti-ūs bāk'ū-lūs). II, 25.

Baliāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl'iē-ā-rīk), (i.e., coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca). II, 7.

balteus, -i, m., sword belt.

Balventius, -tī, *m.*, Titus Balventius (tī'tus bāl-vēn'shyūs), one of Caesar's centurions.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; *pl. as noun*, savages, barbarians. I, 31; II, 35.

Basilus, -i, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyūs mī-nū'shyūs bās'i-lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Batāvi, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā'tā'vī). IV, 10.

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. I, 1.

Belgium, -gī, *n.* (ABdefg), Belgium (bēl'jyūm), the country of the Belgae.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. I, 10.

bellicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or in war, military.

bellō, 1, *intr.* [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. I, 2.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovacī (bē'lōv'ā-sī). II, 4.

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. I, 1.

bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, 'melius; *sup.*, optimē. I, 45; III, 18.

beneficium, -ci, *n.* [bene, well+faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, 9.

benevolentia, -ae, *f.* [bene, well+volō, wish], good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, *n.* (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brāk'tē), the chief town of the Haedui. I, 23.

Bibrax, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. II, 6.

Bibroci, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Bibroci (bīb'rō-sī).

bīdium, -ī, *n.* [bis, twice+diēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. I, 23.

biennium, -nī, *n.* [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. I, 3.

Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriōnēs (bī-jēr'i-ō'nēz or bī'jē-rī-ō'nēz). III, 27.

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, 15.

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [bis, twice+pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV, 17.

bipertītō, *adv.* [bis, twice+partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I, 25.

bis, *num. adv.* [for duis, from duo, two], twice. III, 12.

Biturigēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bīt'ū-rī'jēz). I, 18.

Boduognātus, -i, *m.*, Boduognātus (bōd'ū-ōg-nā'tūs). II, 23.

Bōii, -ōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boii (bō'vī), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. I, 5.

bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. I, 28.

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; *as noun*, bonum, -ī, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; bonī, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. *Comp.*, melior; *sup.*, optimus (App. 42). I, 6.

bōs, bovis, *m.*, *f.*, ox; *pl.*, cattle. **brachium**, -chī, *n.*, the arm, forearm. I, 25.

Brannovicēs, *see* Aulerci.

Bratuspantium, -tī, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm). II, 13.

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. I, 40; III, 4.

brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [brevis, short], shortness; brevity. II, 20.

breviter, *adv.* [brevis, short], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān'i-ā), better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britany. II, 4.

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Britannia, Britain], of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni (brī-tān'i), better, the Britons. IV, 21.

brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'i-mūs jū'nī-ūs brū'tūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony. III, 11.

C.

C., abbr. for praenomen **Gāius** (gā'yūs). I, 40; III, 5.

C., sign for centum, a hundred.

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs kə-bū'rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus. I, 47.

cacūmen, -inis, *n.*, top.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. II, 27.

cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, 15.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Dd), Cadurcan; *pl. as noun*, the Cadurci (kə-dēr'sī),

caedēs, -is, *f.* [caedō, cut], a cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder.

caedō, **caedere**, **cecidī**, **caesum**, *tr.*, cut, kill, slay. III, 29.

caelestis, -e, *adj.* [caelum, heaven], heavenly; *pl. as noun*, the gods.

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'nī). II, 4.

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, a sacred rite.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). II, 4.

caeruleus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark blue.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, (1), Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zar), conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries. I, 7. (2), Lucius Julius Caesar (lū'shyūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zar), a kinsman and lieutenant of the former.

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. III, 25.

caesus, *see* **caedō**.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. I, 12.

Caletī, -ōrum (or -ēs, -um), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). II, 4.

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd. III, 18.

cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. II, 24.

campester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level; loca, level country.

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space or country. III, 26.

Camulogenus, -ī, *m.*, Camulogenus (kām'ū-lōj'ē-nūs), a chief of the Aulerci.

Canīnius, -nī, *m.*, Gaius Caninius Rebilus (gā'yūs kə-nīn'i-ūs rēb'i-lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

canō, **canere**. **cecinī**, **cantum**, *intr.*, sing; sound.

Cantabri, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kān'tə-bri). III, 26.

Cantium, -tī, *n.* (Ad), Cantium (kān'shyūm), or Kent.

capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair.

capīō, **capere**, **cēpi**, **captum**, *tr.*, take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (arms); choose, select (a place); form, adopt (a plan); reach, arrive at (a place); make (a beginning); **collem capere**, take position on a hill; **fugam capere**, take to flight. I, 1.

capra, -ae, *f.*, goat.

captivus, -ī, *m.* [capīō, take], captive, prisoner. I, 22.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [capīō, take], comprehension, ideas. IV, 3.

captus, *see* **capīō**.

caput, **capitis**, *n.*, the head (of men and animals); person, individual; mouth (of a river); **capitis poena**, capital punishment. I, 29.

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kär-kə-sō). III, 20.

careō, 2, *intr.*, be without, be free from; miss, want.

carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel. III, 13.

Carnutēs, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kär'nū-tēz). II, 35.

carō, **carnis**, *f.*, flesh, meat.

carpō, **carpere**, **carpsi**, **carptum**, *tr.*, pluck; censure, jeer at. III, 17.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. I, 3.

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, valuable.

Carvilius, -lī, *m.*, Carvilius (kär-vīl'i-ūs), a British king.

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut.

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese.

Cassi, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Cassi (kās'i).

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, *see* **Cassius**. I, 13.

cassis, -idis, *f.*, a metal helmet.

Cassius, -sī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kāsh'yūs lōn-gī'nūs),

consul 107 B. C., slain in battle by the Tigrini. I, 7.

Cassivellaunus, -i, m., Cassivellaunus (*kās'i-vē-law'nūs*), the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.

castellum, -i, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.

Casticus, -i, m., Casticus (*kās'ti-kūs*). I, 3.

castrum, -i, n., fort; pl., castra, castrorum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, pitch camp; castra movēre, break up camp. I, 12.

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsū, by chance. I, 12.

Catamantaloedis, -is, m., Catamantaloedis (*kāt'mā-mān'tā-lē'dis*). I, 3.

catēna, -ae, f., chain; fetter. I, 47; III, 13.

Caturigēs, -um, m. (Dg), the Caturiges (*kāt'ū-rī'jēs*). I, 10.

Catuvolcus, -i, m., Catuvolcus (*kāt'ū-vōl'kūs*), a chief of the Eburores.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, 1.

cautē, adv. [cautus, from caveō, be cautious], cautiously.

cautēs, -is, f., reef. III, 13.

Cavarillus, -i, m., Cavarillus (*kāv'tā-ril'ūs*), a Haeduan noble.

Cavarinus, -i, m., Cavarinus (*kāv'tā-rī'nūs*), a king of the Senones.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, intr., be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. I, 14.

Cavillōnum, -i, n. (Cf), Cavillonum (*kāv'i-lō'nūm*).

Cebenna, -ae, f. (De), the Cebenna (*sē-bēn'a*), or the Cevennes mountains.

cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum, intr., go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick; precipitātē. IV, 23.

celeritās, -tātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. Comp., celerius; sup., celerrimē (App. 40). I, 18.

cēlō, 1, tr., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; in pass., escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.

Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (*sēl'tā*), ~~better~~ the Celts. I, 1.

Celtillus, -i, m., Celtillus (*sēl-tīl'ūs*), an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e, adj. [Cēnabum], of Cēnabum; pl. as noun, the people of Cēnabum.

Cēnabum, -i, n. (Cd), Cēnabum (*sēn'a-būm*), now Orleans.

Cēnimagni, -ōrum, m. (Ad), the Cenimagni (*sēn'i-māg'nī*).

Cēnomani, see Aulerci.

cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsus, tr., think, decide (acc. and inf.); propose, advise, vote (ut and subj.); propose, vote for (acc.). I, 35.

cēnsus, -ūs, m., enumeration. I, 29.

centum, (C), indecl. card. num., a hundred. I, 2.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39; II, 17.

cēpi, see capiō.

cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, tr., separate; see, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.

certē, adv. [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.

certus, -a, -um, adj. [for crētus, part. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiorē facere, to inform (acc. and inf.); order (ut or nē and subj.); certior fieri, be informed. I, 7.

cervus, -i, m., stag.

cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., the rest of, the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. I, 32; II, 3.

Ceutronēs, -um, m., the Ceutrones (*sū-trō-nēs*), (1), (Dg), I, 10. (2), (Af).

Chérusci, -ōrum, *m.* (Ahl), the Cherusci (kĕ-rūs'i), a German tribe.

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus, food], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; *molita cibāria*, meal, flour. I, 5.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. IV, 1.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwīn'tūs tūl'i-ūs sis'ē-rō), brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.

Clamberius, -rī, *m.*, Clamberius (sīm-bē-rī-ūs). I, 37.

Cimbri, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sīm-bri). I, 33; II, 4.

Cingetorix, -igis, *m.*, Cingetorix (sīn-jet'ō-riks), (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a British king.

cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cinctum, *tr.*, encircle, surround, invest, encompass; *man (a wall)*. I, 38.

cippus, -ī, *m.*, palisade, stockade.

circinus, -ī, *m.* [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. I, 38.

circiter, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. I, 15.

circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumeō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I, 21.

circum, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. I, 10.

circumeidō, -eidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut around or off, cut; isolate.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], encircle.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. I, 38; IV, 32.

circumdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw around. I, 38; III, 26.

circumeō, -ire, -ī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. III, 25.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], surround; *pass.*, gather round.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set or place around. II, 6.

circummittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send around.

circummuniō, 4, *tr.* [muniō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. II, 30.

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], enfold, enclose.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *tr.* [sistō, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48; III, 15.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.* [speciō, look], look (around) for or at, consider, examine.

circumvallō, 1, *tr.* [vallum, rampart], surround with a rampart, beleague, invest.

circumvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry around; *pass.*, ride around.

circumveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come or get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, 25.

cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. II, 3.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs], Cisalpine, lying on the south side of the Alps.

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rhēnus], on this (the western) side of the Rhine.

Cita, -ae, *m.*, Gaius Fufius Cita (gā'yūs fū'fi-ūs si'ta), a Roman knight.

citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of citō, put in motion], swift. IV, 10.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (= Cisalpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. I, 10.

citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimē. IV, 33.

citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. I, 12.

citrō, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. I, 42.

civis, -is, *m., f.*, citizen.

civitas, -tātis, *f.* [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. I, 2.

clam, *adv.*, secretly. III, 18.

clāmitō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of clāmō, cry out], cry out repeatedly, exclaim.

clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, 11.

clandestinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [clam, secretly], hidden, secret.

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, loud.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. III, 11.

Claudius, -dī, *m.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher (āp'i-ūs klaw'dī-ūs pūl'kēr), consul 54 B. C.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line, bring up the rear. I, 25.

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. III, 13.

clēmētia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14.

cliēns, -entis, *m.*, *f.* [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4.

clientēla, -ae, *f.* [cliēns, a client], the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; clients.

clivus, -ī, *m.*, slope, ascent.

Clōdīus, -dī, *m.*, Publius Clodius Pulcher (pūb'lī-ūs klō'dī-ūs pūl'kēr), murdered by Milo in 52 B. C.

Cn., *abbr.* for Gnaeus (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. IV, 1.

co-, *see* **con-**.

coacervō, 1, *tr.* [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27.

coāctus, *see* **cōgō**.

coāctus, -ūs, *m.* [cōgō, compel], compulsion.

coagmentō, 1, *tr.*, join, connect.

coartō, 1, *tr.*, crowd together.

Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). III, 27.

coēgī, *see* **cōgō**.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmtum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy, buy up. I, 3.

coēō, -īre, -īī, —, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], assemble.

coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and a), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; **coep-tus**, *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. I, 15.

coerceō, 2, *tr.* [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 17.

cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [co+agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, *see* I, 33; III, 24.

cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [co+(g)nātus, born], blood relationship; family, clan.

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [co+(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf.*, I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, a). I, 19.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [co+agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, 4.

cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. I, 40; II, 5.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, 25.

cohortor, 1, *tr.* [co+hortor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. I, 25.

collātus, *see* **cōnferō**.

collaudō, 1, *tr.* [con+laudō, praise], praise highly.

colligō, 1, *tr.* [con+ligō, bind], bind or fasten together. I, 25.

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [con+legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; *sē colligere*, collect one's self, rally. III, 6.

collis, -is, *m.*, hill. I, 22.

collocō, 1, *tr.* [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage. I, 18.

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, 34.

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [con+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, 19.

colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, 1.

colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony, settlement.

color, -ōris, *m.*, color.

com-, *see* **con-**.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [com(b)+ūrō, burn], burn up. I, 5.

comes, -itis, *m.*, *f.*, companion.

comitium, -tī, *n.* [com+eō, go], place of assembly or meeting; *pl.*, an election.

comitor, 1, *tr.* [cōmes, companion], accompany, follow.

sommeatus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.

commemorō, 1, *tr.* [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, 14.

commendō, 1, *tr.* [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. IV, 27.

commeō, 1, *intr.* [meō, go], go back and forth; with *ad.* resort to, visit. I, 1.

commilitō, -ōnis, *m.* [miles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.

comminus, *adv.* [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.

commissura, -ae, *f.* [committō, join], uniting, joint, juncture.

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], join, splice; commit (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; entrust; **proellum committere**, join or begin battle. I, 13.

Commius, -mī, *m.*, Commius (kōm'i-ūs), a chief of the Atrebates. IV, 21.

commodē, *adv.* [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; **satis commodē**, to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.

commodum, -i, *n.* [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 22.

commodus, -a, -um, *adj.* [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.

commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, *tr.* [moneō, remind+faciō, make], remind forcibly. I, 19.

commoror, 1, *intr.* [moror, tarry], wait, stop.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, 13.

communīcō, 1, *tr.* [communis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.

communīō, 4, *tr.* [muniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8.

communis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; **rēs communis**, the common interest. I, 30; II, 4.

commutātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō, change], a changing, change. I, 14.

commūtō, 1, *tr.* [mūtō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. I, 23.

comparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure prepare for. I, 3.

comparō, 1, *tr.* [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.

compendium, -di, *n.*, gain, profit.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.

complector, -plecti, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.* [obsolete, pleō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. I, 24.

complexus, *see* **complector**.

complūrēs, -a, *adj.* [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.

comportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehendō, (=prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (*fire*). III, 14.

comprobō, 1, *tr.* [probō, approve], approve, sanction, justify.

compulsus, *see* **compellō**.

con-, **com-**, **co-** [*the forms taken by cum in composition*], together; completely; or mere emphasis.

cōnātum, -i, *n.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 8.

cōnātus, *see* **cōnor**.

concedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.

concessus, -ūs, *m.* [concedō, permit], concession, permission.

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall down, fall. III, 14.
conciliō, 1, tr. [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. I, 3.
concilium, -li, n., gathering, assembly, council. I, 18.
concisus, see concidō.
concitō, 1, tr. [citō, put in motion], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.
conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. I, 47; III, 18.
conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, close], shut up; **conclūsum mare**, an inland sea. III, 9.
Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m., Conconnetodumnus (kōn-kōn'ē-tō-dūm'nūs), a chief of the Carnutes.
concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitum, intr., clash.
concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, 48; II, 20.
concurso, 1, intr. [freq. of concurrō, run], run about.
concursum, -ūs, m. [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, 8.
concursum, see concurrō.
condemnō, 1, tr. [damnō, condemn], convict.
condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 28.
condōnō, 1, tr. [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. I, 20.
Condrusi, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Condrusi (kōn-dru'si). II, 4.
condūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, 4.
confectus, see conficiō.
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; **sē cōnferre**, betake one's self, take refuge. I, 16.
cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of cōnferciō, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. I, 24.

cōnfestim, adv., hastily, at once, immediately. IV, 32.
cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). I, 3.
cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, intr. [fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; **cōnfisus, pf. part. with present meaning, relying on.** I, 23.
cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fasten. III, 13.
cōnfinis, -e, adj. [finis, boundary], adjoining, contiguous.
cōnfinium, -nī, n. [finis, boundary], common boundary, neighborhood.
cōnfirmatiō, -ōnis, f. [cōnfirmō, assert], assurance. III, 18.
cōnfirmō, 1, tr. [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. I, 3.
cōnfisus, see cōnfidō.
cōnfiteor, -fiterī, -fessus sum, tr. [fateor, confess], acknowledge, confess.
cōnfixus, see cōnfigō.
cōnflagrō, 1, intr. [flagrō, burn], burn, be on fire.
cōnfectō, 1, tr. [freq. of cōnfigō], strike together; pass., be distressed.
cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fictum, intr. [figō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. II, 5.
cōnfluēs, -entis, f. [cōnfluō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
cōnfluō, -fluere, -fluxī, —, intr. [fluō, flow], flow together.
cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr. [fugiō, flee], flee, take refuge.
cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [fundō, pour], pour together, bring together.
congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (peacefully). I, 36; II, 23.
congressus, -ūs, m. [congregior, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. III, 13.
coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast;

put; put together *logically*, conjecture; in *fugam concere*, put to flight. I, 26.

coniectūra, -ae, *f.* [coniciō, conjecture], inference, conjecture.

coniectus, *see* coniciō.

coniunctim, *adv.* [coniungō, join], jointly.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. I, 37; II, 3.

coniūnx, -iugis, *f.* [coniungō, join], wife.

coniūratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [coniūrō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, 2.

coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [iūrō, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1.

cōnor, 1, *intr.*, attempt, endeavor, try. I, 3.

conquiescō, -quiescere, -quīlēvi, -quī-ētum, *intr.* [quiescō, to rest, quies, rest], lie down to rest.

conquirō, -quirere, -quīsivī, -quīsī-tum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; *as noun*, kinsman, relative. I, 11.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēn-sum, *tr.* [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23.

cōnscientia, -ae, *f.* [cōnscius, conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [sciscō, resolve], resolve upon; *sibi mortem cōnsciscere*, commit suicide. I, 4.

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], conscious; aware. I, 14.

cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scrip-tum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, 10.

cōnsecrō, 1, *tr.* [sacrō, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

cōnsector, 1, *tr.* [sector, freq. of se-

quor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue chase. III, 15.

cōnsecūtus, *see* cōnsequor.

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōnsentiō, agree], agreement.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent coalition. I, 30; II, 28.

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsum *intr.* [sentio, feel], think together agree, combine. II, 3.

cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up; go after pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain accomplish; ensue, succeed. I, 13.

cōnservō, 1, *tr.* [servō, save], save spare, protect; observe, maintain. II, 12.

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius: (pub'li-ūs kōn-sid' i-ūs), one of Cae-sar's officers. I, 21.

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sidō, sit down], sit down together settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, 21.

cōnsilium, -li, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design measure, course of action; judgment prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war **commūni cōnsiliō**, by, or in accordance with, general action; **pūb-licō cōnsiliō**, by action of the state **cōnsilium capere** or **inire**, form or adopt a plan; **cōnsilium habere** think, consider. I, 5.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. II, 11.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], take a stand or position keep one's position, stand, form (*o, soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; (*o, ships*) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. I, 13.

cōnsobrinus, -ī, *m.*, cousin.

cōnsōlor, 1, *tr.* [sōlor, comfort], cheer comfort. I, 20.

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnspiciō, look at], sight, view; presence. I, 11.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum, *tr.* [speciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. I, 47; II, 21

cōnspicor, 1, *tr.* [speciō, look], observe, descry, perceive. I, 25.

cōnspirō, 1, *intr.* [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.

cōnstanter, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, strew], strew over, cover over. IV, 17.

cōnsternō, 1, *tr.* [cōnsternō, -ere, strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.

cōnstipō, 1, *tr.*, press or crowd closely.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). I, 3.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal*, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 6.

cōnstrātus, *see* cōnsternō.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; **cōnsuētus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.

cōnsuētus, *see* cōnsuēscō.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people*. I, 2.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsul, consul], consulship. I, 35.

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.

cōnsultō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* cōnsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.

cōnsultō, *adv.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.

cōnsultum, -i, *n.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], *result of deliberation*; decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūptum, *tr.* [sūmō, take], *take together or all at once*; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrectum, *intr.* [surgō, rise], arise together or in a body; arise.

contabulō, 1, *tr.* [tabula, board], floor over, build in stories, build up.

contāgiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contingō, touch], contact.

contāminō, 1, *tr.*, corrupt, contaminate.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover up.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, *tr.* [temnō, scorn], despise, disdain.

contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contemnō, despise], disdain, contempt. III, 17.

contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, 30.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, 1.

contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. I, 44.

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* contineō, restrain], satisfied, contented.

contextō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave or bind together, connect. IV, 17.

contigī, *see* contingō.

continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* contineō, hold together], *holding together*; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *as noun*, mainland, continent. III, 28.

continenter, *adv.* [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. I, 1.

continentia, -ae, *f.* [contineō, hold], self-restraint, moderation.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; *sē continēre*, with *abl.*, remain in, on or within. I, 1.

contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, 38.

continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, 29.

continuō, *adv.* [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 48; IV, 34.

cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.* [for conventiō; conveniō, come together], assembly, mass-meeting; address (before such a meeting).

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*: (1) *as adv.*, against him or them; on the other hand; **contrā atque**, contrary to what; (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. I, 18.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34; IV, 22.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; **ex contrāriō**, on the contrary. II, 18.

contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [contrā, against + versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.

contuli, *see cōnferō*.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. I, 14.

convalescō, -valēscere, -valui, —, *intr.* [valēscō, incept. of valeō, be well], gain health or strength, recover.

convallis, -is, *f.* [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile. III, 20.

convehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry or bring together, collect.

conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *tr. and intr.* [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; to be agreed upon; *impersonal*, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, 6.

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, 18.

convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; **signa convertere**, face about. I, 23.

Convictolitāvis, -is, *m.*, Convictolitavis (kōn-vik'itō-li-tā'vis), a Hæduan chief.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, 40.

convocō, *i.*, *tr.* [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, 16.

coorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *intr.* [co+orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, 7.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. I, 2.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, 23.

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. III, 13.

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart; cordi esse, be dear.

cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. I, 32.

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'ri-ō-sōl'i-tēz). II, 34.

corium, -ri, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (of an army) flank, wing. I, 52; II, 23.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. III, 16.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (dead) body. I, 25.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.* [con+rumpō, break], destroy, ruin.

cortex, -icis, *m., f.*, bark. II, 33.

Cōrus, -i, *m.*, the northwest wind.

cōtidianus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiō,

daily, every day, daily; usual, customary. I, 1.

cotidiē, *adv.* [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day. I, 16.

Cotta, see **Aurunculeius**.

Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, Cotuatus (kōt'ū-ā-tūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -ī, *m.*, Cotus (kō'tūs), a Haetan noble.

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness. III, 13.

Crassus, -ī, *m.* (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs lī-sīn'i-ūs krās'ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey, I, 21; (2) his son, Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's quaestors; (3) a second son, Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. I, 52; II, 34.

crātēs, -is, *f.*, wicker-work; fascine (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.) IV, 17.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp.* **crēbrior**; *sup.*, **crēberrimus** (App. 40). II, 1.

crēbrō, *adv.* [crēber, repeated], repeatedly, often.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose; entrust. II, 33.

cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. I, 4.

creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. I, 16.

crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *intr.*, grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. I, 20.

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē'tēz), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. II, 7.

Critognātus, -ī, *m.*, Critognatus (krīt'ōg-nā'tūs), a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. I, 31; II, 31.

crūdēlītās, -tātis, *f.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, 32.

crūdēlīter, *adv.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. I, 31.

crūs, **crūris**, *n.*, leg.

cubile, -is, *n.* [cubō, lie down], bed, resting-place.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, 2.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27.

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.

cum, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cumprim**, as soon as. See App. 238-242. I, 1.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, 1.

cūctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.

cūctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23.

cūctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [for **coniūctus**, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.

cuneātim, *adv.* [cuneus, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.

cuneus, -ī, *m.*, wedge, wedge-shaped mass.

cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.

cupidē, *adv.* [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, 15.

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.

cupiō, **cupere**, **cupivī**, **cupitum**, *tr.* and *intr.*, long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. I, 40; IV, 16.

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. I, 33.

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; with *gerundive* (App. 285, II, b), have, order. I, 13.

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. IV, 33.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.

custōdia, -ae, *f.* [custōs, guard], custody, guard (state of being guarded); *pl.*, guards, keepers. II, 29.

custōdiō, 4, *tr.* [custōs, guard], guard. **custōs**, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.

D.

D., *abbr. for praenomen Decimus* (dēs'-i-mūs). III, 11.

D., *sign for quingenti*, five hundred. III, 22.

d.=*diem*. I, 6.

Dāci, -ōrum, *m.*, the Daci (dā'si) or Dacians, the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.

damnō, 1, *tr.* [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, 4.

damnum, -i, *n.*, loss.

Dānuvius, -vī, *m.* (Bhī), the Danuvius (dā-nū'vī-ūs), better, the Danube.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. I, 1.

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [dē+habeō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with *inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. I, 11.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. I, 31.

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. I, 4.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, 35.

dēcortō, 1, *intr.* [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. I, 44; II, 10.

dēcēssus, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). III, 13.

Decetia, -ae, *f.*, (Ce), Decetia (dē-sē'shyā), a town of the Haedui, now Decize.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall from or off. I, 48.

decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. I, 40; II, 21.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capīō, take], entrap; deceive. I, 14.

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. I, 50.

dēcilivis, -e, *adj.* [clivus, a slope], sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as noun*, slopes. II, 18.

dēcilivitas, -tātis, *f.* [dēcilivis, sloping downward], descent.

dēcrtētum, -i, *n.* [dēcernō, decide], decision, decree, order.

dēcrtētus, *see* dēcernō.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta**, the rear gate (of the camp). II, 24.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. I, 23.

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run down hurry down. II, 19.

dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV, 25.

dedī, *see* dō.

dēdidī, *see* dēdō.

dēditicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; *as noun*, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. I, 27.

dēditō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. I, 27.

dēditus, *see* dēdō.

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; de-vote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. II, 15.

dēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ships); give in marriage. I, 44; II, 2.

dēfatigātō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. III, 19.

dēfatigō, 1, *tr.* [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I, 40.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. III, 10.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēsum, *tr.* [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. I, 11.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defence. II, 7.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defence. II, 6.

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring be-

fore, refer; bestow, confer; *dēlātus* (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. II, 4.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of dē-fetiscor*, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. I, 25.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [*faciō*, make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. II, 10.

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [*figō*, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, 17.

dēfiniō, 4, *tr.* [*finiō*, limit], mark off; define, determine.

dēfixus, *see dēfigō*.

dēfore, *fut. inf. of dēsum*.

dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [*fōrma*, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV, 2.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *tr.* [*fugiō*, flee], flee from, shun.

dēfui, *see dēsum*.

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [*iaciō*, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, 8.

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [*dēiciō*, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. II, 8.

dēinceps, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. III, 29.

dēinde, *adv.* [*dē+inde*, thence], thereupon, then, next. I, 25.

dēlātus, *see dēferō*.

dēlectō, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. IV, 2.

dēlēctus, *see dēligō*.

dēlēō, *dēlēre*, *dēlēvi*, *dēlētum*, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, 27.

dēliberō, 1, *tr.* [*libra*, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I, 7.

dēlibrō, 1, *tr.* [*liber*, bark], peel.

dēlictum, -ī, *n.*, fault, offence.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [*ligō*, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. I, 53; IV, 29.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [*legō*, choose], pick out, select, choose. I, 3.

dēlītēscō, -lītēscere, -lītui, —, *intr.* [*latēscō*, *incept. of lateō*, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. IV, 32.

dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [*mēns*, mind], madness, folly. IV, 13.

dēmetō, -metere, -messui, -messum, *tr.* [*metō*, reap], mow, reap. IV, 32.

dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [*migrō*, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. IV, 4.

dēminuō, -minuere, -minui, -minūtum, *tr.* [*minuō*, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I, 18.

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [*mittō*, send], send, thrust or let down; sink; bow; *sē dēmittere*, come or get down, descend; *sē animō dēmittere* lose courage; *dēmissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, low. I, 32.

dēmō, *dēmere*, *dēmpsi*, *dēemptum*, *tr.* [*dē+emō*, take], take down, remove.

dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [*mōnstrō*, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I, 11.

dēmōror, 1, *tr.* [*moror*, delay], hinder, delay. III, 6.

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. I, 17.

dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [*negō*, deny], refuse. I, 42.

dēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [*decem*, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, 43.

dēnique, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally at last; at least. I, 22.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set or packed thick, dense. II, 22.

dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [*nūntiō*, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. I, 36.

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [*pellō*, drive], drive from or away, ward off. III, 25.

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [*perdō*, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I, 43; III, 28.

dēpereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [*pereō*, perish; *eō*, App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [*pōnō*, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I, 14.

dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [*populor*, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. I, 11.

dēportō, 1, *tr.* [*portō*, carry], carry off or away. III, 12.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, tr. [poscō, demand], demand; call for.
depositus, see depōnō.
dēprecātor, m. [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. I, 9.
dēprecor, 1, tr. and intr. [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II, 31.
dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, tr. [prehendō (=prēndō), seize], seize, capture, catch.
dēpugnō, 1, intr. [pugnō, fight], fight decisively; contend.
dēpulsus, see depellō.
dērēctē, adv. [dērēctus, straight], straight. IV, 17.
dērēctus, -a, -um, adj. [dērīgō, put in line], straight. IV, 17.
dērīgō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, tr. [regō, direct], put in line; arrange, draw up, put in order.
dērīvō, 1, tr. [rīvus, stream], draw off.
dērogō, 1, tr. [rogō, ask], take away, withdraw.
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, intr. [scandō, climb], climb or go down, descend; have recourse (to), resort.
dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectum, tr. [secō, cut], cut away or off.
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, tr. [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; dēsertus, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. I, 45; II, 25.
dēserter, -ōris, m. [dēserō, desert], deserter.
dēsiderō, 1, tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, 2.
dēsīdia, -ae, f., inactivity, idleness.
dēsīgnō, 1, tr. [sīgnō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, 18.
dēsīlīō -sīlire, -sīlui, -sultum, intr. [sīlīō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. IV, 2.
dēsīstō, -sistere, -stītī, -stitum, intr. [sīstō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, 8.
dēspectus, see dēspiciō.
dēspectus, -ūs, m. [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. III, 14.

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f. [dēspērō, despair], despair, hopelessness.
dēspērō, 1, intr. [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; dēspērātus, *as part.*, from transitive meaning, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. I, 18.
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, 13.
dēspoliō, 1, tr. [spoliō, strip], deprive. II, 31.
dēstinō, 1, tr., fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, 14.
dēstitī, see dēsistō.
dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, tr. [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. I, 16.
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, tr. [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). I, 25.
dēsūm, deesse, dēfui, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. I, 40; II, 21.
dēsūper, adv. [super, above], from above. I, 52.
dēterior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), worse, less. I, 36.
dēterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, 17.
dētestor, 1, tr., execrate, curse.
dētīneō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hinder, detain. III, 12.
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. I, 42; II, 21.
dētrectō, 1, tr., refuse, avoid.
dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, adj. [dētrīmentum, harm], hurtful, harmful.
dētrīmentum, -ī, n. [dē+terō, rub or wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. I, 44.
dētuli, see dēferō.
dēturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], drive off, dislodge.
dēūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [ūrō, burn], burn up, destroy.

deus, -i (*nom. pl.*, **dii**; *dat. pl.*, **dīs**), *m.*, god, deity. I, 12.

deustus, *see* **deūrō**.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō**, carry], carry away, bring.

dēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.

dēvexus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēvehō**, carry away or down], sloping; *neut. pl. as noun*, slopes, hill-sides.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [**vincō**, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.

dēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō**, call], call off or away; bring.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvi, -vōtum, *tr.* [**voveō**, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus**, *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. III, 22.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. I, 52; II, 23.

dextra, -ae, *f.* [**dexter**, right; *sc. manus*], the righthand. I, 20.

di-, *see* **dīs-**.

Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Diablintes (dī'la-blīn'tēz). III, 9.

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, 31; II, 34.

dicō, 1, *tr.* [**dicō**, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.

dicō, **dicere**, **dixi**, **dictum**, *tr.*, say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; **causam dicere**, plead a case; **iūs dicere**, administer justice. I, 1.

dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dicō**, say], speaking, pleading. I, 4.

dictum, -i, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **dicō**, say], saying, remark; command; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. I, 39.

dīducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. III, 23.

dīs, -eī, *m. and f.*, day; time; in **dīs**, from day to day; **dīem ex diē**, day after day. I, 4.

dif-, *see* **dīs**.

differō, **differre**, **distuli**, **dilatūm**, *tr. and intr.* [**ferō**, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, 1.

difficilis, -e, *adj.* [**facilis**, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 6.

difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [**difficilis**, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20.

difficilter, *adv.*, with difficulty. *Comp.*, **difficilius**.

diffidō, -fidere, -fusus sum, *intr.* [**fidō**, trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confidence, despair.

diffuō, -fluere, -fluxi, —, *intr.* [**fluō**, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, 10.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**fundō**, pour], pour or spread out.

digitus, -i, *m.*, finger; *as measure of length*, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. III, 13.

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**dignus**, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. I, 43; III, 16.

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy, deserving.

dii, *see* **deus**.

dīiudicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdicō**, judge], decide.

dilēctus, *see* **diligō**.

dilēctus, -ūs, *m.* [**diligō**, choose], choice; levy.

diligenter, *adv.* [**diligēns**, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains or care. II, 5.

diligentia, -ae, *f.* [**diligēns**, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40; III, 20.

diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō**, choose], single or choose out, esteem highly, love.

dimētiōr, -mētiri, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [**mētiōr**, measure], measure out or off. II, 19.

dimicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dimicō**, fight], fight, contest.

dimicō, 1, *intr.* [**micō**, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, 21.

dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**medius**, middle], divided in the middle, half; *neut. as noun*, a half.

dīmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss;

break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, 18.

dir-, see **dis-**.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr. [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, 46.

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, 17.

Dis, Ditis, m., Dis (dis), Pluto (plū'tō), *The god of the lower world.*

dis, see **deus**.

dis- (**di-, dif-, dir-**), *insep. prefix*, apart, asunder, in different directions; *negative*, = *Eng. un-, not*.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (*especially with ab or ex*). I, 14.

disceptātor, -ōris, m., judge, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, tr. [cernō, separate], separate, keep apart.

discessus, -ūs, m. [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, 14.

disciplina, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, 40; IV, 1.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV, 17.

discō, discere, didici, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught. I, 13.

discrimen, -minis, n., danger, critical condition.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, tr., clear away.

disiciō, -icere, -lēci, -lectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. I, 25.

dispār, -paris, adj. [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.

disparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], separate.

dispergō, -speregere, -spersi, -persum, tr. [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I, 40; III, 28.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8.

disputātiō, -ōnis, f. [disputō, discuss], argument, discussion.

disputō, 1, intr. [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [disseñtiō, think differently], disagreement, dissension.

dissentiō, -sentire, -sēsi, -sēsum, intr. [sentīō, feel], differ, disagree.

disserō, -serere, -sēvi, -situm, tr. [serō, sow], sow or set at intervals.

dissimulō, 1, tr. [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. IV, 6.

dissipō, 1, tr., spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24.

dissuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, intr. [suādēō, advise], advise against.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. II, 5.

distō, -stāre, —, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. IV, 17.

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, drag], pull asunder, remove.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, tr. [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, 10.

distuli, see differō.

ditissimus, sup. of dives.

diū, adv., for a long time, long; **quam**

diū, as long as; comp., diūtius, longer, too long, any longer; sup., diūtissimē, for the longest time. I, 14.

diurnus, -a, -um, adj. [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. I, 38.

diūtīnus, -a, -um, adj. [diū, long], of long duration, long.

diūturnitās, -tātis, f. [diūturnus, long], long duration. I, 40; III, 4.

diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. [diū, long], long. I, 14.

diversus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of* divertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. II, 22.

dives, divitis, wealthy, rich. Sup., ditissimus. I, 2.

Diviciācus, -i, m., Diviciacus (div'ī-shī-ā'kus), (1), a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans. I, 3. (2) a chief of the Suessiones. II, 4.

Divicō, -ōnis, m., Divico (dīv'i-kō), an *Helvetian chieftain*. I, 13.

dividō, dividere, divisī, divisum, tr., divide, separate; **divisus, pf. part. as adj.,** divided. I, 1.

divinus, -a, -um, adj. [dīvus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, 31.

dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; **in fugam dare,** put to flight; **dare manūs,** yield; **dare negōtium, with dat.,** employ, engage, direct. (*Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb, dō, put.*) I, 3.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43; II, 5.

documentum, -ī, n. [doceō, teach], example; warning.

doleō, 2, intr., feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. I, 14.

dolor, -ōris, m. [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. I, 2.

dolus, -ī, m., craft, trick, treachery. I, 13.

domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. II, 10.

domicilium, -ī, n. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30; II, 29.

dominor, 1, intr. [dominus, master], be master, rule. II, 31.

dominus, -ī, m., master.

Domitius, -tī, m., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lū'shyūs dō-mish'yūs a-hen'ō-bār'būs), *consul* 54 B.C.

Domnotaurus, see Valerius.

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home; native country. I, 5.

dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. I, 47.

dōnum, -ī, n. [dō, give], present, gift.

dorsum, -ī, n., back; ridge.

dōs, dōtis, f. [dō, give], a marriage portion, dowry.

Druidēs, -um, m., the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.

Dūbis, -is, m. (Cf.), the (river) Dubis (dū'bis), now the Doubs. I, 38.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f. [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.

dubitō, 1, intr. [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.

ducentī, -ae, -a, (CC), card. num. adj. [duo, two+centum, hundred], two hundred. I, 2.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.

ductus, -ūs, m. [dūcō, lead], leading, command.

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.

Dumnorix, -īgis, m., Dumnorix (dūm'nō-rīks), a *Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus*. I, 3.

duo, duae, duo, (App. 49), card. num. adj., two. I, 6.

duodecim, card. num. adj. [duo, two+decem, ten], twelve. I, 5.

duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. II, 23.

duodēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.

duodēvigintī, card. num. adj. [duo, two+dē, from+vigintī, twenty], eighteen. I, 23.

duplex, -plicis, adj. [duo, two+plicō, fold], twofold, double. II, 29.

duplicō, 1, tr. [duplex, double], double, increase. IV, 36.

dūritia, -ae, f. [dūrus, hard], hardness, hardship.

dūrō, 1, tr. [dūrus, hard], make hardy, harden.

Dūrocortorum, -ī, n. (Bf), Durocortorum (dū'rō cōr'tō-rūm), the capital of the Remi, now Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, 48.

Dūrus, -ī, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīn'tus lā-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

dux, ducis, m. [dūcō, lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.

E

ē (only before consonants) **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; ūnā ex parte, on one side; (2) of time, from, after, since; ex itinere, immediately after the march; (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; ē regiōne, opposite.* I, 2.
ēā, *adv.* [=ēā viā], by that way, there.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ēb'ū-rō'nēs). II, 4.

Ebuovicēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Ebuovices (aw-lēr'sī ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēs). III, 17.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, —, *tr.* [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, 8.

ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. I, 31.

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docui, -doctum, *tr.* [doceō, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, 18.

ēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). I, 10.

effeminō, 1, *tr.* [ex+fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. I, 1.

effercio, -fercīre, —, -fertum, *tr.*, fill completely, stop up.

effero, efferre, extuli, elatum, *tr.* [ex+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, 5.

efficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex+faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, 38; II, 5.

effodio, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum, *tr.* [ex+fodiō, dig], dig out.

effugio, -fugere, -fūgi, —, *tr. and intr.* [ex+fugio, flee], flee from or away, escape. IV, 35.

egēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* egeō, want], in want, needy, destitute.

egeō, egēre, egui, —, *intr.*, need, want, lack, be without or destitute.

egestās, -tātis, *f.* [egeō, want], poverty.

ēgi, *pf. of* agō.

ego, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.* I; *pl.*, nōs, we, us, etc. I, 40; II, 9.

egomet, *emphatic for* ego, I myself, I for my part.

egredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. I, 27.

ēgregiē, *adv.* [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, 29.

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē+grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, 19.

ēgressus, *see* ēgredior.

ēgressus, -ūs, *m.* [ēgredior, step out], a landing, landing place.

ēicio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up; sē ēicere, rush out, sally. IV, 7.

eius modi, of such a sort or kind, such. III, 3.

ēlābor, -lābi, -lāpsus sum, *intr.* [lābor, slip], slip away, escape.

ēlātus, *see* efferō.

Elaver, -eris, *n.* (Ce), the river Elaver (ēl'ā-vēr), now the Allier.

ēlēctus, *see* eligō.

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.

Eleuteti, -ōrum, *m.* (Dd), the Eleuteti (ē-lū'tē-ti).

ēlicio, -dere, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, draw or entice out, lure forth.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; **ēlēctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (men, etc.). II, 4.

Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēs). III, 27.

ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. I, 31.

ēmineō, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, project.

ēminus, *adv.* [manus, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, 25.

emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. I, 16.

ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum, *intr.* [nāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. II, 17.

enim, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact, however. I, 14.

ēnūtiō, 1, *tr.* [nūtiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.

eō, ire, iī (ivī), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.

eō, *adv.* [old dative of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). I, 25.

eō, *abl. of is.*

eōdem, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). I, 4.

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.

ephippium, -pi, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. IV, 2.

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

Eporēdorix, -igis, *m.*, Eporedorix (ēp'ō-rēd'ō-rīks), the name of two Haeduan leaders.

epulae, -ārum, *f.*, feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). I, 15.

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. I, 22.

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, Eratosthenes (ēr'a-tōs'thē-nēs), a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.

ērēctus, *see* ērigō.

ēreptus, *see* ēripiō.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [re-gō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. III, 13.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4.

errō, 1, *intr.*, wander; err, be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *intr.* [rumpō, break], break forth, sally. III, 5.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ērumpō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, 33.

essedārius, -rī, *m.* [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24.

essedum, -ī, *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. IV, 32.

Esuvii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū'vī-i). II, 34.

et, *conj.*, and; also, too, even; et . . . et, both . . . and. I, 1.

etiam, *conj.* and also, also, even, yet. I, 1.

etsi, *conj.* [et+si, if], even if, although. I, 46; III, 24.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [vādō, go], escape. III, 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, 25.

ēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], turn out, result. IV, 25.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, 22.

ēvocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvocātus, *pf. part. as noun*, reenlisted veteran. III, 20.

ēvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. III, 28.

ex, *see* ē.

exāctus, *see* exigō.

exagitō, 1, *tr.* [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. II, 29.

exāminō, 1, weigh.

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [anima, breath], deprive

of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, 23.

exārdescō, -ārdescere, -ārsī, -ārsum, intr. [ārdescō, *incept. of* ārdēō, blaze], take fire; be inflamed or enraged.

exaudiō, 4, tr. [audiō, hear], hear (*from a distance*). II, 11.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.

excellō, -cellere, —, —, intr., excel, surpass.

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [excellō, surpass], high.

exceptō, 1, tr. [*freq. of* excipio, catch], take hold of, catch.

excidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [caedō, cut], hew away or down.

excipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [capiō, take]; *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. I, 52; III, 5.

excitō, 1, tr. [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). III, 10.

excludō, -cludere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.

excogitō, 1, tr. [cōgitō, think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.

excruciō, 1, tr. [cruciō, torture; **crux**, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.

excubitor, -ōris, m. [excubō, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.

excubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, intr. [cubō, lie], lie outside; keep guard.

exculcō, 1, tr., trample, tread down.

excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sally, sortie. II, 30.

excūsatiō, -ōnis, f. [excūsō, excuse], excuse, apology.

excūsō, 1, tr. [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.

exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent. I, 8.

exeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go from or out, depart from, leave. I, 2.

exerceō, 2, tr., practice, train, exercise. I, 48.

exercitatio, -ōnis, f. [exercitō, *freq. of* exerceō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.

exercitatus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of* exercitō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36; II, 20.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. I, 3.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hausī, -haustum, tr. [hauriō, draw], draw out; empty.

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [agō, drive], finish, pass. III, 28.

exiguē, adv. [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.

exiguitas, -tātis, f. [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, short, small, meager, limited. IV, 20.

eximius, -a, -um, adj. [eximō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.

existimatio, -ōnis, f. [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.

existimō, 1, tr. [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6.

exitus, -ūs, m. [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.

expediō, 4, tr. [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.

expeditiō, -ōnis, f. [expediō, arrange], campaign, enterprise, expedition.

expeditus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of* expediō, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; *as noun*, a light armed soldier. I, 6.

expellō, -pellere, -pullī, -pulsum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. II, 4.

experior, -periri, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.

expio, 1, tr., atone for, expiate; avenge.

expleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, tr. [pleō, fill], fill out or up; finish, complete.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I, 12.

explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part of* explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III, 18.

explōrō, 1, *tr.*, search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II, 4.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV, 23.

exportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out or away. IV, 18.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, *tr.* [poscō, demand], entreat, demand.

exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, 32.

expugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, 11.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. I, 41; III, 3.

exsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I, 4.

exserō, -ere, -ui, -tum, *tr.*, thrust or put out; uncover.

existō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III, 15.

expectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I, 11.

exspoliō, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], rob.

extinguō, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum, *tr.*, put out, quench; destroy.

extō, -stāre, -stiti, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.

extruō, -struere, -struxi, -structum, *tr.* [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. II, 30.

exsul, -sulis, *m. and f.*, an exile.

exterior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* exterus. App. 44], outer, exterior.

exterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten],

frighten outright, strike with terror, scare.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, —, *tr.* [timēscō, *incept. of* timeō, fear], dread. III, 13.

extorqueō, -torquere, -torsī, -tortum, *tr.* [torqueō, twist], wrest or force from, extort.

extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, 10.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw out; waste.

extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; **extrēmī** (*añ noun*), the rear; **ad extrēmum**, at last, at the end; as a last resort. I, 1.

extrūdō, -trudere, -trūsi, -trusum, *tr.* [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. III, 12.

extuli, *see* efferō.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -utum, *tr.*, draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. III, 6.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn up. I, 5.

F.

faber, -bri, *m.*, workman, mechanic; carpenter.

Fabius, -bi, *m.* (1) Gaius Fabius (gā'yūs fā'bī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Lucius Fabius (lū'shyūs fā'bī-ūs), a centurion of the 8th legion. (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn'būs fā'bī-ūs māk'si-mūs), victor over the Gauls 121 B.C. I, 45.

facile, *adv.* [facilis, easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, facilius; *sup.*, facillimē (App. 41). I, 2.

facilis, -e, *adj.* [faciō, do], easy. I, 6.

facinus -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I, 40; III, 9.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, make, construct, form, do, execute (*commands, etc.*); give (*opportunity, etc.*); *with ut*, bring about, cause; *intr.*, do, act. *Pass.*, fiō, fieri, factus sum (App. 83), *with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally*, result, happen, come to pass. I, 2.

factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [faciō, make], party, faction. I, 31.

factum, -i, *n.* [*pf. part. of faciō, half noun, half participle*], act, exploit, deed. III, 14.

factus, *see* faciō.

facultās, -tātis, *f.* [*old adj., facul*=facilis, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. I, 7.

fāgus, -i, *f.*, beech tree or timber.

fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, 10.

falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of fallō*, deceive], false.

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook; hook (*for pulling down walls*). III, 14.

fāma, -ae, *f.* [fāri, to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. I, 28.

familia, -ae, *f.*, household (*including slaves*); retinue (*including all dependents*); family. I, 4.

familiāris, -e, *adj.* [familia, household], personal, private; *as noun*, intimate friend; rēs, personal property, estate. I, 18.

familiāritās, -tātis, *f.* [familiāris, intimate], intimacy.

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, 50.

fastigātē, *adv.* [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. IV, 17.

fastigātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sloping. II, 8.

fastigium, -gī, *n.*, the top of a gable; elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope.

fātum, -i, *n.* [fāri, to speak], fate, lot. I, 39.

faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautum, *intr.*, favor. I, 18.

fax, facis, *f.*, firebrand, torch.

fēlicitās, -tātis, *f.* [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, 40.

fēliciter, *adv.* [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. IV, 25.

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, female, woman.

femur, -inis, *n.*, the thigh.

fera, -ae, *f.* [*fem. of ferus*, wild], wild animal.

ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. II, 4.

ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, 1.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (App. 81), *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter** or **molestē ferre**, be annoyed or angry at; *pass. (sometimes) rush: intr. almost=verb to be.* I, 13.

ferrāmentum, -i, *n.* [ferrum, iron], an iron tool or implement.

ferrāria, -ae, *f.* [ferrum, iron], an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. III, 13.

ferrum, -i, *n.*, iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear-point. I, 25.

fertilis, -e, *adj.* [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive.

fertilitās, -tātis, *f.* [fertilis, productive], productiveness. II, 4.

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. I, 31; II, 4.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [ferveō, be red hot+faciō, make], heat, melt.

fervēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of ferveō*, be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.

fibula, -ae, *f.*, clasp; brace, fastening. IV, 17.

fictus, *see* fingō.

fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, 21.

fidēs, -ei, *f.* [fidō, confide], faith, confidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere**, convince or give a pledge; **fidem sequi**, surrender. I, 3.

fiducia, -ae, *f.* [fidō, confide], confidence, trust, reliance.

figūra, -ae, *f.* [fingō, form], form, shape, figure. IV, 25.

filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter. I, 3.

filius, -ii, *m.*, son. I, 3.

fingō, fingere, finxi, factum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. I, 39; IV, 5.

finiō, 4, *tr.* [finis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. IV, 16.

finis, -is, *m.*, boundary, limit, border,

- end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. I, 1.
- finitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fīnis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl.* as noun, neighbors. I, 2.
- fiō**, fierī, factus sum, *see* faciō.
- firmiter**, *adv.* [firmus, strong], firmly. IV, 26.
- firmitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13.
- firmō**, 1, *tr.* [firmus, strong], strengthen, fortify.
- firmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3.
- fistūca**, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. IV, 17.
- Flaccus**, *see* Valerius.
- flāgitō**, 1, *tr.*, demand. I, 16.
- flamma**, -ae, *f.*, fire, blaze.
- flectō**, flectere, flexī, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. IV, 33.
- flēō**, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20.
- flētus**, -ūs, *m.* [flēō, weep], weeping, lamentation. I, 32.
- flō**, 1, *intr.*, blow.
- flōrēs**, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, 30; IV, 3.
- flōs**, flōris, *m.*, blossom, flower.
- flūctus**, -ūs, *m.* [fluō, flow], flood, billow, wave. III, 13.
- flūmen**, -inis, *n.* [fluō, flow], river, stream. I, 1.
- fluō**, fluere, fluxī, —, *intr.*, flow, run. I, 6.
- fodiō**, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, dig.
- foedus**, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.
- forem** = essem; *see* sum.
- fore** = futūrus esse; *see* sum.
- foris**, *adv.*, out of doors, without.
- fōrma**, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. III, 14.
- fors**, fortis, *f.*, chance; forte, *abl.* as *adv.*, by chance, perchance. II, 21.
- fortis**, -e, *adj.*, strong, valiant, brave. I, 1.
- fortiter**, *adv.* [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11.
- fortitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. I, 2.
- fortuitō**, *adv.* [fors, chance], by chance.
- fortūna**, -ae, *f.* [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11.
- fortūnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fortūna, fortune], prosperous, fortunate.
- forum**, -ī, *n.*, public square, market place.
- fossa**, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of* fodiō, dig], trench, ditch. I, 8.
- fovea**, -ae, *f.*, pitfall.
- frangō**, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, 31; IV, 29.
- frāter**, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, 3.
- frāternus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20.
- fraus**, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.
- fremitus**, -ūs, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. II, 24.
- frequēns**, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. IV, 11.
- frētus**, -al, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. III, 21.
- frigidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. IV, 1.
- frigus**, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, frīgora, cold seasons. I, 16.
- frōns**, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. II, 8.
- frūctuōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūctus, fruit], fruitful, productive. I, 30.
- frūctus**, -ūs, *m.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.
- frūmentārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; *res* frūmentāria, supply of grain, provisions. I, 10.
- frūmentātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [frūmentor, get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.
- frūmentor**, 1, *intr.* [frūmentum, grain], get grain, forage. IV, 9.
- frūmentum**, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. I, 3.
- fruor**, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.*, enjoy. III, 22.
- frūstrā**, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, 4.
- frūx**, -gis, *f.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. I, 28.

Fufius, *see* Cita.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; in *fugam* conicere or dare, put to flight. I, 11.

fugio, *fugere*, *fūgi*, *fugitum*, *tr.* and *intr.* [fuga, flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. I, 53; II, 11.

fugitivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugio, flee], fleeing; as *noun*, runaway slave. I, 23.

fugō, 1, *tr.* [fuga, flight], put to flight, rout.

fūmō, 1, *intr.* [fūmus, smoke], smoke.

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. II, 7.

funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. IV, 25.

funditor, -ōris, *m.* [funda, sling], slinger. II, 7.

fundō, *fundere*, *fūdī*, *fūsum*, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, 6.

funēbris, -e, *adj.* [fūnus, funeral], of a funeral; *n. pl. as noun*, funeral rites.

fungor, *fungī*, *functus sum*, *intr.*, perform, execute, discharge.

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. III, 13.

fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral.

furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. I, 40; II, 3.

fūrtum, -ī, *n.*, theft.

fūsilis, -e, *adj.* [fundō, pour], liquid, molten.

futūrus, *see* sum.

G.

Gabali, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Gabali (gab'a-li).

Gabinus, -nī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinus (aw'-i-us gab-in'i-ūs), consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. I, 6.

gaesum, -ī, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). III, 4.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, (1) Galba (gāl'ba), a king of the Suesstones. II, 4. (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sūlpish'yūs gāl'ba), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. III, 1.

galea, -ae, *f.*, a leather helmet. II, 21.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (gāl'i-a), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. *See* map. I, 1.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22.

gallina, -ae, *f.*, hen.

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *pl. as noun*, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. I, 1.

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs), an officer in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Garumna, -ae, *m.* (DEcd), the Garumna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. I, 1.

Garumni, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (ga-rūm'nī). III, 27.

Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā-tēz). III, 27.

gaudeō, *gaudēre*, *gāvisus sum* (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. IV, 13.

Geldumni, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Geldumni (jē'lādūm'nī or jē-dūm'nī).

Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jēn'a-va), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. I, 6.

gener, -eri, *m.*, son-in-law.

generatim, *adv.* [genus, tribe], by tribes. I, 51.

gēns, *gentis*, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28.

genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, 48; III, 14.

Gergovia, -ae, *f.* (De), Gergovia (jēr-gō'vī-a), the chief town of the Arverni.

Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (jēr-mā'nī), better Germans. I, 1.

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jēr-mā'nī-a), better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine. IV, 4.

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, 16.

gerō, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*, *tr.*, bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. I, 1.

gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword. I, 25.

glāns, *glandis*, *f.*, acorn; ball, slug of lead.

glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod of earth; lump.

glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I, 2.

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I, 14.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Gobannitiō (gōb'a-nish'yō), an Arvernian chief.

Gorgobina, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Gorgobina (gōrgōb'i-na), a city of the Boii after they had settled in the territory of the Haedui.

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl.* as noun, the Greeks. I, 29.

Graiocelli, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graiocelli (grā-yōs'ē-li). I, 10.

grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. I, 43.

grātia, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām habēre, to feel grateful; grātiām referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiām referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiām inire, to gain favor; grātiā following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. I, 9.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, 53.

grātulor, 1, *intr.* [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I, 50.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I, 44.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). I, 20.

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV, 3.

graviter, *adv.* [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take to heart, be annoyed or vexed (at); graviter premere, press hard. I, 14.

gravor, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. I, 35.

Grudii, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Grudii (grū'di-i).

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, steersman, pilot. III, 9.

gustō, 1, *tr.*, taste, eat.

H.

habēō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with orātiōnem); in animō habēre, intend; ratiōnem habēre, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an ut clause); cōnsilium habēre, form a plan; in numerō hostium habēre, consider as enemies; aliter sē habēre, be otherwise or different; for habēre with *pf. pass. part.*, e.g. vectigālia redēpta habēre, see App. 286, b. I, 2.

Haedui, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i), Haeduan; as noun, a Haeduan; *pl.* the Haedui, possibly Haeduans, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. I, 3.

haesitō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of haerēō, stick], stick or cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -ī, *m.*, hook, barb.

harpagō, -ōnis, *m.*, grappling hook.

Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (hā-ru'dēz), a German tribe. I, 31.

haud, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Helvētius], of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyi), Helvetian; as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.* the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. I, 1.

Helvii, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Helvii (hēl-vi-i).

Hercynia, -ae, *f.* (Bhi), Hercynia (hēr-sin'i-a), the Hercynian forest.

hērēditās, -tātis, *f.* [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

hīberna, -ōrum, *n.* [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Hibernia (hī-bēr'ni-a), better, Ireland.

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman or thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* hōc, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparatives); hīc . . . ille, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. I, 1.

hic, *adv.*, here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned), there, in that place;

(of an incident just mentioned), then, at this time. IV, 19.

hiemō, *i*, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. I, 10.

hiems, *-mis*, *f.*, winter time, winter. III, 7.

hinc, *adv.*, from that point or place, hence.

Hispania, *-ae*, *f.* (Eabed), Hispania (hispā/nī-a), better, Spain. I, 1.

Hispanus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, Spanish.

homo, *-inis*, *m.*, human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in *pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. I, 2.

honestus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [honēs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53.

honorificus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [honōs, honor+faciō, make], conferring honor. I, 43.

honōs, *-ōris*, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, 18.

hōra, *-ae*, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night, (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* I, 26.

horreō, *-ēre*, *-ui*, —, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. I, 32.

horribilis, *-e*, *adj.* [horreō, dread], dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.

hortor, *i*, *tr.*, exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. I, 19.

hospes, *-itis*, *m., f.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. I, 53.

hospitium, *-ti*, *n.* [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31.

hostis, *-is*, *m., f.*, (public) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. I, 11.

hūc, *adv.* [old form for hōc from hic], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, 38.

hūmānitās, *-tātis*, *f.* [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, 1.

hūmānus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, 3.

humilis, *-e*, *adj.* [humus, the ground],

on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. IV, 8.

humilitās, *-tātis*, *f.* [humilis, low], humility, lowness; weakness.

I.

I, *sign for ūnus*, one.

iaceō, **iacere**, **iacul**, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. II, 27.

iaciō, **iacere**, **lēci**, **iactum**, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. II, 6.

iactō, *i*, *tr.* [freq. of iaciō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.

iactūra, *-ae*, *f.* [iaciō, throw], loss, sacrifice.

iaculum, *-ī*, *n.* [iaciō, throw], javelin, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. I, 5.

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. I, 10.

iccius, *-cī*, *m.*, Icclius (ik' shyūs), a chief of the Remi. II, 3.

ictus, *-ūs*, *m.*, stroke, blow. I, 25.

īd., *abbr. for īdūs*.

īdcircō, *adv.*, therefore.

īdem, **eadem**, **īdem** (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [is, this, that], the same; this very; īdem atque, the same as. I, 3.

īdentīdem, *adv.* [īdem, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.

īdōneus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.

īdūs, *-uum*, *f., pl.*, the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months. I, 7.

ignis, *-is*, *m.*, fire. I, 4.

ignōbilis, *-e*, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōbilis, well known], ignoble, unknown.

ignōminia, *-ae*, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

ignōrō, *i*, *tr.* [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.

ignōscō, *-nōscere*, *-nōvī*, *-nōtum*, *intr.* [in-+(g)nōscēns, knowing; nōscō], forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.

ignōtus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus, known; nōscō, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24.

illātus, *see inferō*.

ille, illa, illud, *gen. illius, dat. illi* (App. 56), *dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic)*, that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; **hic**. . . **ille**, the latter . . . the former, *see* App. 170, a. I, 3.

illic, *adv. [ille, that]*, in that place, there. I, 18.

illigō, 1, *tr. [ligō, bind]*, attach, hold or bind together. IV, 17.

illō, *adv. [old dat. of ille]*, thither, to that place, there (=thither). IV, 11.

illūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, illustrious.

Illyricum, -i, *n.*, Illyricum (i-līr'i-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. II, 35.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, *f.*, weakness.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. III, 29.

imitor, 1, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. IV, 1.

immineō, -minēre, —, —, *intr.*, project, hang over; threaten, menace.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr. [in+mittō, send]*, send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; **trabibus immissis**, beams being placed between. IV, 17.

immolō, 1, *tr.*, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, *adj. [in+mortālis, mortal]*, not mortal, immortal. I, 12.

immūnis, -e, *adj. [in+mūnus, burden]*, unburdened, *by taxes, requirements of service, etc.*

imparātus, -a, -um, *adj. [in+parātus, prepared; parō, prepare]*, unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -i, *n. [impediō, hinder]*, hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train (*including the draught animals*). I, 24.

impediō, 4, *tr. [in+pēs, foot]*, entangle the feet, hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.

impeditus, -a, -um, *adj. [pf. part. of impediō, hinder]*, hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or bur-

dened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. I, 12.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr. [in+pellō, drive]*, drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40; II, 14.

impendeō, -pendere, —, —, *intr. [in+pendeō, hang]*, overhang, impend. I, 6.

impēsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; *with pretium*, great. IV, 2.

imperātor, -ōris, *m. [imperō, command]*, commander-in-chief, general. I, 40; II, 25.

imperātum, -i, *n. [imperō, command]*, command, order. II, 3.

imperitus, -a, -um, *adj. [in+perītus, experienced]*, inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40; IV, 22.

imperium, -rī, *n. [imperō, command]*, command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2.

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr. [in+parō, procure]*, demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. I, 7.

impetrō, 1, *tr. [in+patrō, accomplish]*, obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*); **impetrāre ā (ab)**, gain permission from, persuade. I, 9.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22.

impius, -a, -uri, *adj. [in+pius, pious]*, wicked.

implicō, 1, *tr. [in+plicō, fold]*, interlace, interweave.

implōrō, 1, *tr. [in+plōrō, call out]*, beseech, entreat, implore. I, 31.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr. [in+pōnō, place]*, place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. I, 42.

importō, 1, *tr. [in+portō, carry]*, carry or bring in, import. I, 1.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj. [in+probus, good]*, unprincipled. I, 17.

imprōvisō, *adv. [imprōvisus, unforeseen]*, unexpectedly, without warning. I, 13.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, *adj. [in+prōvi-*

- sus**, foreseen; **prōvideō**, unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly. II, 3.
- imprūdēns**, -entis, *adj.* [**in**-+**prūdēns**, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III, 29.
- imprudentia**, -ae, *f.* [**imprūdēns**, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, 27.
- impūbēs**, -eris, *adj.* [**in**-+**pūbēs**, mature], immature; unmarried, chaste.
- impugnō**, 1, *tr.* [**in**-+**pugnō**, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I, 44; III, 26.
- impulsus**, *see* **impellō**.
- impulsus**, -ūs, *m.* [**impellō**, impel], impulse, instigation.
- impūne**, *adv.* [**in**-+**poena**, punishment], without punishment. I, 14.
- impūnitās**, -tātis, *f.* [**in**-+**poena**, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. I, 14.
- imus**, *sup. of inferus*.
- in**-, *negative prefix*.
- in**, *prep. with acc. and abl.* With *acc.* (1) *of motion*, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; *in*, among; towards, for, against; at; upon; (2) *of time*, till, into; for; on, at; (3) *other uses*, *in*, in respect to, for, under, over, on; **in diēs**, from day to day; **in fugam concitere**, put to flight; **in Caesarem incidere**, meet with Caesar; **summum in cruciātum venire**, be severely punished. With *abl.* (1) *of rest or motion within a place*, *in*, among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) *of time*, *in*, during, in the course of; on; (3) *other uses*, *in*, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; **in Ararī**, over the Arar; **in eō**, in his case; **in ancoris**, at anchor; **in opere esse**, be engaged in the work. I, 1.
- inānis**, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain, idle.
- incautē**, *adv.* [**incautus**, incautious], incautiously, unwarily.
- incautus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**cautus**, cautious; **caveō**, be cautious], incautious, unwary.
- incendium**, -di, *n.* [**incendō**, burn], fire, burning, conflagration.
- incendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *tr.* [*cf.* **candēō**, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, 5.
- incertus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**certus**, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, 5.
- incidō**, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [**ca**-**dō**, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. I, 53; II, 14.
- incidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [**cae**-**dō**, cut], cut into. II, 17.
- incipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [**cap**iō, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, 2.
- incitō**, 1, *tr.* [**citō**, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; **cursū incitātō**, at full speed. I, 4.
- incognitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**cogni**-tus, known; **cognōscō**, learn], unknown. IV, 20.
- incolō**, -colere, -colui, —, *tr. and intr.* [**colō**, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I, 1.
- incolumis**, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. I, 53; III, 6.
- incommodē**, *adv.* [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.
- incommodum**, -i, *n.* [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, 13.
- incrēdibilis**, -e, *adj.* [**in**-+**crēdibilis**, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, 12.
- increpitō**, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **increpō**, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, 15.
- incumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [*cf.* **cubō**, lie], recline upon; devote one's self to.
- incursiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**incurrō**, rush into or upon], invasion; onset, attack.
- incursus**, -ūs, *m.* [**incurrō**, rush into or upon], attack. II, 20.
- incūsō**, 1, *tr.* [**causa**, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I, 40; II, 15.

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.

indiciūm, -ci, *n.* [**indicō**, disclose], disclosure, information; **per indicium**, through informers. I, 4.

indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.* [**dicō**, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 36.

indictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**dictus**, *pf. part. of dicō*, say], unsaid; **causā indictā**, without a trial.

indignē, *adv.* [**indignus**, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.

indignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**indignus**, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.

indignor, *i. intr.* [**indignus**, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.

indignus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**dignus**, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.

indiligēns, -entis, *adj.* [**in**-+**diligēns**, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.

indiligenter, *adv.* [**indiligēns**, careless], carelessly. II, 33.

indiligentia, -ae, *f.* [**indiligēns**, careless], negligence.

inducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, 2.

indulgentia, -ae, *f.* [**indulgeō**, indulge], forbearance, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. I, 40.

induō, -duere, -dūi, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on; **sē induere**, be impaled or pierced. II, 21.

industriē, *adv.* [**industrius**, diligent], diligently.

indūtia, -ārum, *f.*, truce. IV, 12.

Indutiomarus, -i, *m.*, Indutiomarus (**in**-dū^hshyō-mā^rrūs), a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; **inire cōsiliūm**, form; **inire ratiōnem**, make an estimate, decide; **inire grātiām**, gain; **inire numerum**, enumerate. II, 2.

inermis, -e, *adj.* [**in**-+**arma**, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [**in**-+**ars**, skill], with-

out skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, 2.

infāmia, -ae, *f.* [**in**-+**fāma**, renown], dishonor, ill repute.

infāns, -antis, *adj.* [**in**-+**fāns**, speaking], not speaking; *as noun*, infant.

infectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**factus**, done; **faciō**, do], not done, unaecomplished, unfinished.

inferior, -ius, *comp. of inferus*.

inferō, **inferre**, **intulī**, **illātum**, *tr.* [**ferō**, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; **in equum inferre**, mount on a horse; **causā illātā**, making an excuse; **signa inferre**, advance the standards, attack. I, 2.

inferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower; inferior; **ab inferiōre parte**, below, down stream; *sup.*, **infimus** or **imus**, lowest, last; *with collis*, the base of; **ad infimum**, **ab infimō**, at the bottom. I, 1.

infestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; **infestis signis**, with standards in battle array.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō**, make], stain.

infidelis, -e, *adj.* [**in**-+**fidēlis**, faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.

infigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum [**figō**, fix], *tr.*, fasten in.

infimus, *sup. of inferus*.

ininitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**finitus**, ended; **finiō**, limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.

infirmatās, -tātis, *f.* [**infirmus**, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. IV, 5.

infirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**-+**firmus**, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, 24.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [**flectō**, bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. I, 25.

influo, -fluere, -fluxī, —, *intr.* [**fluō**, flow], flow into, empty into. I, 8.

infodiō, -fodere, -fodi, -fossūm, *tr.* [**fodiō**, dig], dig or ~~bury~~ into.

infrā, *adv.* [**inferus**, below], below; *prep. with acc.*, below, smaller than. IV, 36.

ingēns, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. I, 39; IV, 10.

ingrātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+grātus, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, go], go or come into, enter. II, 4.

iniciō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum, tr. [laciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. I, 46; IV, 17.

inimicitia, -ae, f. [inimicus, unfriendly], enmity.

inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, an enemy (*personal*), rival, to be distinguished from *hostis*, a public enemy. I, 7.

iniquitās, -tātis, f. [iniquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.

iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 44; II, 10.

initium, -ti, n. [ineō, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; edge, of a country, borders. I, 1.

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr. [iungō, join], join to; impose.

inīria, -ae, f. [in-+iūs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.

iniussū, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m. [lubeō, order], without command or order. I, 19.

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, intr. [nāscor, be born], be born in, be engendered; **innātus, pf. part. as adj.**, inborn, natural.

innitor, -nitī, -nixus sum, intr. [nitō, rest on], lean upon. II, 27.

innocēns, -entis, adj. [in-+nocēns, injurious], not injurious; innocent.

innocentia, -ae, f. [innocēns, innocent], integrity. I, 40.

inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. I, 27.

inopināns, -antis, adj. [in-+opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. I, 12.

inquam, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say. IV, 25.

insciēns, -entis, adj. [in-+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, 19.

inscientia, -ae, f. [Insciēns, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

inscius, -a, -um, adj. [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.

insequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. I, 15.

inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, tr., insert, thrust in. III, 14.

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. [sedeō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, 13.

insidior, i, intr. [insidiae, ambush], lie in ambush.

insignis, -e, adj. [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. I, 12.

insiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultum, tr. [saliō, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

insimulō, i, tr., charge, blame, accuse.

insinuō, i, tr. [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.

insistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, tr. and intr. [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; *with ratiōnem*, adopt, use. II, 27.

insolenter, adv. [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.

inspectō, i, tr. [spectō, look], look at, view.

instabilis, -e, adj. [in-+stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, 23.

instar, n., indecl., likeness; *with gen.*, like. II, 17.

instigō, i, tr., urge on, incite.

instituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, tr. and intr. [statuō, set up], set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **institutus, pf. part. as adj.**,

- usual, customary; finished, *in addition to definitions above*. I, 14.
- institutum**, -i, *n.* [institūō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. I, 1.
- instō**, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. I, 16.
- instrūmentum**, -i, *n.* [instruō, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.
- instruere**, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. I, 22.
- insuefactus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [suēscō, become accustomed, faciō, make], accustomed, trained. IV, 24.
- insuetus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island. III, 9.
- insuper**, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, 17.
- integer**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; **rē integrā**, before anything was done. III, 4.
- integō**, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover over; protect.
- intellegō**, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [inter+legō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, 10.
- intendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; **intentus**, *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, 22.
- inter**, *prep.* with *acc.* (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among, between: (2) of time, during, within, for: (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with: (4) with reflex, pron., of reciprocal action, (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, **inter sē differunt**, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, **cohortatī inter sē**, encouraging one another. I, 1.
- intercēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go or come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. I, 7.
- intercipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept, cut off. II, 27.
- intercludō**, -cludere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with *itinerā*, block. I, 23.
- interdicō**, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, *intr.* [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; **aquā atque ignī interdicerere**, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. I, 46.
- interdiū**, *adv.* [diēs, day], during the day, by day. I, 8.
- interdum**, *adv.* [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, 14.
- intereā**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. I, 8.
- intereō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], perish, die.
- interesse**, *see intersum*.
- interficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. I, 12.
- intericiō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; **interiectus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between, intervening, interspersed; **mediocri interiectō spatiō**, not far away. II, 17.
- interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. I, 16.
- interior**, -ius, *adj.* (App. 43), interior, inner; as *noun*, **interiōrēs**, inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.
- interitus**, -ūs, *m.* [intereō, die], destruction, death.
- intermittō**, -mittere, -misī, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. I, 26.
- interneciō**, -ōnis, *f.* [necō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, 13.
- interpellō**, *tr.*, interrupt, hinder. I, 44.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; *fīdem interpōnere*, pledge. I, 42; IV, 9.

interpres, -etis, m., f., interpreter; mediator. I, 19.

interpretor, 1, tr. [interpres, interpreter], interpret, explain.

interrogō, 1, tr. [rogō, ask], ask, question.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off or through; destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, tr. [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II, 9.

intersum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present *at*, take part *in*; *impers.*, **interest**, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; **magnī interest**, it is of great importance. I, 15.

intervallum, -ī, n. [vāllus, palisade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. I, 22.

intervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venīō, come], come between, come up; arrive.

interventus, -ūs, m. [intervenīō, come between], coming; aid. III, 15.

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [texō, weave], weave in or together. II, 33.

intoleranter, adv., intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

intrā, prep. with acc. [inter, between], within, inside; into. I, 32; II, 4.

intritus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+tritus, worn], unwearied. III, 26.

intrō, 1, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. II, 17.

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [intrō, within+ducō, lead], lead or bring into. II, 5.

intreeō, -īre, -īl-, -itum, intr. [intrō, within+eō, go. App. 84], go or come in, enter.

introitus, -ūs, m. [intreeō, go in], entrance, approach.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [intrō, within+mittō, send], send or let in. II, 33.

intrōrsus, adv. [intrō, within+versus, *pf. part.* of vertō, turn], within, on the inside. II, 18.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [intrō, within+rumpō, break], break in or through.

intueor, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. I, 32.

intus, adv., within, on the inside.

inūsītātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+ūsītātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, 31.

inūtilis, -e, adj. [in-+ūtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II, 16.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. [veniō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I, 53; II, 16.

inventor, -ōris, m. [inveniō, find], inventor, author.

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvi, -veterātum, intr., grow old; become established. II, 1.

invictus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I, 36.

invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. II, 31.

invidia, -ae, f. [invidēō, envy], envy, hatred.

inviolātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III, 9.

invītō, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. I, 35; IV, 6.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; sē invītō, against his will. I, 8.

Iovis, see Iuppiter.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59) *intensive pron.*, self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; as *adj.*, very; *in gen.*, his, her, its, or their own. I, 1.

irācundia, -ae, f. [irācundus, irritable], irritability, anger.

iracundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ira, anger], irritable. I, 31.

irrideō, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [in+rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.

irridiculē, *adv.* [in+ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. I, 42.

irrupō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [in+rumpō, break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.

irruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [irrupō, break into], a breaking into, attack.

is, ea, id, *gen. eius* (App. 57), *weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context*, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; **is locus quō**, a, or the, place where; **ea quae**, (the) things which; **eō**, with *comp.*, the; **eō magis**, all the more; **eō . . . quō**, with *comparatives*, the . . . the. I, 1.

iste, -a, -ud, *gen. istius* (App. 55), *dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed*, that, this.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut . . . ita**, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; **nōn ita**, not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut**, just . . . as; so . . . that. I, 11.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, sometimes (in *Caesar*) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. I, 10.

itaque, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.

item, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3.

iter, *itineris*, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; **facere iter**, march, travel; **magnis itineribus**, by forced marches. I, 3.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum**, again and again. I, 31.

Itius, -tī, *m.* (Ad), Itius (ish'yūs), a harbor.

itūrus, *see* eō.

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. I, 48.

iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussum, *tr.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. I, 5.

iudicium, -cī, *n.* [iudex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; **iudicium facere**, express an opinion; **iudiciō**, by design, purposely. I, 4.

iudicō, ī, *tr.* [iudex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.

iugum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.

iumentum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. I, 3.

iunctūra, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. IV, 17.

iungō, iungere, iunxī, iunctum, *tr.*, join or unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.

iunior, *see* iuvenis.

Iūnius, -nī, *m.*, (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, *see* Brūtus; (2) Quintus Junius (kwīn'tūs jū'nī-ūs), a Spaniard in Caesar's service.

Iuppiter, Iovis (App. 27), *m.*, Jupiter (jū'pī-tēr), or Jove, god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. I, 2.

iūrō, ī, *tr. and intr.* [iūs, right], take oath; swear. I, 31.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, *n.* [iūs, right+iūrō, swear], an oath. I, 3.

iussū, *m.*, *abl.* of iussus, -ūs, [iubeō, order], by command, by order.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with **fūnēra**, appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.

iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young; *comp.*, iūnior, in *plur.* as *noun*, men of military age.

iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [iuvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. III, 16.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. I, 26.

iuxtā, *adv.* [iungō, join], next, near. II, 26.

K.

Kal., *abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I, 6.

L.

L., *abbr. for Lūcius, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen.* I, 6.

L., *sign for quinquāgintā, fifty.*

Laberius, -rī, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīn' tūs lā-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

Labienus, -i, m., Titus Atius Labienus (tī'tūs ā'shyūs lā'bi-ē'nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C. I, 10.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, intr., slip; go wrong; hāc spē lāpsus, disappointed in this hope.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, 44; III, 5.

labōrō, i, intr. [labor, toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I, 31; IV, 26.

labrum, -ī, n., lip; edge.

lāc, lactis, n., milk. IV, 1.

laccessō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15.

lacrima, -ae, f., tear. I, 20.

lacrimō, i, intr. [lacrima, tear], weep.

lacus, -ūs, m., lake. I, 2.

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, tr., hurt, damage; laedere fidem, to break faith.

laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, joyful], joy, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful. III, 18.

languidē, adv. [languidus, faint], faintly, sluggishly.

languidus, -a, -um, adj., weak, faint, sluggish. III, 5.

languor, -ōris, m., weakness, faintness, lassitude.

lapis, -idis, m., stone. I, 46; II, 6.

laqueus, -ī, m., noose, snare.

largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. I, 18.

largiter, adv. [largus, large], largely, freely, much; largiter posse, to have great influence. I, 18.

largitiō, -ōnis, f. [largior, bribe], bribery. I, 9.

lassitiūdō, -inis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23.

lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longō lātēque, far and wide. I, 2.

latebra, -ae, f. [lateō, lie hidden], hiding place.

lateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. II, 19.

lātitiūdō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. I, 2.

Latobrigi, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Latobrigi (lāt'ō-brī'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

latrō, -ōnis, m., freebooter, bandit, robber. III, 17.

latrōcinium, -nī, n. [latrō, robber], robbery, brigandage.

lātus, -a, -um, adj. broad, wide, extensive. I, 2.

lātus, see ferō.

latus, -eris, n., side; wing or flank of an army. I, 25.

laudō, i, tr. [laus, praise], praise.

laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, 40; IV, 3.

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, tr., wash; in pass., bathe. IV, 1.

laxō, i, tr., stretch out, extend, open. II, 25.

lēgātīō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. I, 3.

lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, 7.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, choose], a legion. I, 7.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. I, 42; II, 27.

Lemannus, -ī (with or without lacus), m. (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better Lake Lemman, or the Lake of Geneva. I, 2.

Lemovicēs, -um, m. (CDd), the Lemo-
vices (lēm'ō-vī'sēz).

lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth.
IV, 28.

lēnitās, -tātis, f. [lēnis, smooth],
smoothness, gentleness. I, 12.

lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly,
smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 8.

Lepontii, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Lepontii
(lē-pōn'shī). IV, 10.

lepūs, -oris, m., hare.

Leuci, -ōrum, m. (Bfg), the Leuci
(lū'sī). I, 40.

Levāci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Levaci
(lē-vā'sī).

levis, -e, adj., light (*in weight*), slight;
light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II,
10.

levitās, -tātis, f. [levis, light], light-
ness; fickleness, restlessness. II, 1.

levō, 1, tr. [levis, light], lighten, ease,
relieve.

lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment.
I, 1.

Lexovii, -ōrum, m. (Bd), the Lexovii
(lēk-sō'vī-i). III, 9.

libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], willing-
ly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44; III,
18.

liber, -era, -erum, adj., unrestrained,
free; undisputed. I, 44.

liberālītās, -tātis, f. [liber, free],
freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. I,
18.

liberālīter, adv. [liber, free], gracious-
ly, generously, kindly. II, 5.

liberē, adv. [liber, free], freely, without
restraint, boldly. I, 18.

liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber, free], the free
members of the household (*as opposed to*
slaves); children. I, 11.

liberō, 1, tr. [liber, free], make or set
free, release, deliver. IV, 19.

libertās, -tātis, f. [liber, free], free-
dom, liberty, independence. I, 17.

librīlis, -e, adj. [libra, a pound], of a
pound weight; *funda librīlis*, a sling
for throwing heavy missiles.

licēns, see liceor.

licitia, -ae, f. [licet, it is permitted],
lawlessness, presumption.

liceor, 2, intr., bid (*at an auction*). I, 18.

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est,
intr., impers., it is lawful, one has per-
mission, it is permitted, one may, one
is allowed; *licet mihi*, I may; *petere*
ut liceat, to ask permission. I, 7.

Liger, -eris, m. (Cce), the river Liger,
(lī'jēr), better the Loire. III, 9.

lignātiō, -ōnis, f. [lignum, wood], the
procuring of wood.

lignātor, -ōris, m. [lignum, wood], one
sent to get wood, wood-forager.

lilium, -li, n., lily; a kind of pitfall,
named from its resemblance to a lily.

linea, -ae, f. [linum, flax], linen thread;
line.

Lingonēs, -um, m. (Bf), the Lingones
(līng'gō-nēz). I, 26.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language. I, 1.

lingula, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue], a lit-
tle tongue; a tongue of land. III,
12.

linter, -tris, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe.
I, 12.

linum, -ī, n., flax; linen, canvas. III,
18.

lis, litis, f., strife; lawsuit; damages.

Liscus, -i, m., Liscus (līs'kūs), a chief
magistrate of the Haedui. I, 16.

Litaviccus, -i, m. Litaviccus (līv'a-
vik'ūs), a Haeduan nobleman.

littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet,
a written sign, mark, or character; *in*
pl., letters of the alphabet; letter, epis-
tle. I, 26.

litus, -oris, n., seashore, beach, shore.
IV, 23.

locus, -ī, m. (*pl. loca, -ōrum, n.*), place,
position, locality, situation; topic,
subject; condition, state; rank, fami-
ly; opportunity; obsidium locō, as
hostages. I, 2.

locūtus, see loquor.

longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away,
distant; *longē lātēque*, far and wide.
I, 1.

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus,
long], far off, distant, remote; long,
long continued. I, 47; IV, 27.

longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long],
length, extent; long duration. I, 2.

longurius, -rī, m. [longus, long], a
long pole. III, 14.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, 40; II, 21.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. I, 20.

lōrica, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

Lūcānius, -nī, *m.* Quintus Lucanius (kwīn'tūs lū-kā'nī-ūs) a centurion.

★ **Lucterius**, -rī, *m.*, Lucterius (lūk-tē'rī-ūs), a chief of the Cadurci.

Lugotorix, -igis, *m.*, Lugotorix (lū-gōt'riks), a British chief.

lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. I, 50; IV, 29.

Lutetia, -ae, *f.* (Be), Lutetia (lū-tē'shā), the capital of the Parisii, now Paris.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak. I, 22.

lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. II, 15.

M.

M., *abbr.* for Mārcus (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 2.

M., *sign.* for mille, thousand.

māceria, -ae, *f.*, wall.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [māchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30.

maestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [maereō, be sad], dejected, sad.

Magetobriga, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (mā'gē-tōb'rī-ga), a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. I, 31.

magis, *adv.*, *comp.* [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.*, maximē, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, 3.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, 4.

magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [magnus, great + faciō, make], magnificent, splendid.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitūdō animi, courage. I, 39; II, 12.

magnopere, *adv.* [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especial-

ly, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, 13.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (tide); magni (gen. sing. neut.), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. *Comp.*, maior; *sup.*, maximus. I, 2.

maiestās, -tātis, *f.* [maior, greater], greatness, honor, majesty.

maior, māius, *adj.* [*comp.* of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder; as noun, maiorēs nātū, elders, old men; maiorēs, ancestors. I, 13.

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. III, 15.

male, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, peius; *sup.*, pessimē. I, 40.

maleficium, -cī, *n.* [malum, evil + faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, 7.

mālō, mālī, māluī, — (App. 83), *tr.* and *intr.* [magis, more + volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8.

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (upright). III, 14.

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, peior, peius; *n.* as noun, a worse thing; *sup.*, pessimus. I, 31.

mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, 35; II, 5.

mandō, I, *tr.* [manus, hand + dō, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12.

Mandubii, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Mandubii (mān'dū'bī-i).

Mandubracius, -cī, *m.*, Mandubracius (mān'dū-brā'shyūs), a British chief.

māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early. IV, 13.

manēō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum,

intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36; IV, 1.

manipulāris, -e, *adj.* [manipulus, maniple], of a maniple; as noun, common soldier; suus manipulāris, a soldier of his own company.

manipulus, -ī, *m.* [manus, hand + pleō, fill], a handful (esp. of hay, about a

- pole, anciently used as a standard*, a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), maniple. II, 26.
- Manlius**, -lī, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū'-shyūs mǎn'/lī-ūs), *proconsul in 78 B.C.* III, 20.
- mānsuēfaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (*pass.*, mānsuēfiō), *tr.* [mānsuētus, tame+faciō, make], tame.
- mānsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. II, 14.
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; *in manibus*, near at hand; *manū*, by hand, by art; *ferrea manus*, a grappling-hook; *dare manūs*, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. I, 25.
- Marcomanni**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bj), the Marcomanni (mār'/kō-mǎn'/ī). I, 51.
- mare**, -is, *n.*, sea; *mare Oceanum*, the ocean. III, 7.
- maritimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; *ōra*, the sea shore. II, 34.
- Marius**, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mā'rī-ūs), *the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni*. I, 40.
- Mārs**, -tis, *m.*, Mars (mārz), *god of war*; war; *aequō Mārte*, with equal advantage.
- mās**, *maris*, *adj.*, male; *as noun*, a male.
- matara**, -ae, *f.*, *Celtic javelin*. I, 26.
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother; *mātrēs familiae*, matrons. I, 18.
- māteria**, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. III, 29.
- māterior**, 1, *intr.* [māteria, material, wood], procure wood.
- Matisco**, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Matisco (ma-tis'/kō), *a city of the Haedui, now Macon*.
- mātrimōnium**, -nī, *n.* [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; *in mātrimōnium dare*, to give in marriage; *in mātrimōnium dūcere*, to marry (*said of the man*). I, 3.
- Matrona**, -ae, *m.* (Bef), the river Matrona (māt'rō-na), *now the Marne*. I, 1.
- mātūrē**, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. I, 33; IV, 6.
- mātūrēscō**, mātūrēscere, mātūrui, —, *intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], become ripe, ripen.
- mātūrō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, 7.
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. I, 16.
- maximē**, *see magis*.
- maximus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of magnus*, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. I, 3.
- Maximus**, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (quin'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), *victor over the Gauls*, 121 B.C. I, 45.
- medeor**, medēri, —, *intr.*, remedy, cure.
- mediocris**, -cre, *adj.* [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20.
- mediocriter**, *adv.* [mediocris, moderate], moderately; *nōn mediocriter*, in no small degree. I, 39.
- Mediomatrici**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē'dī-ō-māt'rī-sī). IV, 10.
- mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius, middle+terra, land], midland, inland.
- medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; *locus medius utriusque*, a place midway between the two. I, 24.
- Meldi**, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Meldi (mēl'-dī).
- melior**, *comp. of bonus*.
- membrum**, -ī, *n.*, member of the body, limb. IV, 24.
- memini**, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. III, 6.
- memoria**, -ae, *f.* [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; *memoriā tenēre*, remember; *patrum memoriā*, in the time of our fathers. I, 7.
- Menapii**, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pī-ī). II, 4.
- mendācium**, -cī, *n.*, lie, falsehood.
- mēns**, *mentis*, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; *mentēs animōsque*, minds and hearts; *allēnātā mente*, bereft of reason. I, 39; III, 19.
- mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month. I, 5.
- mēnsūra**, -ae, *f.* [mētior, measure], measure.

mentio, -ōnis, *f.* naming, mention.

mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [mercōr, trade], merchant, trader. I, 1.

mercātūra, -ae, *f.* [mercōr, trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.

mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. I, 31.

Mercurius, -rī, *m.*, Mercurius (mēr-kū'-rī-ūs), the god Mercury.

mereō, and **mereor**, 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (*i.e.*, earn pay). I, 11.

meridiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [meridiēs, midday], of midday or noon.

meridiēs, -ei, *m.* [for meridiēs, from medius, middle+diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, 50.

meritō, *adv.* [meritum, desert], justly, deservedly.

meritum, -i, *n.* [mereor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I, 14.

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messāla (mār'kūs vā-lē'rī-ūs mē-sā'lā), consul, 61 B.C. I, 2.

mētiōr, mētiri, mēnsū sum, *tr.*, deal or measure out, distribute. I, 16.

Metiosēdum, -i, *n.* (Be), Metiosedum (mē'shyō-sē'dūm), a town of the Senones, now Melun.

Mētius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mār'kūs mē'shyūs). I, 47.

metō, metere, messui, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. IV, 32.

metus, -ūs, *m.* [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metu territāre, terrify; hōc metu = metu huius reī, from fear of this. IV, 4.

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.* [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. IV, 25.

miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equitēs); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. I, 7.

milia, see mille.

militāris, -e, *adj.* [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I, 21.

militia, -ae, *f.* [miles, soldier], military service, warfare.

mille, indecl. *num. adj.*, a thousand; *pl.* as noun, milia, -ium, *n.*, thousands, (usually followed by part. gen.); milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. I, 2.

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva (mī-nēr'vā), goddess of wisdom and the arts.

minimē, *adv.* [minimus, least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, 1.

minimus, -a, -um, *sup. of parvus*.

minor, *comp. of parvus*.

Minucius, -ci, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilius (lū'shyūs mī-nū'shyūs bās'i-lūs), a commander of cavalry.

minuō, minuire, minui, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contrōversīās); minuenta aestū, the tide ebbing. I, 20.

minus, *adv. comp.* [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. I, 2.

mīror, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, 32.

mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mīror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mīrum in modum, surprisingly. I, 84.

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I, 32; II, 28.

miserīcordia, -ae, *f.* [misereō, pity+cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, 28.

miseror, 1, *tr.* [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I, 39.

mīsī, see mittō.

missus, -ūs, *m.* [mittō, send], a sending, dispatching; missū Caesaris, sent by Caesar.

missus, see mittō.

mitissimē, *superl. adv.* [mitis, mild], very mildly or gently.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch: hurl, discharge. I, 7.

mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. IV, 5.

mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [mōbilis, movable], movableness, activity, speed;

changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1.

mōbiliter, *adv.* [mōbilis, movable], readily, easily. III, 10.

moderor, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, 33.

modestia, -ae, *f.* [modus, limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.

modo, *adv.* [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only, . . . but also. I, 16.

modus, -i, *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modi**, of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō**, with gen., in the character of, like. I, 41; II, 31.

moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, 6.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. III, 12.

molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance; **molestē ferre**, be annoyed. II, 1.

mōlimentum, -i, *n.* [mōlior, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. I, 34.

molitus, -a, -um, *see* molō.

molliō, 4, *tr.* [mollis, soft], soften, make easy.

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. III, 19.

mollitia, -ae, *f.* [mollis, soft], weakness.

mollitiēs, -ēi, *f.* [mollis, soft], weakness.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, grind. I, 5.

mōmentum, -i, *n.*, weight, influence, importance.

Mona, -ae, *f.*, Mona (mō'nā), an island off the coast of Britain, probably the Isle of Man.

monēō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. I, 20.

mōns, **montis**, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, 1.

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. II, 15.

morbus, -i, *m.*, illness, sickness, disease.

Morini, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mōr'i-ni). II, 4.

morior, **morī**, **mortuus sum**, *intr.* [mors, death], die. I, 4.

Moritasgus, -i, *m.*, Moritasgus (mōr'i-tās'gus), a chief of the Senones.

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, 26.

mors, -tis, *f.*, death; **sibi mortem cōsciscere**, commit suicide. I, 4.

mortuus, *see* morior.

mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. I, 4.

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. IV, 9.

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō, 'move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, 23.

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence; with **castra**, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. I, 15.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman; wife. I, 29.

mūliō, -ōnis, *m.* [mūlus, mule], mule driver, muleteer.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, 2.

multō, 1, *tr.*, fine, deprive one of something as a fine.

multō, *adv.* [*abl. of* multus, much], by far, much.

multum, *adv.* [*acc. of* multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* **plūs**, more; **plūs posse**, be more able or powerful, have more influence; *sup.* **plūrium**, most, very; **plūrium posse**, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. I, 3.

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.* many; with *abl.* denoting time when, late; as *noun*, many persons or things; *comp.* **plūs**, **plūris**, more; as *noun*, more; *pl.* more, several, many; *sup.*, **plūrimus**, -a, -um, most; *pl.*, very many. I, 3.

mūlus, -i, *m.*, a mule.

Munātius, -ti, *m.*, Lucius Munatius Plancus (lū'shyūs mū-nā'shyūs plāng'kūs), a lieutenant of Cæsar.

mundus, -i, *m.*, universe, world.

mūnimentum, -ī, *n.* [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification. II, 17.

mūniō, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnitus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. I, 24.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I, 8.

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. I, 43.

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrāle pīlum**, mural javelin, *a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall.* III, 14.

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, a wall. I, 8.

musculus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of mus*, mouse], shed, mantlet.

mutilus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mutilated, broken.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, *see nanciscor.*

nam, *conj.*, for. I, 12.

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammēius (nā-mē-yūs). I, 7.

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Ce), the Namnetes (nām'nē-tēz). III, 9.

namque, *conj.* [nam, for], for. I, 38; III, 13.

nanciscor, **nanciscī**, **nactus sum**, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I, 53; IV, 23.

Nantuātes, -ium, *m.* (CDg), the Nantuates (nān'tū-ā'tēz). III, 1.

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. III, 20.

nāscor, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, *intr.*, be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. II, 18.

Nasua, -ae, *m.* Nasua (nāsh'ū-ā), *a leader of the Suebi.* I, 37.

nātālis, -e, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], pertaining to birth; diēs, birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I, 53; II, 35.

nātivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], native; natural.

nātūra, -ae, *f.* [nāscor be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I, 2.

nātus, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor, be born], birth; **maiores nātū**, *greater by birth*, elders. II, 13.

nātus, -a, -um, *see nāscor.*

nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for nāvita*; nāvis, ship], sailor. III, 9.

nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta, sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. III, 8.

nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. III, 19.

nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of nāvis*, ship], small boat, skiff. I, 53.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāvigō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. III, 9.

nāvigium, -gī, *vb.* [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. III, 14.

nāvigō, 1, *intr.* [nāvis, ship], set sail, sail. III, 8.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; **nāvis longa**, galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria**, transport. I, 8.

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously or well. II, 25.

nē (App. 188, b), (1), *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that, lest. (2), *adv.*, not; **nō** . . . **quidem** (*enclosing the emphatic word*), not even. I, 4.

ne, **nec**, **neg**, *inseparable negative prefixes.*

-ne, *interrog. enclitic*: *in direct questions, simply sign of a question* (App. 213, a); *in indirect questions, whether*;

-ne . . . **-ne**, **-ne** . . . **an**, **utrum** . . . **-ne**, *whether . . . or*. I, 50; IV, 14.

nec, *see neque.*

necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. of necessārius*, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. I, 17.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; *with tempus*, critical; *as noun*, kinsman, friend. I, 11.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. IV, 5.

necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. II, 11.

necessitudō, -inis, *f.* [necesse; cf. **necessārius**, friend], friendship, alliance. I, 43.

necne, conj. [nec, nor+ne], or not. I, 50.

necō, 1, tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. I, 53; III, 16.

nēcubi, conj.+adv. [nē, not+(c)ubi, where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nefārius, -a, -um, adj. [nefās, sin], wicked, impious.

nefās, n., indecl. [ne+fas, divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.

neg-, see ne-.

neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [neg+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35; III, 10.

negō, 1, tr. and intr., say no, refuse, say . . . not. I, 8.

negōtior, 1, intr. [negōtium, business], carry on business, traffic, trade.

negōtium, -tī, n. [neg+ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare**, employ, direct; **quid negōtī**, what business; **nihil negōtī**, no difficulty. I, 34; II, 2.

Nemetēs, -um, m. (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). I, 51.

nēmō, acc. nēminem, m. and f. [ne+homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. I, 18.

nēquāquam, adv. [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23.

neque (nec) (App. 188, a), **conj.** [ne+que], and not, not, nor; but not; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor. I, 4.

nēquīquam, adv. [nē+quī(d)quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. II, 27.

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj. [Nervius], of the Nervii. III, 5.

Nervius, -a, -um, adj. (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vī-i). II, 4.

nervus, -ī, m., sinew; *in pl.*, vigor, strength, power. I, 20.

neu, see nēve.

neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen. -trius, dat. -tri*), **adj. used as noun**, [ne+uter,

which of two], neither; *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, 9.

nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), **conj.** [nē+ve, or], and not, nor. I, 26.

nex, necis, f., violent death, death, execution. I, 16.

nihil, indecl. noun, n., nothing; *with gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at all, by no means; **nōn nihil**, somewhat. I, 11.

nihilō, adv., by no means; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless; **nihilō sētius**, none the less, nevertheless. I, 5.

nimius, -a, -um, adj. [nimis, too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.

nisi, conj. [ne+si, if], if not, except, unless. I, 22.

Nitilobrogēs, -um, m. (Dd), the Nitilobroges (nīsh'v-ōb'rō-jēz).

nitor, niti, nixus sum, intr., rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. I, 13.

nix, nivis, f., snow.

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. I, 2.

nōbilitās, -tātis, f. [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2.

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, intr., injure, hurt; **nocens, pres. part. as noun**, guilty person. III, 13.

noctū, adv. [nox, night], by night. I, 8.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. I, 88.

nōdus, -ī, m., knot; joint.

nōlō, nolle, nōluī, —, (App. 82), tr. and intr. [ne+volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imp.* **nōlī or nōlite, with inf.** (App. 219), do not. I, 16.

nōmen, -inis, n., name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine with gen.**, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine**, on his or their own account, personally. I, 13.

nōminātīm, adv. [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, 29.

nōminō, 1, tr. [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. II, 18.

nōn (App. 188, a), *adv.*, not; *no.* I, 3.
nōnāgintā, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, ninety. I, 29.
nōndum, *adv.* [nōn, not+*dum*], not yet. I, 6.
nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. II, 23.
Nōrēia, -ae, *f.* (Ck) Noreia (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5.
Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. I, 5.
nōs, *see ego*.
nōscō, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted or familiar with; **nōvī**, *pf.*, have learned, hence, know; **nōtus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. III, 9.
nōsmet, *see egomet*.
noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. I, 1.
nōtitia, -ae, *f.* [nōscō, know], knowledge, acquaintance.
nōtus, -a, -um, *see nōscō*.
novem, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, nine.
Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum (nō-vi-ō-dū'nūm) (1), the capital of the Sueviones, the modern Soissons (Be); (2), a city of the Biluriges (Ce); (3), a city of the Haedui (Ce). II, 12.
novitās, -tātis, *f.* [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. IV, 34.
novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, **novissimus**, -a, -um, latest, last; *as noun or with agmen*, those in the rear, the rear. I, 9.
nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night; **media nox**, middle of the night, midnight; **multā nocte**, late at night. I, 26.
noxia, -ae, *f.*, crime, offense.
nūbō, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. I, 18.
nūdō, 1, *tr.* [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, 6.
nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, 25.
nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **nūllius**, *adj.* [ne+*ūllus*, any], not any, no; *as*

noun, no one, none; **nōn nūllus**, *some; as noun*, some, some persons. I, 7.
num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* I, 14.
nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divinity; divine will.
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; *in numerō*, with *gen.*, among, as. I, 3.
Numidae, -ārū, *m.*, the Numidae (nū'mi-dē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. II, 7.
nummus, -ī, *m.*, coin.
numquam, *adv.* [ne+*ūmquam*, ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam**, sometimes. I, 8.
nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. I, 31; II, 4.
nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntius, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, 7.
nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. I, 26.
nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. I, 6.
nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nūō, nod], nod; sign, command; *ad nūtum*, at one's nod or command. I, 31; IV, 28.

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward, against; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, why. I, 4.
obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes, money], in debt; *as noun*, debtor. I, 4.
obducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead towards; extend, dig. II, 8.
obeō, -ire, -ī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go to or towards; perform, attend to.
obicō, -icere, -īcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iacō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; **obiectus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying in the way or opposite, in the way. I, 26.
obitus, -ūs, *m.* [obeō, go to death], destruction. II, 29.
oblātus, *see offerō*.

obliquē, *adv.* [obliquus, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.
obliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, running obliquely, slanting.
obliviscor, **oblivisci**, **oblitus sum**, *intr.* [obliviō, forgetfulness], forget. I, 14.
obsecrō, 1, *tr.* [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.
obsequentia, -ae, *f.* [obsequor, comply], complaisance, compliance.
observō, 1, *tr.* [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, 45.
obses, -idis, *m. and f.* [obsideō, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.
obsessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.
obsideō, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. III, 23.
obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 19.
obsignō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.
obstisō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.* [sistō, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.
obstinatē, *adv.*, firmly, resolutely.
obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. I, 9.
obstruō, -struere, -struxī, -structum, *tr.* [struō, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.
obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. IV, 21.
obtestor, 1, *tr.* [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.
obtinēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.
obtuli, *see offerō*.
obveniō, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. II, 23.
obviam, *adv.* [via, way], in the way; to meet, towards, against.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 18.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; with solis, sunset; the west. I, 1.
occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [ob+cadō, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; occidēns sol, the west.
occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.
occultātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occultō, hide], concealment.
occultē, *adv.* [occultus, secret], secretly.
occultō, 1, *tr.* [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.
occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.
occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.
occupō, 1, *tr.* [ob+capiō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.
occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 21.
Oceanus, -i, *m.*, the ocean; *as adj.*, with mare, the ocean. I, 1.
Ocelum, -i, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum' (ōs'ē-lum). I, 10.
octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eighth. II, 23.
octingenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.
octō (VIII), *card. num. adj. indecl.*, eight. I, 21.
Octodurus, -i, *m.* (Cg), Octodurus (ōk'-tō-dū'rūs). III, 1.
octōgēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eighty each, eighty.
octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj. indecl.* [octō, eight], eighty. I, 2.
octōni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eight at a time, eight.

oculus, -i, *m.*, eye. I, 12.

ōdī, **ōdisse**, (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf.* with meaning of *pres.*, hate, detest. I, 18.

odium, -di, *n.*, hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsū, *tr.* [ob+fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; **animus offendere**, hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [offendō, hurt], offence. I, 19.

offerō, **offerre**, **obtuli**, **oblātum**, *tr.* [ob+ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with **sē**, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. II, 21.

officium, -cī, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, **manēre**, or **permanēre** in **officiō**, to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Ollovice (ō-lōv'ī-kō), a king of the *Nitiobroges*.

omittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [ob+mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.

omniō, *adv.* [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. I, 6.

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl.* as *noun*, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl.* as *noun*, all possessions or goods. I, 1.

onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; with **nāvis**, transport, freight ship. IV, 22.

onerō, 1, *tr.* [onus, load], load.

onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight, size. II, 30.

opera, -ae, *f.* [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare **operam**, give attention, take pains. II, 25.

opiniō, -ōnis, *f.* [opīnor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opiniō timōris**, impression of cowardice. II, 3.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, *intr. impers.*, it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as *personal verb*, must, ought. I, 4.

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in

pl. as *noun*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.

oppidum, -i, *n.*, fortified town, town, stronghold. I, 5.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [ob+pōnō, place], place against or opposite, oppose; **oppositus**, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, in front, opposite.

opportūnē, *adv.* [opportūnus, fit], conveniently, seasonably. IV, 22.

opportunitās, -tātis, *f.* [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; with **locī**, favorable situation or position; with **temporis**, favorable opportunity. III, 12.

opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.

oppositus, see **oppōnō**.

opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, 44; III, 2.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. II, 6.

oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [ob+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. I, 5.

ops, **opis**, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. I, 20.

optātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [optō, wish], wished for, desired, welcome.

optimē, *sup. of bene*.

optimus, *sup. of bonus*,

opus, **operis**, *n.*, work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; **nātūrā et opere**, by nature and art; **opera**, crafts. I, 8.

opus, *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. **opus**, work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est**, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the *nom.* or *abl.* (App. 146). I, 34; II, 8.

ōra, -ae, *f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. III, 8.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō, speak], a speak-

ing, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 3.
ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, 27.
orbis, -is, *m.*, orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrarum**, the world. IV, 37.
Orcynia, -ae, *f.* Orcynia (ōr-sīn'ī-a), *same as* Hercynia.
ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primi ordinēs**, centuries of the first rank. I, 40; II, 11.
Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'-ō-riks), a chief of the Helvetii. I, 2.
orior, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, *intr.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; **oriens sōl**, the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, 1.
ōrnāmentum, -i, *n.* [ōrnō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, 44.
ōrnō, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 14.
ōrō, 1, *tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, 20.
ortus, -ūs, *m.* [orior, rise], rising.
ōs, **ōris**, *n.*, mouth; face, countenance.
Osismi, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sis'mī), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. II, 34.
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [obs+tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, 8.
ostentatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ostentō, show], show, display; pretence; pride.
ostentō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of ostendō, show], show frequently; show, exhibit.
ōtium, -tī, *n.*, leisure, inactivity, quiet.
ōvum, -i, *n.*, egg. IV, 10.

P.

P., *abbr. for* Pūblius, a Roman praenomen. I, 21.
pābulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, 15.
pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* [pābulor, forage], forager.
pābulor, 1, *intr.* [pābulum, fodder], forage.

pābulum, -i, *n.* [*cf.* pāscō, feed], fodder, provender. I, 16.
pācō, 1, *tr.* [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; **pācātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6.
pactum, -i, *n.* [paciscor, agree to], agreement; manner.
Padus, -i, *m.* (Dh), the Padus (pā'dūs), *better*, the Po, the largest river of northern Italy.
paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, 11.
paenitet, **paenitēre**, **paenituit**, —, *tr.*, *impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; *when translated as pers. verb*, repent (App. 109). IV, 5.
pāgus, -i, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. I, 12.
palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.
palma, -ae, *f.*, palm of the hand.
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40; II, 9.
palūster, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [palūs, swamp], swampy, marshy.
pandō, **pandere**, **pandi**, **passum**, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend; **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. I, 51; II, 13.
pār, **paris**, *adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity*, the same; **pār atque**, the same as. I, 28.
parcō, *adv.* [parcus, frugal], frugally, sparingly.
parcō, **parcere**, **peperci**, **parsum**, *intr.* [parcus, frugal], be frugal or economical; spare, not injure.
parēns, -entis, *m.*, *f.* [pariō, bring forth], parent.
parentō, 1, *intr.* [parēns, parent], make funeral offerings especially for parents; avenge.
pāreō, 2, *intr.* [*cf.* pariō, bring forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, 27.
pariō, **parere**, **peperi**, **partum**, *tr.*, bring forth; gain, acquire, win.
Parisii, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Parisii (pā-riz'h'yī), a Gallic tribe about modern Paris.
parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for;

- parātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. I, 5.
- pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.
- partim**, *adv.* [*acc. of pars, part*], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. II, 1.
- partior**, 4, *tr.* [*pars, part*], part, share, divide. III, 10.
- partus**, *see pariō*.
- parum**, *adv.* [*parvus, little*], little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.
- parvulus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of parvus, little*], small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia**, skirmishes; **parvuli**, children. II, 30.
- parvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus**, *as noun*, less; *sup.*, minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. I, 8.
- passim**, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, 14.
- passus**, -ūs, *m.* [*pandō, extend*], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches (five Roman feet); **mille passus** or **passuum**, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. I, 2.
- passus**, *see pandō and patior*.
- patefaciō**, -facere, -feci, -factum, *tr.* [*pateō, be open + faciō, make*], make or throw open, open. II, 32.
- patefiō**, -fieri, -factus sum, *pass. of patefaciō*.
- patēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pateō, be open*], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.
- pateō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.
- pater**, -tris, *m.*, father; *in pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae**, father or head of a family. I, 3.
- patienter**, *adv.* [*patiēns; patior, endure*], patiently.
- patientia**, -ae, *f.* [*patiēns; patior, endure*], endurance, patience.
- patior**, **pati**, **passus sum**, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.
- patrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pater, father*], fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.
- patrōnus**, -i, *m.* [*pater, father*], protector, patron.
- patruus**, -i, *m.* [*pater, father*], a father's brother, uncle.
- pauci**, -ae, -a, *adj.* (*used rarely in sing.*), few; *as noun*, few persons or things. I, 15.
- paucitās**, -tātis, *f.* [*paucus, few*], fewness, small number. III, 2.
- paulātim**, *adv.* [*Paulus, little*], little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33; II, 8.
- paulisper**, *adv.* [*Paulus, little*], for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.
- paulō**, *adv.* [*Paulus, little*], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.
- paululum**, *adv.* [*Paulus, little*], a very little. II, 8.
- paulum**, *adv.* [*Paulus, little*], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.
- Paulus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, little; **paulum**, *as noun*, a little; **post paulum**, soon after.
- pāx**, **pācis**, *f.*, peace; favor. I, 3.
- peccō**, 1, *intr.*, sin; transgress, do wrong. I, 47.
- pectus**, -oris, *n.*, the breast.
- pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, property, wealth; money.
- pecus**, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat, flesh. III, 29.
- pedālis**, -e, *adj.* [*pēs, foot*], of a foot in thickness or diameter. III, 13.
- pedes**, **peditis**, *m.* [*pēs, foot*], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. I, 42; II, 24.
- pedester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [*pēs, foot*], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōplae**, infantry. II, 17.
- peditātus**, -ūs, *m.* [*pedes, foot soldier*], foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.
- Pedius**, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwīn' tūs pē'dī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 2.
- peius**, *comp. of malus*.
- pellis**, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent made of hides. II, 33.
- pellō**, **vellere**, **pepull**, **pulsum**, *tr.*,

beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.

pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsum, tr., weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; *with poenās*, suffer. I, 86.

penitus, adv., deeply; far within.

per, prep. *with acc.*, through, through-out; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; **per sō**, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; *sometimes with intensive force*, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.

peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [agō, lead], lead through; complete, finish.

perangustus, -a, -um, adj. [angustus, narrow], very narrow.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capiō, take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.

percontatiō, -ōnis, f., inquiring, inquiry. I, 39.

percurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run along or over. IV, 33.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, tr., strike or thrust through, slay.

perdiscō, -discere, -didici, —, tr. [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give over, ruin; *perditus, pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. III, 17.

perducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.

perendinus, -a, -um, adj., after to-morrow.

pereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. I, 53; IV, 15.

perequitiō, i, intr. [equitiō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. IV, 52.

perexiguus, -a, -um, adj. [exiguus, little], very little.

perfacilis, -e, adj. [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.

perfectus, see perficiō.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.

perfidia, -ae, f. [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. I, 25.

perfuga, -ae, m. [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitum, intr. [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.

perfugium, -gi, n. [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.

pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctum, intr. [per+regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.

periclitor, i, tr. and intr. [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. II, 8.

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj. [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.

periculum, -i, n., trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.

peritus, -a, -um adj. [*cf.* experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.

perlātus, see perferō.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [legō, read], read through, read.

perluō, -luere, -lui, -lūtum, tr. [luō, wash], wash completely, bathe; *pass. as middle voice*, bathe one's self.

permagnus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, large], very large, very great.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsum, intr. [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscui, -mixtum, tr. [miscēō, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.

permittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit. allow. I, 30; II, 3.

permixtus, see permisceō.

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

permulcēō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsūm, tr. [mulcēō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.

perniciēs, -ēi, f. [cf. nex, death], ruin, destruction. I, 20.

perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [pauci, few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun*, very few. I, 6.

perpendiculum, -i, n., plummet, plumb-line. IV, 17.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, tr. [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. I, 35; III, 2.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr. [quaerō, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write out, report, describe.

persequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, 13.

perseverō, 1, intr., persist, persevere. I, 13.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr. [solvo, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). I, 12.

perspicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spectrum, tr. [specio, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, real-

ize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, 40; II, 11.

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm, persist.

persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm, tr. and intr. [suadeō, advise], advise *prevailingly*; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; *sibi persuādēri*, be convinced. I, 2.

perterreo, 2, tr. [terreo, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I, 18.

pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, 42.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; *pertain*, have reference to, concern; *tend*, aim at; *eōdem pertinēre*, *tend* to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. I, 1.

pertuli, see perferō.

perturbatio, -ōnis, f. [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, 29.

perturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. I, 39; II, 11.

pervagor, 1, intr. [vagor, wander], wander about, scatter.

pervenio, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venio, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; *of property*, fall, revert. I, 7.

pēs, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; *pedibus*, on foot; *pedem referre*, retreat. I, 8.

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, 19.

Petrocorii, -ōrum, m. (Dcd), the Petrocorii (pē'trō-kō'rī-i).

Petrōnius, -nī, m., Marcus Petronius (mār'kūs pē-trō'nī-ūs), a centurion of the 8th legion.

Petrosidius, -dī, m., Lucius Petrosidius (lū'shyūs pē'trō-sid'i-ūs), a standard bearer.

phalanx, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. I, 24.

Pictonēs, -um, *m.* (Ced), the Pictones (pik'tō-nēz). III, 11.

pietās, -tātis, *f.* [pius, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.

pilum, -i, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. I, 25.

pilus, -i, *m.*, century of soldiers; **primus pilus**, first century of a legion; **primi pili centuriō**, or **primipilus**, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, 5.

pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather; battlement, parapet.

Pirustae, -ārum, *m.*, the Pirustae (pī-rūs'tē), a tribe of Illyricum.

piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. IV, 10.

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.* (1), Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pī-us pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā'nūs), consul with Messāta, 61 B.C. I, 2. (2), Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), killed in the defeat of Cassius' army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C. I, 12. (3), Lucius Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law; consul 58 B.C. I, 6. (4), Piso, an Aquitanian. IV, 12.

pix, picis, *f.*, pitch.

placeō, 2, *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; often *impers.*, seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. I, 34; III, 3.

placidē, *adv.* [placidus, calm], calmly.

plācō, 1, *tr.*, appease.

Plancus, see Munātius.

plānē, *adv.* [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. III, 26.

plānitīēs, -ēi, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. I, 43; II, 8.

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, flat, plain. III, 13.

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ēi, *f.*, populace, common people. I, 3.

plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. III, 3.

plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēō, fill], full, whole, complete. III, 2.

plērique, -aeque, -aque, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of; as *noun*, a great many, very many. II, 4.

plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly,

generally; again and again, very often. I, 40; II, 30.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Pleumoxii (plū-mōk'sī-i).

plumbum, -i, *n.*, lead; **plumbum album**, tin.

plūrimum, see multum.

plūrimus, see multus.

plūs, see multus and multum.

pluteus, -i, *m.*, parapet; a mantelet or screen of movable shields.

pōculum, -i, *n.*, cup.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. I, 4.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb, with or without digitus. III, 13.

polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.* [prō+liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise pledge. I, 14.

pollicitatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [polliceor, promise], promise, offer. III, 18.

pollicitus, see polliceor.

Pompēius, -i, *m.* (1), Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. IV, 1. (2), Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius.

pondus, -eris, *n.* [cf. pendō, weigh], weight. II, 29.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *tr.* place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; with **castra**, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; with *in* and *abl.*, depend on, in addition to above meanings. I, 16.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. I, 6.

poposci, see poscō.

populatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. I, 15.

populor, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11.

populus, -i, *m.*, the people, the mass, the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. I, 3.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [prō+regō, keep straight], extend; **porrēctus**, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, extended, in extent. II, 19.

porrō, *adv.*, farther on; furthermore, then.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. II, 24.
portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. I, 5.
portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll, tariff on imports or exports. I, 18.
portus, -ūs, *m.* [*cf.* **porta**, gate], harbor, haven, port. III, 8.
poscō, **poscere**, **poposci**, —, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. I, 27.
positus, *see* **pōnō**.
possessio, -ōnis, *f.* [**possideō**, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, 11.
possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō**, sit], occupy, hold, possess. I, 34; II, 4.
possidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.*, take possession of, seize. IV, 7.
possum, **posse**, **potui**, —, (App. 80), *intr.* [**potis**, able+**sum**, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; *with* **quam** *and* *sup.*, as possible, *e.g.*, **quam plurimās possunt**, as many as possible; **multum posse**, **plūs posse** *and* **plūrium posse**, *see* **multum**. I, 2.
post, *adv.*, *and prep. with acc.* (1) *As adv.*, later, afterwards. (2) *As prep.*, behind, after; **post tergum** or **post sē**, in the rear. I, 5.
posteā, *adv.* [**post**, after], after this, afterwards. I, 21.
posteāquam, *adv.* [**posteā**, afterwards +**quam**, than], after. I, 31; IV, 19.
posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post**, after], after, following, next; *in m. pl. as noun*, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** or **postumus**, last. I, 15.
postpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [**post**, after+**pōnō**, place], place after, postpone; disregard.
postquam, *conj.* [**post**, afterwards +**quam**, than], after, as soon as. I, 24.
postrēmō, *adv.* [**postrēmus**, last], finally, at last.
postridiē, *adv.* [**posterus**, following+**diēs**, day], on the day following, the next day; **postridiē eius diēi**, on the next or following day. I, 23.
postulātum, -ī, *n.* [**postulō**, demand], demand, claim, request. I, 40; IV, 11.

postulō, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, 31; II, 4.
potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **possum**, be able], powerful, influential. I, 3.
potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns**, powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.
potentia, -ae, *f.* [**potēns**, powerful], power, authority, influence. I, 18.
potestās, -tātis, *f.* [**potēns**, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; **potestātem facere**, grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.
potior, 4, *intr.* [**potis**, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.
potius, *adv.* [*comp. of* **potis**, able], rather. I, 45; II, 10.
potitū, *see* **potior**.
prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front, very. II, 30.
praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **praeacuō**, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, 29.
praebeō, 2, *tr.* [**prae**+**habeō**, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, 17.
praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [**caveō**, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. I, 38.
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [**cēdō**, go], go before; surpass, excel. I, 1.
praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [**caput**, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, 24.
praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [**praecipio**, instruct], instruction, injunction, command.
praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō**, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, 22.
praecipitō, 1, *tr.* [**praeceps**, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.
praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus**, especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.

praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, especial.
praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [prae+claudō, shut], close or shut in front, block up, close.
praecō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.
Praecōninus, *see* Valerius.
praecurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. IV, 34.
praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. I, 39; IV, 34.
praedor, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, 17.
praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead before, construct before or in front.
praefectus, -ī, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). I, 39; III, 7.
praefērō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 8], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. II, 27.
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, 10.
praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fix or set in front.
praefuī, *see* praesum.
praemetuō, -metuere, -metuī, —, *intr.* [metuō, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.
praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send before or in advance. I, 15.
praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 18.
praecoccupō, 1, *tr.* [occupō, seize], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy, take possession of.
praecoptō, 1, *tr.* [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. I, 25.
praeparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14.
praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,

tr. [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.
praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, steep, precipitous. III, 14.
praesaepiō, -saepire, -saepsi, -saep-tum, *tr.* [saepiō, hedge], hedge or block up.
praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 36; II, 20.
praescriptum, -ī, *n.* [praescribō, order], order, dictation, command. I, 36.
praesēns, -entis, *pres. part.* of praesum.
praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. I, 15.
praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēsum, *tr.* [sentīō, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.
praesertim, *adv.*, particularly, especially. I, 16.
praesidium, -dī, *n.* [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.
praestō, *adv.*, at hand, ready; *with* sum, meet.
praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *tr.* and *intr.* [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, praestat, it is better or more advisable. I, 2.
praesum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesēns, *pres. part.* as *adj.*, present, in person; for the present. I, 16.
praeter, *prep. with acc.* [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. I, 11.
praeterea, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.
praetereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* and *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,

omit; **praeteritus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun*, the past. I, 20.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13.

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. I, 5.

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor; commander. I, 21.

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.

praefūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn in front or at the end.

praevertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate.

prāvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, perversc, wrong.

premō, -premere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. I, 52; II, 24.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndi, prēnsum, *tr.*, seize, grasp. I, 20.

pretium, -ti, *n.*, price. I, 18.

prex, *precis*, *f.* (in sing. only in dat., acc. and abl.) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. I, 16.

pridiē, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 23.

primipilus, -i, *m.* [primus, first+pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 25.

primō, *adv.* [primus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 31; II, 8.

primum, *adv.* [primus, first], first, at first. in the first place, for the first time; cum primum, or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible, very soon. I, 25.

primus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. I, 10.

princeps, -ipis, *adj.* [primus, first+capio, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; *as noun*, chief or principal person, leader, chief. I, 7.

principātus, -ūs, *m.* [princeps, chief],

chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3.

prior, prius, *adj.*, *comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun*, those in front. II, 11.

pristinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [for priustinus from prior, former], former, original; previous, preceding. I, 13.

prius, *adv.* [prior, former], before, sooner, previously; prius quam, see priusquam.

priusquam or prius . . . quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. I, 19.

privātim, *adv.* [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17.

privātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; *as noun*, person, individual. I, 5.

prō, *prep. with abl.* [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written prō, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. I, 2.

probō, *1, tr.* [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, 3.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38; II, 20.

Procellus, see Valerius.

prōclinō, *1, tr.* [clinō, incline], bend forward, incline; prōclinātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, tottering, critical.

prōcōnsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. III, 20.

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, 30.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubi, -cubitum, *intr.* [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, 27.

prōcūrō, *1, tr.* [cūrō, care], care for, attend to.

prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52.

prōdeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [prō+eō,

go. App. 84], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48.

prōdesse, *see* **prōsum**.

prōditō, -ōnis, *f.* [prōdō, betray], betrayal, treason.

prōditor, -ōris, *m.* [prōdō, betray], betrayer, traitor.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; **memoriā prōditum**, told in tradition, handed down. I, 13.

prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out *or* forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; *with cōpiās*, arrange, draw up. I, 48; III, 17.

proelior, 1, *intr.* [proelium, battle], join *or* engage in battle, fight. II, 23.

proelium, -ii, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; **proelium committere**, join *or* begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. I, 1.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [proficiscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. I, 3.

profectus, *see* **prōficiō**.

profectus, *see* **proficiscor**.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring forth *or* out, produce.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, 21.

proficiscor, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, *intr.* [*cf.* **prōficiō**, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. I, 3.

profiteor, -fiterī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [fateor, confess], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.

prōfligō, 1, *tr.* [fligō, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II, 23.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. IV, 10.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. I, 31; II, 14.

prōfui, *see* **prōsum**.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], born; descended, sprung. II, 29.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step *or* go forward, advance, proceed, go. I, 50; II, 10.

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out *or* away from; protect, guard. I, 1.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward *or* away; throw, cast; reject, give up; **sē prōicere**, cast one's self; jump. I, 27.

proinde, *adv.*, hence, accordingly, therefore.

prōlātus, *see* **prōferō**.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, —, *intr.*, project, lean out.

prōmiscuē, *adv.*, promiscuously, in common.

prōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send forward; let grow.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. I, 48; II, 31.

prōptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. III, 19.

prōmunturium, -rī, *n.* [prōmineō, project], promontory, headland. III, 12.

prōnē, *adv.* [prōnus, inclined], sloping downwards. IV, 17.

prōnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; *with sententia*, pronounce. IV, 5.

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *As prep.*, near, close to. (2) *As adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. I, 22.

prōpellō, -pellere, -pullī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. I, 15.

properō, 1, *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. II, 11.

propinquitās, -tātis, *f.* [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. II, 4.

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *pl. as noun*, relatives. I, 16.

propius, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App 122, b) [*comp. of* **prope**, near], nearer. I, 42; IV, 9.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. I, 17.
proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, one's own, characteristic, indicative.
propter, *prep.* with *acc.* [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. I, 9.
propterea, *adv.* [proptēr, because of], on this account; **propterea quod**, because. I, 1.
prōpugnātor, -ōris, *m.* [prōpugnō, fight for], defender.
prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. II, 7.
prōpuli, *see* **prōpellō**.
prōpulsō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of **prōpellō**, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. I, 49.
prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. III, 13.
prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], overthrow. III, 26.
prōsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with *orātiōne*, address. II, 6.
prōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. II, 22.
prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *intr.* [speciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I, 23.
prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, stretch out], prostrate, destroy.
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.
prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover, protect.
prōterreo, 2, *tr.* [terreo, frighten], terrify, frighten off.
prōtinus, *adv.* [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, 9.
prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II, 19.
prōvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. IV, 28.
prōveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (*of grain*).

prōventus, -ūs, *m.* [prōveniō, come forth], a coming forth, result.
prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidi, -visum, *tr.* [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II, 22.
prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. I, 1.
prōvinciālis, -e, *adj.* [prōvincia, province], of a province; of the Province.
prōvisus, *see* **prōvideō**.
prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. II, 19.
proximē, *adv.* [proximus, last], last; lately. I, 24.
proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with *acc.* (App. 122, b), next to. I, 1.
prūdētia, -ae, *f.* [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II, 4.
Ptiani, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptiani (ti-ā/ni-i). III, 27.
pūbēs, -eris, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *pl. as noun*, grown men, adults.
pūblicē, *adv.* [pūblicus, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I, 16.
pūblicō, 1, *tr.* [pūblicus, public], adjudge to public use; confiscate.
pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; *n. as noun*, public, public view; *rēs pūblica*, common weal, state. I, 12.
pudet, -ēre, -uit, -itum, *tr.*, *imper.*, it shames; translated as personal, be ashamed, feel shame.
pudor, -ōris, *m.* [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I, 39.
puer, -eri, *m.*, boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); *ā pueris*, from childhood. I, 29.
puerilis, -e, *adj.* [puer, child], childish.
pugna, -ae, *f.* [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; genus pugnae, method of fighting. I, 25.
pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight, give battle, contend; strive; *often imper.*, as **pugnā-tur**, it is fought, i.e., they fight. I, 25.

pulcher, -chra, -chrom, *adj.*, beautiful; noble, glorious.

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, Titus Pullo (tī'tūs pul'ō), a centurion of Cicero's legion.

pulsus, see **pellō**.

pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike], stroke. III, 13.

pūlvīs, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. III, 13.

pūrgō, 1, *tr.* [pūrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; **pūrgātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. I, 38.

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. I, 7.

Pyrenaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pyrenaei montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pī'rē-nē'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

Q.

Q., *abbr. for* **Quintus**, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 45; II, 2.

quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of* quī], by which way or road; in which place, where. I, 6.

quadrāgēnī, -ao, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. IV, 17.

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, forty. I, 2.

quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. I, 5.

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *tr. and intr.*, seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. I, 18.

quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.* [quaerō, inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. I, 52; IV, 13.

quaestus, -ūs, *m.* [quaerō, seek], gain, acquisition.

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind or nature? I, 21.

quam, (1) *adv.*, (a) *interrog.*, how? (b) *rel.*, as; *with sup.* and *with or without posse*, as . . . as possible, very; **quādiū**, as long as; (2) *conj. with comp.*,

than; **prius** . . . **quam**, before; **post** . . . **quam**, **postea** . . . **quam**, after. I, 3.

quāmvīs, *adv.* [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. IV, 2.

quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. III, 12.

quantopere, *adv.* [quantus, how much+opus, work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as. II, 5.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* quam, how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? **quantum**, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; **quantum**, *as adv.*, as much as, as; **quāntō** . . . **tantō** (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. I, 17.

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, *adj.* [quantus, as great as+vis, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.

quārē, *adv.* [quī, which+rēs, thing], (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, 13.

quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quattuor, four], fourth. I, 12.

quasi, *conj.* [qua(m), as+si, if], as if, just as if.

quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, four. I, 12.

quattuordecim (XIV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, fourteen. I, 29.

-que, *conj.* (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; **que** . . . **que**, or **que** . . . **et**, both . . . and. I, 1.

queror, **querī**, **questus sum**, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, 16.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.* (and see **quis**), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; *with force of dem.*, this, that; **quā ob rem**, wherefore; **quem ad modum**, in what manner, how, as; **quō**, *with comparatives*, the; **quō** . . . **oō**, the . . . the. I, 1.

quicquam, see **quisquam**.

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, what-

soever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. I, 31; III, 4.

quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with posse*, how? *e. g.*, *quid Germani possent*, how strong were the Germans. I, 36; II, 4.

quidam, *quaedam*, *quiddam* and *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. I, 30; II, 17.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at least, truly; on the other hand; *nē* . . . **quidem**, not even. I, 16.

quies, *-ētis, f.*, quiet, rest, repose.

quies, *-a, -um, adj.*, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.

quin, *conj.* [*quī*, who or how+*nē*, negative], that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance*, but that, that, from, to; **quin etiam**, nay even, moreover. I, 3.

quinam, *see quisnam*.

quincūx, *-uncis, m.*, *quincunx*, an arrangement like the five spots on a die.

quindecim (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [*quinque*, five+*decem*, ten], fifteen. I, 15.

quingenti, *-ae, -a (D)*, *card. num. adj.* [*quinque*, five+*centum*, hundred], five hundred. I, 15.

quini, *-ae, -a, distr. num. adj.* [*quinque*, five], five each, five at a time, five. I, 15.

quingūāgintā (L), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fifty. I, 41; II, 4.

quinque (V), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, five. I, 10.

quintus, *-a, -um, ord. num. adj.* [*quinque*, five], fifth. I, 6.

quis, **quid**, and **quī**, *quae*, **quod** (App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? *quam ob rem*, why? *quem ad modum*, how? (2) *indef. pron.*, especially after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, *num*, anyone, anything, any; somebody, something, some. I, 7.

quisnam, **quidnam**, and **quīnam**, **quāenam**, **quodnam**, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and a), who? which? what? who then? what pray? II, 30.

quispiam, **quidpiam**, and **quispiam**,

quispiam, **quodpiam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any one, any.

quisquam, **quicquam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person or thing I, 19.

quisque, **quidque**, and **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one all. I, 5.

quisquis, **quicquid**, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever whatever. II, 17.

quīvis, **quāvis**, **quidvis**, and **quīvis**, **quāvis**, **quodvis**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [*quī*, who+*vis*, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything any whatever, any. II, 31.

quō, *adv.* [*old dat. case form of quī*, who which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, any where. I, 48; II, 8.

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of quī*, who which], in order that, so that, that. I, 8.

quoad, *adv.* [*quō*, whither+*ad*, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, 11.

quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter o*, *quī*, who, which], as to which, in that that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; **quod sī**, but if; **propter eā quod**, because. I, 1.

quōminus, *conj.* [*quō*, so that+*minus* not], so that not, that not; from. I, 31; IV, 22.

quoniam, *conj.* [*quom* = *cum*, since+*iam*, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. I, 35.

quoque, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. I, 1.

quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction all around. III, 23.

quot, *adj.*, *indecl.*, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. I, 29.

quotannis, *adv.* [*quot*, as many as+*annus*, year], every year, yearly. I, 36; IV, 1.

quotiens, *adv.* [*quot*, how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. I, 43.

R

rādix, -icis, *f.*, root; *in pl. with montis or collis*, foot, base. I, 38.

rādō, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, *tr.*, scrape, shave.

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon with four wheels. I, 26.

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. II, 17.

rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness. IV, 17.

rapina, -ae, *f.* [rapiō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. I, 15.

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. III, 12.

rāsus, *see* **rādō**.

ratio, -ōnis, *f.* [reor, reckon], reckon-ing, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. I, 28.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. I, 8.

Rauraci, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'ra-si). I, 5.

re- and **red-**, inseparable prefixes, again, back, un-, re-

rebelliō, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.

Rebillus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Caninius**.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [re-+cēdō, go], go back, retire.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.

recēnsēō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsu, *tr.*, inspect, review.

receptāculum, -ī, *n.* [recipiō, receive], retreat, refuge.

receptus, *see* **recipiō**.

receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.

recessus, -ūs, *m.* [recēdō, go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsū, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [re-+cipiō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow;

with **sē**, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. I, 5.

recitō, 1, *tr.*, read aloud.

reclinō, 1, *tr.* [re-+clinō, incline], lean back, recline, lean.

rectē, *adv.* [rēctus, straight], properly, rightly.

rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [regō, keep straight], straight.

recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. III, 8.

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with **periculum**, shrink from. I, 31; III, 22.

redāctus, *see* **redigō**.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.

redēptus, *see* **redimō**.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [red-+eō, go. App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. I, 29.

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [red-+agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, 45; II, 14.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [red-+emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, 18.

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [red-+integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 25.

reditō, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō, return], return. I, 5.

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [redeō, return], returning, return. IV, 30.

Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). II, 34.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [re-+dūcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.

refectus, *see* **reficiō**.

referō, **referre**, **rettulī**, **relātum**, *tr.* [re-+ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry or bring back, report; **pedem referre**, go back, retreat; **grātiam referre**, show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, 25.

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [**re-**+**faciō**, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with* **sē**, refresh one's self, rest. III, 5.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractum, tr. [**re-**+**frangō**, break], break in or open; break, diminish. II, 33.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, intr. [**re-**+**fugiō**], flee back, retreat; escape.

Rēginus, -ī, m., see Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis, f. [**regō**, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; **ē regione**, *with* **gen.**, opposite. I, 44; II, 4.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [**rēx**, king], of a king, royal.

rēgnō, 1, intr. [**rēgnum**, royal power], reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, n. [**rēx**, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I, 2.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, tr., keep straight; guide, direct, control. III, 13.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [**re-**+**iaciō**, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. I, 24.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, intr. [**re-**+**languēscō**, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. II, 15.

relātus, see referō.

relēgō, 1, tr. [**re-**+**lēgō**, depute], send away; remove.

relictus, -a, -um, see relinquō.

religiō, -ōnis, f., religion; *in pl.*, religious observances, rites; superstitions.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, tr. [**re-**+**linquō**, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. I, 9.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [**relinquō**, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n. as noun*, remainder, rest. I, 1.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, intr. [**re-**+**maneō**, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. I, 39; IV, 1.

rēmex, -igis, m. [*cf.* **rēmus**, oar], oarsman, rower. III, 9.

rēmigō, 1, intr. [**rēmex**, rower], row.

remigrō, 1, intr. [**re-**+**migrō**, move], move back, return. IV, 4.

reminiscor, -ī, intr. [**mēns**, mind], call to mind, remember. I, 13.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [**re-**+**mittō**, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; **remissus, pf. part. as adj.**, mild. I, 43; II, 15.

remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, intr., become weak, become enervated. IV, 2.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [**re-**+**moveō**, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw; **remōtus, pf. part. as adj.**, remote, far away. I, 19.

remūneror, 1, tr. [**re-**+**mūneror**, present], repay, reward. I, 44.

rēmus, -ī, m., oar. III, 13.

Rēmus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to or one of the Remi; *pl. as noun*, **Rēmī, m.** (Bef), the Remi (**rēmī**). II, 3.

rēnō, -ōnis, m., deerskin.

renovō, 1, tr. [**re-**+**novus**, new], renew. III, 2.

renūntiō, 1, tr. [**re-**+**nūntius**, message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I, 10.

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, tr. [**re-**+**pellō**, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I, 8.

repente, adv. [**repēns**, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 52; II, 33.

repentinus, -a, -um, adj. [**repēns**, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I, 13.

reperiō, reperire, repperī, reperitum, tr. [**re-**+**pariō**, procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. I, 18.

repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, tr. [**re-**+**petō**, seek], seek or ask again demand back; *with* **poenās**, exact, in flict. I, 30.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, tr. [**re-**+**pleō**, fill], fill again, replenish supply.

reportō, 1, tr. [**re-**+**portō**, carry], carry or bring back, convey. IV, 29.

reposcō, -poscere, —, —, tr. [**re-**]

poscō, demand], demand back, exact, ask for.

reppulī, *see* **repellō**.

repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [**re**+**praesēns**, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.

reprehendō, -**prehendere**, -**prehendī**, -**prehensum**, *tr.* [**re**+**prehendō** (= **prēndō**), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. I, 20.

reprimō, -**primere**, -**pressī**, -**pressum**, *tr.* [**re**+**primō**, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. III, 14.

repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. I, 40.

repugnō, 1, *intr.* [**re**+**pugnō**, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.

repulsus, *see* **repellō**.

requirō, -**quirere**, -**quisivī**, -**quisitum**, *tr.* [**re**+**quaerō**, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.

rēs, *rei*, *f.*, of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frumentāria**, supplies; **rēs militāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs publica**, state; **rēs actae**, deeds, achievements; **quam ob rem**, *see* **quī and quis**. I, 2.

rescindō, -**scindere**, -**scidī**, -**scissum**, *tr.* [**re**+**scindō**, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. I, 7.

resciscō, -**sciscere**, -**scivī**, -**scitum**, *tr.* [**re**+**sciscō**, inquire], find out, learn. I, 28.

rescribō, -**scribere**, -**scripsī**, -**scriptum**, *tr.* [**re**+**scribō**, write], write again; transfer. I, 42.

reservō, 1, *tr.* [**re**+**servō**, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 3.

resideō, -**sīdēre**, -**sēdī**, —, *intr.* [**re**+**sedeō**, sit], sit back; remain.

residō, -**sīdere**, -**sēdī**, —, *intr.* [**re**+**sīdō** sit down], settle, become calm.

resistō, -**sistere**, -**stitī**, —, *intr.* [**re**+**sistō**, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.

respicō, -**spicere**, -**spexī**, -**spectrum**, *tr.* [**re**+**speciō**, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.

respondeō, -**spondēre**, -**spondī**, -**spōnsum**, *tr. and intr.* [**spondeō**, promise], reply, answer. I, 7.

respōnsum, -**i**, *n.* [**respondeō**, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.

respuō, -**spuere**, -**spuī**, —, *tr.*, reject, spurn. I, 42.

restinguō, -**stinguere**, -**stinxi**, -**stinctum**, *tr.*, extinguish.

restiti, *see* **resistō**.

restituō, -**stituere**, -**stitui**, -**stitūtum**, *tr.* [**re**+**statuō**, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.

retineō, 2, *tr.* [**re**+**teneō**, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.

retrahō, -**trahere**, -**trāxi**, -**tractum**, *tr.* [**re**+**trahō**, drag], drag back; bring back.

rettulī, *see* **referō**.

revellō, -**vellere**, -**velli**, -**vulsum**, *tr.* [**re**+**vellō**, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. I, 52.

revertō, -**vertere**, -**vertī**, -**versum**, *intr.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and **revertor**, -**vertī**, -**versus sum**, *intr.*, used in the tenses formed on the present stem [**re**+**vertō**, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.

revinciō, -**vīncire**, -**vīnxi**, -**vīnctum**, *tr.* [**re**+**vinciō**, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.

revocō, 1, *tr.* [**re**+**vocō**, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.

rēx, **rēgis**, *m.*, king. I, 31; II, 4.

Rhēnus, -**i**, *m.* (ABCfgh), the river Rhene (**rē'nūs**), better the Rhine. I, 1.

Rhodanus, -**i**, *m.* (CDfgh), the river Rhodanus (**rōd'ā-nūs**), better the Rhone. I, 1.

ripa, -**ae**, *f.*, bank (of a stream). I, 6.

rīvus, -**i**, *m.*, small stream, brook.

rōbur, -**oris**, *n.*, oak. III, 13.

rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. I, 7

Rōma, -**ae**, *f.*, Rome. I, 31.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rōma, Rome], Roman; *as noun*, a Roman. I, 3.

* **Rōscius**, -cī, *m.*, Lucius Roscius (lū'shyūs rōsh'yūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rōstrum, -ī, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship.

III, 13.

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. IV, 33.

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. II, 17.

Rūfus, -ī, *m.* See Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. II, 1.

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. II, 29.

rūrsus, *adv.* [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. I, 25.

Rutēni, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni, (rū'tē'nī). I, 45.

Rutillus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Sempronius Rutillus (mār'kūs sēm-prō'nī-ūs rū'tīlūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

S.

Sabinus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'tūs tī-tū'rī-ūs sā-bī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 5.

Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the river Sabis (sā-bīs). II, 16.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.* [sacer, sacred], priest.

sacrāmentum, -ī, *n.* [sacrō, sacer, sacred], oath.

sacrificium, -cī, *n.* [sacer, sacred + faciō, make], sacrifice.

saepe, often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepe numerō**, often, time and again, frequently; *comp.* **saepius**, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, 1.

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. II, 17.

saeviō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. III, 13.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. IV, 25.

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. II, 7.

sagulum, -ī, *n.*, a military cloak.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, pass, wooded ravine, glade.

salūs, salūtis, *f.* [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation,

deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). I, 27.

Samarobriva, -ae, *f.* (Be), Samarobriva (sām'brō-brī'va).

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.* [*cf.* sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sānctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. I, 30; III, 9.

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood.

sānitās, -tātis, *f.* [sānus, sound], soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, 42.

sānō, 1, *tr.* [sānus, sound], make sound; make good, repair.

Santonī, -ōrum, or **Santonēs**, -um, *m.* (Ded), the Santoni (sān'tō-nī), or **Santonēs** (sān'tō-nēz). I, 10.

sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound; sensible, sane.

sānxī, see sanciō.

sapiō, -ere, -ivī, —, *intr.*, taste; be wise, understand.

sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (*of individual soldiers, which they carried*). I, 24.

sarciō, sarcīre, sarsī, sartum, *tr.*, make good, repair, compensate for.

sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. III, 18.

satis, *adv.*, and *indecl. adj. and noun*, (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. I, 3.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [satis, enough + faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. I, 14.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. I, 41.

saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. III, 4.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. II, 29.

scālae, -ārum, *f.* [scandō, climb], stairs; scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -is, *m.* (Aef), the river Scaldis (skāl'dīs) or Scheldt.

scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. IV, 26.

scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [scelerō, pollute], accursed, infamous; *as noun*, criminal.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. I, 14.
scienter, *adv.* [sciō, know], knowingly, skillfully.
scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. I, 47; II, 20.
scindō, scindere, scidi, scisum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. III, 5.
sciō, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, understand. I, 20.
scorpīō, -ōnis, *m.*, scorpion, a military engine for hurling missiles.
scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *tr.*, write, record or make mention in writing. II, 29.
scrobis, -is, *m. and f.*, pit.
scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield, buckler; oblong, convex (2½×4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. I, 25.
sē- and sēd-, inseparable prefix, apart, away.
sē, see **sui**.
sēbum, -i, *n.*, tallow.
secō, secāre, secui, sectum, *tr.*, cut, reap.
sēcŕētō, *adv.* [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. I, 18.
sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. II, 53.
sector, 1, *tr.* [freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, chase after.
sectūra, -ae, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III, 21.
secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. I, 33; II, 18.
secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flūmine, down the river. I, 14.
secūris, -is, *f.*, axe; Roman authority, because the axe and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.
secūtus, see **sequor**.
sēd-, see **sē-**.
sed, *conj.*, but, but yet (a stronger adverbative than autem or at). I, 12.
sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, sixteen. I, 8.

sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. I, 31; IV, 4.
sēditō, -ōnis, *f.* [sēd-+eō, go], insurrection, sedition.
sēditiosus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēditō, sedition], seditious, mutinous. I, 17.
Sedulius, -ii, *m.*, Sedulius (sē-dū'li-ūs), a chief of the Lemovices.
Sedūni, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'nī). III, 1.
Sedusi, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusi (sē-dū'shyi). I, 51.
seges, -etis, *f.*, growing grain, field of grain.
Segni, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Segni (sēg'ni).
Segontiaci, -ōrum, *m.* (Acđ), the Segontiaci (sē-gōn'shī-ā'si or sēg'ōn-shī-ā'si).
Segovax, -actis, *m.*, Segovax (sēg'ō-vaks), a king of Kent.
Seguslavi, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Seguslavi (sēg'ū-shī-ā'vi). I, 10.
semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; **semel atque iterum**, repeatedly; **ut semel**, as soon as. I, 31.
sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], sowing. I, 3.
sēmita, -ae, *f.*, narrow path, by-way, foot-path.
semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. I, 18.
Sempronius, -ni, *m.*, see **Rutilus**.
senātor, -ōris, *m.* [senex, old], elder; senator. II, 28.
senātus, -ūs, *m.* [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; esp., the administrative council of Rome. I, 3.
senex, senis, *adj.*, old; as noun, old man. I, 29.
sēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. I, 15.
Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sēn'ō-nēz). II, 2.
sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentio, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. I, 45; II, 10.
sentio, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsus, *tr.*, perceive, be aware of, notice; expe-

rience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, 18.

sentis, -is, *m.*, briar. II, 17.

sēparātim, *adv.* [sēparō, separate], separately, privately. I, 19.

sēparō, 1, *tr.* [sē+parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; **sēparātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. IV, 1.

septem (VII), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., seven. II, 4.

septentrionēs, -um, *m.* [septem, seven +trionēs, plough oxen], the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North. I, 1.

septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seventh. I, 10.

septingenti, -ae, -a (DCC), *card. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seven hundred.

septuagintā (LXX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl. [septem, seven], seventy. IV, 12.

sepultura, -ae, *f.*, burial. I, 26.

Sēquana, -ae, *m.* (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wā-nā), better, Seine. I, 1.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, Sēquani (Cf), the Sequani (sēk'wā-ni). I, 1.

sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with **poena**, be inflicted; **fidem sequi**, seek the protection. I, 4.

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, interview, speech.

sērō, *adv.*, late, too late.

serō, serere, sēvi, satum, *tr.*, sow, plant.

Sertorius, -ri, *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'ri-ūs), a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. III, 23.

servilis, -e, *adj.* [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40.

serviō, 4, *intr.* [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. IV, 5.

servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. I, 11.

Servius, -vi, *m.*, Servius (sēr'vi-ūs), a Roman praenomen. III, 1.

servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, 33.

servus, -i, *m.*, slave, servant. I, 27.

sescenti, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.*, [sex, six], six hundred. I, 38; II, 16.

sēsē, see sui.

sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui, one and a half+pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, 17.

sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. I, 49; IV, 17.

seu, see sive.

severitās, -tātis, *f.*, sternness, severity.

sēvocō, 1, *tr.* [sē+vocō, call], call aside or apart.

sex (VI), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., six. I, 27.

sexagintā (LX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl. [sex, six], sixty. II, 4.

Sextius, -ti, *m.* (1) Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'ti-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. II, 25. (2) Titus Sextius (tī'tūs sēks'ti-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; quod sī, but if, now if. I, 7.

sibi, see sui.

Sibusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tēz). III, 27.

sic, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; sic ... ut, so ... that; so ... as. I, 38; II, 4.

siccitās, -tātis, *f.* [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. IV, 38.

sicut or **sicuti**, *adv.* [sic, so+ut(i), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, 44.

sidus, -eris, *n.*, star; constellation.

signifer, -erī, *m.* [signum, standard+ferō, bear], standard-bearer. II, 25.

significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, 33.

significō, 1, *tr.* [signum, sign+faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, 7.

signum, -i, *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signis discōdere,

withdraw from the ranks; **signa inferre**, advance to the attack; **signa convertere inferre**, face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre**, advance on the march; direct the attack; **signa convertere**, face or wheel about; **ad signa convenire**, join the army. I, 25.

Silānus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Silanus (mār'kūs sī-lā'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, -tī, *n.*, silence, stillness.

Silius, -iī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tī'tūssīl'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. I, 19.

silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. II, 18.

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. III, 13.

similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [similis, like], likeness, resemblance.

simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, thereupon; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and, partly . . . partly; **simul atque**, as soon as. I, 19.

simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [simulō, make like], image, statue.

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretence, deceit, disguise. I, 40; IV, 13.

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. I, 44; IV, 4.

simultās, -tātis, *f.*, jealousy, rivalry.

sīn, *conj.*, if however, but if. I, 13.

sincērē, *adv.* [sincērus, sincere], sincerely, truthfully.

sine, *prep.* with *abl.*, without. I, 7.

singillātīm, *adv.* [singulī, one each], singly, one by one; individually. III, 2.

singulāris, -e, *adj.* [singulī, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, 24.

singulī, -ae, -a, *istrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in **annōs singulōs**, annually. I, 6.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing. as noun* (sc. manus), the left hand; **sub sinistrā**, on the left. I, 25.

sinistrōrsus, *adv.* [sinister, left+ver-sus, from **vertō**, turn], to the left.

situs, -ūs, *m.* [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. III, 12.

sive and seu, *conj.* [sī, if+ve, or], or if, if; or; whether; **sive . . . sive**, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or, I, 12.

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. I, 12.

societās, -tātis, *f.* [socius, ally], alliance.

socius, -cī, *m.* [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. I, 5.

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun or west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun or east. I, 1.

sōlācium, -cī, *n.* [sōlor, console], comfort, solace.

soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. III, 22.

solēō, solēre, solitus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, be wont, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, 18.

sollertia, -ae, *f.* [sollers, skillful], skill, expertness; ingenuity.

sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, 1.

sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sollicitus, anxious], anxiety, worry, apprehension.

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, 11.

sōlum, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. I, 12.

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen. sōlius* (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. I, 18.

solvō,olvere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; with or without **nāvēs**, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, 23.

sonitus, -ūs, *m.* [cf. sonō, sound], sound, din.

sonus, -ī, *m.* [cf. sonō, sound], sound.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. I, 18.

sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. I, 50.

Sotiatēs, -lum, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). III, 20.

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. I, 7.

speciēs, -ēi, f. [*speciō*, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretence. I, 51; II, 31.

spectō, 1, tr. [*freq. of speciō*, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. I, 1.

speculātor, -ōris, m. [*speculor*, spy], spy, scout. II, 11.

speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj. [*speculātor*, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV, 26.

speculor, 1, intr. [*cf. speciō*, look], spy. I, 47.

spērō, 1, tr. [*spēs*, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I, 3.

spēs, -ei, f., hope, anticipation, expectation. I, 5.

spīritus, -ūs, m. [*spīrō*, breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. I, 33; II, 4.

spoliō, 1, tr., strip, despoil.

spontis, gen. and sponte, abl. [*obsolete nom., spōns*], *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. I, 9.

stabilīō, 4, tr. [*stabilis*, firm], make firm, fix.

stabilitās, -tātis, f. [*stabilis*, firm], firmness, steadiness. IV, 33.

statim, adv. [*stō*, stand], *as one stands*, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. I, 53; II, 11.

statiō, -ōnis, f. [*stō*, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; *in statiōne esse*, be on guard. II, 18.

statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, tr. [*status*, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I, 11.

statūra, -ae, f. [*status*; *stō*, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. II, 30.

status, -ūs, m. [*stō*, stand], standing, condition, status; position.

stimulus, -i, m., goad; *stake with barbed iron point set in the ground as a defence*.

stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj. [*stipendium*, tribute], paying tribute, tributary; *pl. as noun*, tributaries. I, 30.

stipendium, -di, n., tax, tribute. I, 36.

stipes, -itis, m., log, trunk; stake.

stirps, -pis, m., stem, stock; race.

stō, stāre, steti, stātum, intr., stand; abide by.

strāmentum, -i, n., covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.

strepitus, -ūs, m. [*strepō*, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II, 11.

studeō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accustom one's self to. I, 9.

studiōsē, adv. [*studiōsus*, eager], eagerly, zealously.

studium, -di, n. [*studeō*, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I, 19.

stultitia, -ae, f. [*stultus*, foolish], foolishness, folly.

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to: (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of: (b) *of time*, during, within: *in compounds*, sub or subs, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I, 7.

subāctus, see subigō.

subdolus, -a, -um, adj. [*dolus*, deceit], subtle, crafty.

subducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [*ducō*, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; *with nāvēs*, haul up, beach. I, 22.

subductiō, -ōnis, f. [*subducō*, beach], beaching.

subeō, -īre, -ii, -itum, tr. [*eō*, go. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I, 5.

subesse, see subsum.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [*iaciō*, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I, 26.

subigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [*agō*, lead, drive], subdue, reduce.

subitō, adv. [*subitus*, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, 39; II, 19.

subitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**subeō**, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III, 7.

sublātus, *see tollō*.

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [**levō**, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I, 16.

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake. IV, 17.

subluō, -luere, —, -lūtum, wash, flow around the base.

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [**ministrō**, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, 40; III, 25.

submittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II, 6.

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō**, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, 25.

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [**ruō**, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, 6.

subsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor**, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. II, 11.

subsidiū, -dī, *n.* [**subsideo**, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, 52; II, 6.

subsido, -siedere, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit down, remain.

subsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [**sistō**, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, 15.

subsum, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. I, 25.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō**, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. I, 44.

subvectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**subvehō**, convey], conveying; transportation.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō**, carry], bring or carry up; convey. I, 16.

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], come or go to help, aid, succor.

succedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [**sub+cēdō**, go], go or come under; come up to, come up, advance,

be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, 24.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *tr.* [*cf.* **candēō**, shine], set on fire below, kindle, burn.

succidō, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsum, *tr.* [**sub+cēdō**, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, 19.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -eubitum, *intr.* [*cf.* **cubō**, lie], sink under; yield.

succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *m.* [**sub+currō**, run], run to help, aid, assist.

sudis, -is, *f.*, pile, stake.

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or pertaining to the Suebi, Suevo; *pl. as noun*, **Suēbī** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bī), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. I, 37; IV, 1.

Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swēs'i-ō'nēs). II, 3.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *intr.* [**sub+faciō**, make], be sufficient.

suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossū, *tr.* [**sub+fodiō**, dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, 12.

sufrāgiū, -gī, *n.*, vote, ballot.

Sugambri, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). IV, 16.

suggestus, -ūs, *m.*, platform, stage, tribunal.

sui, **sibi**, **sē**, or **sēsē**, *reflex. pron. of 3d person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; *inter sē*, *see inter and* App. 166. I, 1.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sū'l'a), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. I, 21.

Sulpicius, -cī, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'li-ūs sūl-pīsh'yūs ruf'fūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV, 22.

sum, **esse**, **fui**, (App. 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; *with gen. in predicate*, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; *with dat. of possessor*, have. I, 1.

summa, -ae, *f.* [**summus**, highest], the

- main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperi**, the chief command. I, 29.
- summus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of superus*, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; pre-eminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I, 16.
- sūmō**, **sūmere**, **sūmpsi**, **sūptum**, *tr.*, [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with **supplicium**, inflict; with labor, spend. I, 7.
- sūmptuosus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sūmptus**, expense], expensive.
- sūmptus**, -ūs, *m.* [**sūmō**, spend], expense. I, 18.
- sūmptus**, *see sūmō*.
- super**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, over, on.
- superbē**, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. I, 31.
- superior**, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of superus*, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former. I, 10.
- superō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**super**, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vītā superāre**, survive. I, 17.
- supersedeō**, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II, 8.
- supersum**, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. I, 23.
- superus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**super**, 'above], over, above; *comp.*, *see superior*; *sup.*, *see summus*.
- suppetō**, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *intr.* [**sub+petō**, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I, 3.
- supplēmentum**, -ī, *n.* [**suppleō**, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.
- supplex**, -icis, *m. and f.*, suppliant. II, 28.
- supplicātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**supplex**, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. II, 35.
- suppliciter**, *adv.* [**supplex**, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I, 27.
- supplicium**, -ci, *n.* [**sub+plicō**, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. I, 19.
- supportō**, 1, *tr.* [**sub+portō**, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I, 39; III, 3.
- suprā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) as *adv.*, before, previously; (2) as *prep. with acc.*, above; before. II, 1.
- suscipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [**su(b)s+capio**, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. I, 3.
- suspectus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**suspiciō**, suspect], suspected, distrusted.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**suspicio**, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I, 4.
- suspico**, 1, *tr.* [**suspiciō**, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. I, 44; IV, 6.
- sustentō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of sustineō*, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II, 6.
- sustineō**, 2, *tr. and intr.* [**su(b)s+teneō**, hold], hold up from below; hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I, 24.
- sustulī**, *see tollō*.
- suus**, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj.* referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a), [**sui**, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua**, *n. pl. as noun*, one's property; **sui**, *m. pl. as noun*, their men (friends or countrymen). I, 1.

T.

- T.** *abbr. for Titus* (tītūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 10.
- tabernāculum**, -ī, *n.*, tent. I, 39.
- tabula**, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet; list. I, 29.
- tabulātum**, -ī, *n.* [*cf. tabula*, board], flooring of boards; story.
- taceō**, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep

silent, pass over in silence; *tacitus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. I, 17.

tālea, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, such a; such a great; so great a.

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. I, 14.

**amen*, *adv.* (*opposed to some expressed or implied concession*), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, 7.

Tamesis, -is, *m.* (Acđ), the river Tamesis (*tām' ē-sis*), better, the Thames.

tametsi, *conj.* [*tamen*, however+etsi, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. I, 80.

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as quid tandem*, what, pray? what then? I, 25.

tangō, *tangere*, *tetigī*, *tāctum*, *tr.*, touch, border on.

tantopere, *adv.* [*tantus*, so great+opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, 31.

tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of tantus*, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. II, 30.

tantum, *adv.* [*tantus*, so great], so much, so, so far; only, merely.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, 5.

tantundem, *adv.* [*tantus*, so great], so much or so far.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf. tam*, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; *quantō . . . tantō*, *with comparatives*, see *quantō*. I, 15.

Tarbelli, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (*tār-bēl'i*). III, 27.

tardē, *adv.* [*tardus*, slow], slowly; *comp. tardius*, too slowly. IV, 23.

tardō, 1, *tr.* [*tardus*, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. II, 25.

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. II, 25.

Tarusātes, -ium, *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (*tār'ū-sā'tēz*). III, 23.

Tasgetius, -tī, *m.*, Tasgetius (*tās-jē'shyūs*), a chief of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, *m.*, bull.

Taximagulus, -i, *m.*, Taximagulus (*tāk'-sī-māg'ū-lūs*), a king of Kent.

taxus, -i, *f.*, yew-tree, yew.

Tectosagēs, -um, *m.* (Ede), the Tectosages (*tēk-tōs'ā-jēz*).

tēctum, -i, *n.* [*tegō*, cover], covering, roof; house. I, 36.

tēctus, see *tegō*.

tegimentum, -i, *n.* [*tegō*, cover], a covering. II, 21.

tegō, *tegere*, *tēxī*, *tēctum*, *tr.*, cover, hide; protect, defend.

tēlum, -i, *n.*, a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. I, 8.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*temerē*, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, 31.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. I, 40; IV, 20.

temeritās, -tātis, *f.* [*temerē*, rashly], rashness, indiscretion.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). IV, 33.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [*temperō*, control one's self], prudence, self-control. I, 19.

temperō, 1, *intr.*, restrain or control one's self, refrain; *temperātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. I, 7.

tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [*tempus*, time], time, season; weather, usually bad weather, storm, tempest. III, 12.

temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, 14.

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division or section of time, a time, time (*in general*); occasion, crisis; *omni tempore*, always; *in reliquum tempus*, for the future; *unō tempore*, at the same time, at once. I, 3.

Tencteri, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (*tēngk'tē-ri*). IV, 1.

tendō, *tendere*, *tetendī*, *tentum* or *tēnsūm*, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent*, pitch; encamp. II, 13.

tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, darkness.

teneō, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, *tentum*, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; *sē tenēre*, remain; *memoriā tenēre*, remember. I, 7.

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. II, 17.

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.

tenuitās, -tātis, *f.* [tenuis, thin], thinness, poverty.

tenuiter, *adv.* [tenuis, thin], thinly. III, 13.

ter, *num. adv.* [*cf.* trēs, three], three times. I, 53.

teres, -etis, rounded; tapering.

tergum, -i, *n.*, the back; *terga vertere*, to flee; *post tergum* or *ab tergō*, in the rear. I, 53; III, 19.

terni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. III, 15.

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; **terrae** (*pl.*) and **orbis terrarum**, the world. I, 32; III, 15.

Terrasidius, -dī, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tī' tūs tēr' a-sid' i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra, earth], of earth. I, 43.

terreō, 2, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

terrītō, 1, *tr.* [*freq.* of terreō, frighten], frighten, terrify, alarm.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [terreō, frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12.

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [ter, thrice], third. I, 1.

testāmentum, -i, *n.* [testor, be a witness], will. I, 39.

testimōnium, -nī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, 44.

testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. I, 14.

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a *testudo*, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. II, 6.

Teutomatus, -ī, *m.*, Teutomatus (tū-tōm' a-tūs), son of Ollovico, king of the Nitiobroges; later king himself.

Teutoni, -ōrum or Teutonēs, -um, *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-nī) or Teutones (tū'tō-nēs). I, 33; II, 4.

tēxi, *see* tegō.

ignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. IV, 17.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun*, **Tigurini**

(Cg), the Tigurini (tīg' u-rī' nī). I, 12.

timeō, -ēre, -ui, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; **nihil timēre**, have no fear. I, 14.

timidē, *adv.* [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, 25.

timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, 39.

timor, -ōris, *m.* [timeō, fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, 22.

Titūrius, -rī, *m.*, *see* Sabīnus.

tolerō, 1, *tr.* [*cf.* tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; *with famem*, appease, alleviate. I, 28.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; sublātus, *pf. part as adj.*, elated. I, 5.

Tolosa, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. III, 20.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates (tōlō'sā'tēs), the people of Tolosa. I, 10.

tormentum, -i, *n.* [torqueō, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, *e.g.* catapulta and ballista; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. II, 8.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, *tr.*, scorch, burn.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. III, 10.

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. I, 48; II, 4.

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* tōtius (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. I, 2.

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. II, 29.

tractus, *see* trahō.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [trāns + dō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, 27.

trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [trāns + dūcō, lead], lead across, lead

over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I, 11.

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. I, 26.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. I, 53.

trāciō, -icere, -lēci, -lectum, *tr.* [trāns + iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.

trālectus, -ūs, *m.* [trāciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. IV, 21.

trānō, 1, *intr.* [trāns + nō, swim], swim across. I, 53.

tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. III, 15.

trāns, *prep.* with *acc.*, across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. I, 1.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb over; board. III, 15.

trānsēō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. I, 5.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring over, transfer.

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfix. I, 25.

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fodi, -fossum, *tr.* [fodiō, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.

trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [gridior, step], step over, cross. II, 19.

trānsitus, -ūs, *m.* [trānsēō, go across], crossing, passage.

trānslātus, *see* trānsferō.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], across the sea, foreign.

trānsmisus, -ūs, *m.* [trānsmittō, send across], sending across; passage.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send across.

trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry

across or over, bring over, convey, transport. I, 37; IV, 16.

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun.*

Trānsrhēnāni, the people across the Rhine. IV, 16.

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, cross-beam, thwart. III, 13.

trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [trāns-vertō, turn across], turned across, cross. II, 8.

Trebius, -bi, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bi-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Trebōnius, -nī, *m.* (1) Gaius Trebonius (gā'yūs trē-bō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Gaius Trebonius, a Roman knight.

trecenti, -ae, -a (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three+centum, hundred], three hundred. IV, 37.

trepidō, 1, *intr.*, hurry about in alarm; *pass.*, be disturbed or in confusion.

trēs, tria, *gen. trium* (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. I, 1.

Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.*

Trēveri (Bigh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). I, 37; II, 24.

Triboci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). I, 51; IV, 10.

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or militāris, a military tribune. I, 39; II, 26.

tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum, *tr.* [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I, 13.

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [tribuō, render, pay], tribute, tax.

trīdium, -ī, *n.* [trēs, three+diēs, day], three days. I, 26.

triennium, -nī, *n.* [trēs, three+annus, year], three years. IV, 4.

trīgintā (XXX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [trēs, three], thirty. I, 26.

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. I, 53.

Trinovantēs, -um, *m.* (Ad), the Trinovantes (trīn'ō-vān'tēz).

tripertitō, *adv.* [trēs, three+partior, divide], in three parts or divisions.

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs, three+plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. I, 24.

triquetrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, triangular.

tristis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. I, 32.

tristitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness. I, 32.

Troucillus, -i, *m.*, see Valerius.

truncus, -i, *m.*, trunk of trees. IV, 17.

tū, *tui* (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. II, 20.

tueor, *tuēri*, *tūtus sum*, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. IV, 8.

tuli, see *ferō*.

Tulingi, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lin'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

Tullius, -ii, *m.*, see Cicero.

Tullus, -i, *m.*, see Volcācius.

tum, *adv.*, then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also; *cum* . . . *tum*, both . . . and, not only . . . but also. I, 17.

tumultuor, 1, *intr.* [tumultus, disorder], make a disturbance; *impers.*, there is a disturbance.

tumultuōsē, *adv.* [tumultus, disorder], with confusion or noise.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, 40; II, 11.

tumulus, -i, *m.* [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. I, 43; II, 27.

turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of about thirty cavalymen. IV, 33.

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tū-rō-nī). II, 35.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, 33; IV, 2.

turpiter, *adv.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.

turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. II, 27.

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. II, 12.

tūtō, *adv.* [tūtus, safe], safely, securely. III, 13.

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. II, 5.

tuus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [tū, you], your, yours.

U.

ubi, *adv.* (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; **ubi primum**, as soon as. I, 5.

Ubii, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bi-i). I, 54; IV, 3.

ubique, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, 16.

ulciscor, *ulcisci*, *ultus sum*, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, 12.

ullus, -a, -um, *gen.*, ullius (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; as *noun*, any one, anybody. I, 7.

ulterior, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as *noun*, those in the rear. III, 27.

ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. I, 48.

ultrō, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. I, 42; III, 27.

ultus, see *ulciscor*.

ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, yell, shriek.

umerus, -i, *m.*, the shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam**, and never, never. I, 41; III, 28.

ūnā, *adv.* [ūnus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place. (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, 5.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. I, 28.

ūndecim (XI), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [ūnus, one+decem, ten], eleven.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [ūndecim, eleven], eleventh. II, 23.

ūndevigintī, *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [ūnus, one+dō, from+vigintī, twenty], nineteen. I, 8.

undique, *adv.* [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, 2.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus, one+

vertō, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all *as a mass*. II, 33.

ūnus, **ūna**, **ūnum**, *gen. ūnius* (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. I, 1.

urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [urbs, city], of or in the city.

urbs, **urbis**, *f.*, city; *especially*, the city, *Rome*. I, 7.

urgēō, **urgēre**, **ursi**, —, *tr.*, press, press hard. II, 25.

ūrus, -ī, *m.*, wild ox.

Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, the Usipetes (ū-sīp'-ē-tēz). IV, 1.

ūsītātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūsitor, use often], ordinary, familiar.

usque, *adv.* (1) *of place*, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) *of time*, up to, till; *with ad.* until. I, 50; III, 15.

ūsus, *see* ūtor.

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; **ūsus est**, there is need; **ūsui esse** or **ex ūsū esse**, be of advantage or service; **ūsū venīre**, come by necessity; happen. I, 30; II, 9.

ut and **utī**, *adv. and conj.*, (1) *as interrog.*, how? (2) *as rel. adv. and conj.*, as, in proportion as, just as; inasmuch as; as if; (3) *as conj.* (a) *with ind.*, when, after; (b) *with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not. I, 2.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *gen. utrius* (App. 32), *adj.* (1) *as interrog.*, which one or which of two; (2) *as rel.*, the one who, of two, whichever. I, 12.

utrumque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. I, 34; II, 8.

utī, *see* ut.

ūtī, *see* ūtor.

ūtīlis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor, use], useful, serviceable. IV, 7.

ūtīlītās, -tātīs, *f.* [ūtīlis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, 19.

ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, *intr.*, make use of,

employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; **ūsus**, *pf. part.* often translated with. I, 5.

utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. I, 50; IV, 17.

utrum, *conj.* [uter, which of two], whether; **utrum . . . an**, whether . . . or; **utrum . . . necne**, whether . . . or not. I, 40.

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. I, 18.

V.

V, sign for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -ī, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'-a-lūs) river, now the Waal. IV, 10.

vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. I, 28.

vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vacō, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. II, 12.

vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow. I, 6.

vāgīna, -ae, *f.*, sheath, scabbard.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, 2.

valeō, 2, *intr.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence or strength; **plūrimum valēre**, be very powerful. I, 17.

Valerius, -rī, *m.* (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs trū-sīl'-ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. I, 19. (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (*see* (1) flāk'ūs), Governor of Gaul 83 B.C. I, 47. (3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (*see* (1) kabū'rūs), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. I, 47. (4) Gaius Valerius Proculus (*see* (1) prō-sīl'ūs), son of No. 3. I, 47. (5) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyūs vā-lē'rī-ūs.prāk'nī-nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. III, 20. (6) Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (*see* (1) dōm'nō-taw'rūs), son of No. 3.

Valetiacus, -ī, *m.*, Valetiacus (vāl'ē-shī-ā'kūs), a nobleman of the Haedui.

valētūdō, -inis, *f.* [valeō, be strong], health, poor health.

vallēs, -is, *f.*, vale, valley. III, 1.

vāllum, -ī, *n.* [vāllus, palisade], wall

or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. I, 26.

vallus, -ī, *m.*, stake; palisade.

Vanglonēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vanglones (vān-jī'ō-nēz). I, 51.

varietās, -tātis, *f.* [varius, diverse], diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. II, 22.

vāstō, 1, *tr.* [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, 11.

vāstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. III, 8.

vaticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. I, 50.

-ve, *conj.*, *enclitic*=vel, or.

vectigal, -ālis, *n.* [vectigālis, tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. I, 18.

vectigālis, -e, *adj.* [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. III, 8.

vectorius, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō, carry], for carrying; **vectoria nāvis**, a transport.

vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, 37; III, 22.

vehō, **vehere**, **vexī**, **vectum**, *tr.*, carry; bring along. I, 43.

vel, *conj.* and *adv.* (1) as *conj.*, or; **vel** . . . **vel**, either . . . or; (2) as *adv.*, even. I, 6.

Velānius, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwīn'tūs vē-lā'-nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Vellocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Vellocasses (vē'lī-ō-kās'ēz). II, 4.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Vellaunodunum (vē-law'nō-dū'nūm or vē'lāw-nō-dū'nūm), a town of the Senones.

Vellāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Vellavī (vē-lā'vī-ī).

velōcitās, -tātis, *f.* [vēlōx, swift], swiftness, speed.

vēlōcter, *adv.* [vēlōx, swift], swiftly, speedily.

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. I, 48.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. III, 13.

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. I, 32.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, 1.

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.* [vēnor, hunt], hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, *tr.* [vēnum, sale+dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, 33.

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venellī (vē-nēl'ī). II, 34.

Venetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Venetī (vēn'ē-tī). II, 34.

Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē'shyā), the country of the Venetī. III, 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Venetī, Venetian. III, 18.

venia, -ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor; pardon.

veniō, **venire**, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; in **spem venire**, have hopes; *pass.* often *imper.* as **ventum est**, they came, it came, etc. I, 8.

ventitō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of **veniō**, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, 3.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind. III, 13.

vēr, **vērīs**, *n.*, the spring.

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragrī (vē'r-ā-grī). III, 1.

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bij-ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. I, 27.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; **verba facere**, plead. I, 20.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, Vercassivellaunus (vēr-kās'vī-ē-law'nūs).

Vercingetorix, -igis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (vēr'-sīn-jēt'ō-riks), an Arvernian, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls.

vereor, **verērī**, **veritus sum**, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, 19.

vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, look or lie towards, be situated; slope. I, 1.

vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret (vēr'-gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui. I, 16.

veritus, see **vereor**.

vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, 32; II, 2.

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass.* as

- deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, 48; II, 1.
- versus**, *adv.* [vertō, turn], turned to; toward.
- versus**, -ūs, *m.* [vertō, turn], turning; verse.
- Verticō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Vertico (vēr'tī-kō), one of the Nervii.
- vertō**, *vertere*, **vertī**, *versum*, *tr.*, turn, turn around; terga *vertere*, flee. I, 53; III, 19.
- Verucloetius**, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (vēr'ū-kīē'shyūs), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. I, 7.
- vērus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *n.* as noun, the truth; vēri *similis*, likely, probable. I, 18.
- verūtum**, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin.
- Vesontio**, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. I, 38.
- vesper**, -erī, *m.*, evening; sub **vesperum**, towards evening. I, 26.
- vester**, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [vōs, you], your, yours.
- vēstīgium**, -gī, *n.* [vēstīgō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV, 2.
- vestiō**, 4, *tr.*, clothe, cover.
- vestis**, -is, *f.* [cf. **vestiō**, clothe], clothing.
- vestitus**, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, clothe], clothing. IV, 1.
- veterānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus, old], old, veteran; *pl.* as noun, veterans. I, 24.
- vetō**, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid. II, 20.
- vetus**, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; with *militēs*, veteran. I, 13.
- vexillum**, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag, standard. II, 20.
- vexō**, 1, *tr.* [intensive of **vehō**, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, 14.
- via**, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. I, 9.
- viātor**, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. IV, 5.
- vicēni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [cf. **vigintī**, twenty], twenty each, twenty.
- vicēsīmus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [cf. **vigintī**, twenty], twentieth.
- viciēs**, *num. adv.* [cf. **vigintī**, twenty], twenty times.
- vicinitās**, -tātis, *f.* [vicinus, near], neighborhood; *pl.*, neighbors.
- viciis**, *gen.* (no *nom.*), change; only in the *adv. phrase* in *vicem*, alternately, in turn. IV, 1.
- victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim; a sacrificial animal.
- victor**, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as *adj.*, victorious. I, 31; II, 24.
- victōria**, -ae, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. I, 14.
- victus**, see **vincō**.
- victus**, -ūs, *m.* [vivō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, 31.
- vicus**, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. I, 5.
- videō**, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visum**, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in *pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, 6.
- Vienna**, -ae, *f.* (Df), Vienna (vī-ēn'a), modern Vienne.
- vigilia**, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. I, 12.
- vigintī** (XX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., twenty. I, 13.
- vimen**, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, osier. II, 33.
- vinciō**, **vincire**, **vinxi**, **vinctum**, *tr.*, bind. I, 53.
- vincō**, **vincere**, **vici**, **victum**, *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. I, 25.
- vinctus**, see **vinciō**.
- vinculum**, -ī, *n.* [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, 4.
- vindicō**, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, 16.
- vineā**, -ae, *f.* [vinum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. II, 12.
- vinum**, -ī, *n.*, wine. II, 15.
- violō**, 1, *tr.*, harm, injure; devastate.

vir, viri, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. *homō*, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. II, 25.

virēs, see vis.

virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin.

virgultum, -i, n., thicket, brush, brushwood. III, 18.

Viridomārus, -i, m., Viridomarus (vīr'-i-dō-mā'rūs), a chief of the *Haedui*.

Viridovix, -icis, m., Viridovix (vī-rīd'-ō-vīks), a chief of the *Venelli*. III, 17.

virītim, adv. [vir, man], man by man, to each one, individually.

Viromandui, -ōrum, m. (Be), the *Viromandui* (vīr'ō-mān'dū-i). II, 4.

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. I, 1.

vis, vis (App. 27), f., force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, **virēs**, strength, force; **vim facere**, use violence. I, 6.

visus, see videō.

vita, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. I, 16.

vitō, 1, tr., avoid, shun, evade, escape. I, 20.

vitrum, -i, n., woad, a plant used by the *Britons* for dyeing blue.

vivō, vivere, vixi, victum, intr., live; subsist on. IV, 1.

vivus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living.

vix, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I, 6.

Vocātēs, -ium, m. (Dcd), the *Vocates* (vō-kā'tēz). III, 23.

Voccio, -ōnis, m., Voccio (vōk'shyō), a king of *Noricum*. I, 53.

vocō, 1, tr. [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. I, 19.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m. (Df), the *Vocontii* (vō-kōn'shyi). I, 10.

Volcācius, -ci, m., Gaius Volcācius Tullus (gā'yūs vōl-kā'shyūs tūl'ūs), a young man in *Caesar's* army.

Volcae, -ārum, m. (1) Volcae Are-

comici (Eef), the *Volcae Arecomici* (vōl'sē ār'ē-kōm'i-si). (2) *Volcae Tectosagēs* (Ede) (vōl'sē tēk-tōs'a-jēz).

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82), tr. and intr., wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet**, what did he intend or mean? I, 7.

voluntārius, -a, -um, adj. [voluntās, will], willing; *pl.* as noun, volunteers.

voluntās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. I, 7.

voluptās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I, 53.

Volusēnus, -i, m., Gaius Volusenus *Quadratus* (gā'yūs vōl'ū-sē'nūs kwā-drā'tūs), a tribune of *Caesar's* army, afterward commander of cavalry. III, 5.

Vorēnus, -i, m., Lucius Vorenus (lū'shyūs vō-rē'nūs), a centurion in *Caesar's* army.

vōs, see tū.

Vosegus, -i, m. (BCg), the *Vosegus* (vōs'-ē-gūs), better, the *Vosges Mountains*. IV, 10.

voveō, vovēre, vōvi, vōtum, tr., vow.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. I, 32; II, 13.

Vulcānus, -i, m., Vulcanus (vūl-kā'nūs), better *Vulcan*, the god of fire.

vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I, 39; II, 1.

vulgus, -i, n., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I, 20.

vulnerō, 1, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. I, 26.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. I, 25.

vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks. I, 39.

X.

X, sign for decem, ten.

INDEX

TO THE INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND APPENDIX

References in plain-faced type are to pages; in bold-faced type, to sections of the Appendix.

A

Ablative:

- absolute, **150**: I, 2, 2; 3, 21; 8, 6: II, 1, 6; 2, 2; 7, 7.
- of accompaniment, **140**: I, 1, 10; 3, 5; 10, 11: II, 3, 5; 5, 6; 11, 11: III, 11, 14.
- of accordance, **142**, *a*: I, 4, 1; 8, 8; 14, 3: II, 4, 21; 13, 11; 19, 4.
- of agent, **137**: I, 3, 11; 7, 13; 14, 17: II, 1, 7; 5, 3; 10, 1.
- of attendant circumstance, **142**, *b*: I, 18, 22; 22, 15: II, 1, 14; 23, 13.
- of cause, **138**: I, 2, 6; 9, 5; 14, 11: II, 1, 10; 4, 7; 9, 10.
- of comparison, **139**: I, 15, 14; 22, 2; 41, 11: II, 3, 1; 7, 10.
- of degree of difference, **148**: I, 5, 1; 6, 6; 14, 3: II, 7, 8; 20, 4; 30, 7.
- with deponent verbs, **145**: I, 2, 5; 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10.
- descriptive, **141**: I, 6, 11; 7, 15; 18, 6: II, 6, 10; 15, 3; 18, 4.
- with **dignus** and **indignus**, **149**, *a*.
- duration of time, **152**, *a*: I, 26, 13.
- of manner, **142**: I, 7, 2; 10, 8; 25, 10: II, 6, 2; 7, 8; 11, 1.
- of material, **136**: III, 13, 6.
- of means, **143**: I, 1, 2; 2, 7; 8, 1: II, 1, 2; 3, 7; 8, 3.
- with **opus est**, **146**: I, 42, 19: II, 22, 6.
- for partitive genitive, **101**, *b*: II, 6, 11.
- of penalty, **108**.
- of place from which, **134**, *a*: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10.
- of place in which, **151**: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17.
- with prepositions, **153**.

- of separation, **134**: I, 1, 13; 2, 8; 8, 11: II, 6, 6; 9, 13; 11, 15.
- of source, **135**: II, 4, 3; 29, 10: IV, 12, 13.
- with special verbs and adjectives, **143**, *a*: I, 13, 16; 53, 4: II, 27, 2: III, 9, 12; 21, 1.
- of specification, **149**: I, 1, 3; 2, 5; 5, 4: II, 4, 13; 8, 6; 13, 6.
- of time, **152**: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 12, 13: II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3.
- of the way, **144**: I, 6, 1; 9, 1; 16, 5: II, 19, 21: III, 1, 5: IV, 35, 7.
- absum**, 78.
- Accent, **10-12**: in gen. of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 16, *c*.
- Accusative:
 - with adjectives and adverbs, **122**, *b*: I, 46, 2; 54, 3: III, 7, 7: IV, 9, 3.
 - adverbial, **128**, *b*: I, 42, 19: II, 4, 2; 17, 13: IV, 1, 14.
 - cognate, **128**: I, 38, 1.
 - with compound verbs, **127**: I, 12, 5: II, 5, 12; 10, 2.
 - direct object, **124**: I, 1, 1; 2, 15; 5, 11: II, 1, 4; 2, 1; 7, 2.
 - duration of time, **130**: I, 3, 11: II, 29, 14.
 - in exclamations, **129**.
 - extent of space, **130**: I, 2, 16; 8, 4: II, 6, 2; 11, 12; 16, 1.
 - inner, **125**, *b*; **128**, *a*.
 - with passive verbs, **125**, *c*; **127**, *a*: II, 4, 3.
 - place to which, **131**: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.
 - as subject of infinitive, **123**: I, 1, 14; 2, 15; 7, 1: II, 1, 3; 2, 7; 6, 13.

- two accusatives, **125-127**: I, 16, 1; 16, 12; **34**, 6; **38**, 13; II, 2, 7; 3, 3.
- Accusing*, verbs of, constr., 108.
- Acquitting*, verbs of, constr., 108.
- ac sī*, with subjunctive, 261.
- Active voice, 181.
- Adjectives:
- for adverb, 159.
- agreement of, **157**: I, 2, 1; 3, 6; 7, 7; II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1.
- attributive, defined, **156**; agreement of, **157**, *a*, 1.
- comparison, **39-45**.
- declension, 1st and 2nd, **31**, **32**; 3rd, **33-38**.
- meaning of comp. and sup., 161.
- numeral, 47.
- with partitive meaning, **160**: I, 22, 1; 24, 3; **27**, 12; II, 7, 1; 15, 13; 18, 5.
- predicate, **156**: I, 2, 1; 7, 7; II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1.
- as predicate acc., **126**: II, 2, 7.
- used substantively, 158.
- Adverbs, formation and comparison, 46.
- Adversative clause, **239**; **246**, **247**: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16; II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4; III, 9, 16; V, 4, 13.
- Agent, see Dative and Ablative of.
- agger*, 33, 34.
- aliquis*, 62; 175.
- amplius*, 139, *b*: I, 38, 10; 41, 11.
- annōn*, 214.
- Answers, 215.
- antequam*, with ind., 236, *a*; with subj., 236, *b*; as two words, 236, *c*.
- Appositives, 95, *b*: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2; II, 2, 3; 3, 11; 9, 11.
- aquila*, 26; Plate I, 6.
- Arar*, declension of, 25, *a*.
- Armor and Arms of legionary soldiers, 24.
- Army, 23-38.
- Artillery, 35, 36.
- Asking*, verbs of, with double acc., **125**, *a*: I 16, 1; 18, 4; with substantive purpose clause with *ut* omitted, 228, *a*: I, 20, 13.
- assuēfactus* and *assuētus*, with abl., 143, *a*.
- Attempted action, 191, *a*.
- Attraction, **274**: I, 19, 2; 48, 5; II, 11, 15; 27, 2; III, 4, 1; 22, 5.
- Attributive, adjectives, **156**; agreement of, **157**, *a*, 1; genitive, **98-102**.
- B
- balteus*, 25.
- Base, 14, *a*.
- ballista*, 35; Plate II, 5.
- Batavi, island of, IV, 10, 2.
- Battle, 31, 32; line of, 32.
- bonus*, comparison of, 42.
- bōs*, declension of, 27.
- C
- Caesar: early years, and choice of party, 11; overthrow of his party, 11; weakness of opposite party, 12; revival of his party, 12; development of his powers, 12; his first military command, 13; his consulship, 13; his command in Gaul, 14; outbreak of civil war, 14; weakness of the constitutional government, 14; master of Rome, 15; as statesman, 15; assassination, 16; chronological table of his life, 17.
- Calendar, Roman, **297-300**.
- Calends, 298.
- Camp: fortifications of, 29; gates, 30; location and form, 28; plan, 29; *val-lum* and *fossa*, 30.
- Capture of towns: blockade, 33; sudden assault, 33; formal siege, 33.
- Cardinals, 32; **47-49**.
- Cases, function of, **92**, **93**. See also Abl., Acc., Dat., Gen., and Loc.
- cassis*, 24.
- Catapult, 36.
- causā*, position, **99**, *a*; with gen. to express cause, 138, *a*; with gerund and gerundive, to express purpose, 291.
- Causal clauses, **239**; **243-245**; *cum*, **239**: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; II, 3, 3; 11, 2; 22, 4; *quod*, **244**: I, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12; II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; relative, **245**: II, 15, 13; 31, 4; IV, 23, 14.
- Cavalry, 28; German, IV, 2, 12.
- cavē*, 219.
- centuriō*, 26; Plate, II, 3.
- Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of Gaul, 21.
- Civil War, 14, 15.
- Characteristic, clause of, **230**: I, 6, 1; 6, 4; 14, 6; 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12; II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6; IV, 34, 9; 38, 3.

Clauses: coördinate, 222; coördinate relative in ind. disc., 269, *a*: II, 17, 11; subordinate, in ind. disc., 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10, 14: II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13; see also, Adversative, Causal, Characterizing, Comparison, Conditions, Determining, Generalizing, Indirect questions, Infinitive, Proviso, Purpose, Parenthetical, Result, Substantive, and Temporal.

coepī, 86.

cognōvī, use of tenses, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*.

Commands: in 1st person pl., 217; in 2nd person, 218; in 3rd person, 220; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10. For negative commands see Prohibitions.

Comparatives, declension, 34; occasional meaning, 161.

Comparison, of adj., 39-45; of adverbs, 46; clauses of, 261: I, 32, 11.

Complementary infinitive, 275.

Condemning, verbs of, 108.

Conditions, 249-259:

connectives, 250.

undetermined present or past, 253: I, 31, 44; 34, 6; 40, 24: III, 22, 5.

present or past contrary to fact, 254: I, 34, 5.

more vivid future, 256: I, 31, 7; 35, 12; 40, 9.

less vivid future, 257: I, 44, 25.

mixed, 258.

omitted or implied, 259.

in indirect discourse, 272: I, 34, 5.

cōnfidō, with abl., 143, *a*: I, 53, 4: III, 9, 12.

Conjugation of verbs: four regular, 67-70; four regular, how distinguished, 63; **capīō**, 71; **sum**, 66; irregular, 77-85; deponents, 73; semi-deponents, 74; defective, 86; periphrastic, 75, 76; impersonal, 87.

cōnsuēvī, use of tenses, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*.

Consonants, sounds of, 6; doubled, 6, *a*; division of, into syllables, 8.

cōnsulō, constr., 114, *b*.

Contracted verb forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12: II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6.

Convicting, verbs of, constr., 108.

Coördinate relative clause, 173, *a*: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; in indirect discourse, 269, *a*: II, 7, 11.

Council of war, 26: III, 3, 5.

cum, uses as conj., 238-242; causal or adversative, 239: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4; temporal, rules, 240; indic. temporal, 241: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7: VI, 12, 1; subjunctive temporal, 242: I, 4, 8; 7, 1; 12, 13; 25, 7: II, 1, 1; 2, 4; 6, 8.

cum primum, 237.

D

Dates, method of reckoning, 299; method of expressing, 300: I, 2, 2.

Dative:

with adjectives, 106, *b*; 122: I, 1, 9; 3, 14; 9, 6: II, 2, 5; 3, 2; 9, 6.

of agent, 118: I, 11, 13; 31, 47; 35, 6: II, 17, 21; 20, 1.

double, see Purpose.

with **fidem habēre**, 115, *a*: I, 19, 15; 41, 11.

indirect object with compound verbs, 116: I, 2, 5; 5, 13; 10, 7; 42, 16: II, 6, 5; 9, 10; 14, 6.

indirect object with intr. verbs, 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9; 9, 8: II, 1, 11; 10, 18; 16, 5.

indirect object with tr. verbs, 114: I, 3, 15; 4, 1; 10, 1: II, 2, 5; 4, 8; 10, 19.

with passive verbs, 114, *c*; 115, *d*; 116, II, *c*: I, 4, 1; 22, 8.

of possessor, 117: I, 7, 9; 10, 1; 11, 12; 34, 5: II, 6, 9; 15, 9; 16, 9.

of purpose, 119: I, 18, 27; 25, 5; 33, 2: II, 7, 3; 9, 13; 19, 6.

of reference, 120: I, 3, 6; 5, 8; 20, 20; 31, 4: II, 11, 17; 26, 14; 31, 9.

Declensions, of nouns, how distinguished, 14; nouns, 15-30; adjectives, 31-38; pronouns, 51-62; cardinals, 48, 49.

Defective verbs, 86.

Deliberative questions, 210.

Demonstratives, declension, 54-58; uses, 168-171.

Deponent verbs, 73; with abl., see abl.

Desire, subjunctive of, 184, *a*; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

determining clause, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11.

eus, declension of, 16.

exter, comparison, 42.

ēs, gender, 30, *a*: I, 4, 3.

gnus with abl., 149, *a*.

iphthongs, sounds of, 5.

irect discourse, 265.

ssimilis, comparison of, 41; with gen., 106, *b*; with dat., 122.

istributives, 47.

5, 85.

omus, declension and gender, 29, *a*; 29, *d*.

ōnec, with ind., 234, *b*; 235, *a*; with subj., 235, *b*.

ōnō, constr., 114, *a*.

ubting, expressions of, with subj., 229, *d*.

brids, VI, 13, 7.

ubitō, with subj., 229, *d*: II, 2, 8.

um: ind. temporal clauses, 234; 235, *a*: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1; subj. temporal clauses, 235, *b*: IV, 13, 4; 23, 10; proviso clauses, 260.

ummodo, with subj., 260.

uo, 49.

E

Emotion, verbs of, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.

Enclitics, effect on accent, 12; **cum**, with pers. pron., 51, *c*; **cum**, with reflex. pron., 52, *a*: I, 5, 5; **cum**, with rel. pron., 60, *b*: I, 1, 10; **cum**, with interrog. pron., 61, *b*; **nam**, with interrog. pron., 61, *a*.

nim, 243.

ō, conj. of, 84.

ō . . . quō, 148, *a*: I, 14, 3.

tenim, 243.

tsī, with ind., 246.

Exhortation 217: VII, 77, 19.

F

Fearing, expressions of, 228, *b*: I, 19, 11; 27, 9; 39, 24: II, 1, 7; 26, 5.

erō, 81.

idō, with abl., 143, *a*.

Filling, verbs and adj. of, with abl., 143, *a*.

lō, 83.

Fleet, 36, 37.

fore ut, for future inf., 205, *b*: I, 42, 8.

Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.

frētus, with abl., 143, *a*: III, 21, 1.

fruur, with abl., 145; use of gerundive, 289, I, *a*.

fungor, with abl., 145; use of gerundive, 289, I, *a*.

Future tense, 192; use, 199.

Future perfect tense, 195; equivalent to future, 195, *a*; use, 199.

G

galea, 24.

Gallic campaigns, importance, 9; effect, 9, 10.

Gauls, first appearance in history, 20; decline of their power, 20; invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni, 21; their civilization, 22.

Gaul factions, 22; geographical divisions in Caesar's time, 21.

Gender, general rules, 13; exceptions, 15, *a*; 16, *a*; 29, *a*; 30, *a*; of 1st declension, 15, *a*; of 2nd declension, 16, *a*; of 3rd declension, 28; of 4th declension, 29, *a*; of 5th declension, 30, *a*.

Generalizing, relative, 60, *a*; **cum** clauses, 241, *b*; 242, *b*: I, 25, 7: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7; relative clauses, 250.

Genitive:

with adj. 106: I, 14, 4; 18, 8; 21, 9: III, 21, 9.

appositional, 97, *a*.

with **causā** and **grātiā**, 99, *a*.

descriptive, 100; 104: I, 5, 7; 8, 4; 25, 11: II, 5, 20; 10, 2; 15, 12.

of material, 102: I, 24, 4.

objective, 98: I, 2, 2; 4, 3; 14, 8; 30, 3: II, 4, 7; 7, 4; 21, 4.

partitive, 101: I, 1, 5; 3, 3; 7, 5: II, 2, 4; 4, 19; 10, 5.

possessive, 99; 103: I, 1, 13; 2, 7; 10, 15: II, 1, 9; 2, 11; 7, 8: IV, 5, 4.

subjective, 98: I, 30, 3: II, 1, 3; 4, 5: 11, 15.

of value, 105: I, 20, 14.

with verbs, 107-111: I, 3, 22; 13, 11; 14, 7: II, 5, 5: IV, 5, 9.

Gerund, 287; 289-294: I, 2, 3; 3, 2; 7, 18: II, 7, 4; 9, 3; 10, 10.

Gerundive, 285, II; 288-294: I, 3, 6; 5, 7; 7, 16; 44, 9; II, 7, 5; 9, 13; 10, 8; III, 4, 12; 6, 4; IV, 13, 14.

gladius, 24.

grātiā, position, 99, *a*.

H

hic, declension, 54; uses, 168; 170, *a*.

hindering, verbs of, 228, *c*.

Historical, tenses, 203; present, 190, *a*:

I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1; II, 5, 5; 6, 12; 12, 14; infinitive, 281: I, 16, 2; II, 30, 6;

III, 4, 3.

Hollow square (orbis), 32.

hoping, verbs of, 280, *c*.

Hostages (obsidēs), I, 9, 10.

I

i, consonant and vowel, 5-7.

iactō, in composition, 7.

iam diū, etc., with pres., 190, *b*; with impf., 191, *b*: I, 31, 10; III, 5, 1.

idem, 58.

Ides, 298.

idōneus, constr., 122, *a*.

ille, declension, 56; use, 170, *a*.

Imperative mood, 185; in commands, 218; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10; 26, 17.

Imperfect tense, of repeated action, 191, *a*: I, 48, 14; III, 3, 10; with **iam diū** etc., 191, *b*: I, 31, 10; III, 5, 1.

imperō, constr., 115, *b*.

Impersonal verbs, 87; with substantive clauses of result, 229, *b*: I, 2, 12; II, 11, 5; 17, 11; with infinitives, 278; gen. with, 109: IV, 5, 9.

Implied indirect discourse, 273: I, 16, 1; 16, 14; 22, 9; 23, 8; II, 2, 6.

Indefinite pronouns, declension, 62; uses of, 174-178: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, 2; II, 14, 13; 32, 5.

Indicative mode, 183; in statements, 206; in questions, 209; in relative clauses, 231; 232; in causal clauses, 244; in adversative clauses, 246; in temporal clauses, 234; 235, *a*; 236, *a*; 237; 241; in conditions, 253; 254, *a*; 256.

indignus, constr. with, 149, *a*.

Indirect discourse:

discussion of, 265: I, 13, 7.

conditional sentences in, 272: I, 34, 5.

coördinate relative clauses in, 269, *a*: II, 17, 11.

declarative sentences in, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5; 7, 1; II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

imperative sentences in, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 11; 26, 17.

interrogative sentences in, 268: I, 8, 13; 14, 8; 44, 24.

subordinate clauses in, 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10, 4; II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13.

Indirect questions, 262-264: I, 8, 13; 12, 3; 15, 4.

Infantry, 27.

Infinitive, 186; 275-281; tenses of, 205:

I, 31, 11; 31, 36; 35, 18; complementary, 275; historical, 281: I, 16, 2; II, 30, 6; III, 4, 3; as subject, 276; clause, 186; 277-280; in indirect discourse, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5; 7, 1; II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

Intensive pronoun (ipse), declension, 59; use, 172.

interest, with genitive, 110: II, 5, 5.

Interrogative pronoun, declension, 61; uses 212; 264, *a*.

Interrogative particles, 213; 264, *b*.

ipse, declension, 59; use, 172.

Irregular verbs, conjugation, 66; 77-85.

is, declension, 57; use, 171.

iste, declension, 55; use, 169.

Iuppiter, declension, 27

J

Judicial action, verbs of, 108.

L

laccessō, constr., 143, *a*.

lēgātus, 25; Plate II, 2.

Legion, number of men in, 23; baggage of, 27; officers of, 25, 26; organization of, 23; standards and signals of, 26.

Legionary soldiers, clothing and arms, 24; baggage, 25. See also Plate I, 3.

Locative, of 1st declension, 15, *b*; of second declension, 16, *b*, used to express place, 151, *a*: I, 18, 13; 20, 4; 28, 6.

lōrica, 24.

M

magis, comparison with, 45.

magnus, comparison, 42.

mālō, 82.

malus, comparison, 42.

March line of, 31; length of, 31.
mare, declension, 25, *a*.
maximē, comparison with, 45.
meminī, conjugation, 86; with gen., 107.
metuō, constr., 114, *b*.
mille, *milia*, 48.
minus, constr., 139, *b*: II, 7, 8.
misereor, constr., 109.
miseret, constr., 109.
modo, with subj., 260.
Modes, 182-185. See also Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.
multus, comparison, 42.
mūsculus, 34, 35.
Musical instruments, 27.

N

nam, 243; see also Enclitics.
-ne, 213, *a*; 264, *b*.
nē, 188, *b*; conj.: with purpose clause, 225, *b*: I, 4, 7; II 5, 7; with substantive purpose clause, 228: I, 19, 11; 27, 9: II, 1, 7; 26, 5; in commands and prohibitions, 216-220.
nē . . . quidem, 188, *b*.
necne, 264, *c*.
Negatives, 188.
neque, 188, *a*.
nesciō quis, 178.
nēve, with subjunctive of desire, 188, *b*.
nisi, 250.
nitor, constr., 143, *a*: I, 13, 16.
nōli, or **nōlite**, to express prohibition, 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23.
nōlō, 82.
Nominative, as subject, 96; in predicate, 95, *a*: I, 1, 3; 2, 1.
nōn, 188, *a*.
Nones, 298.
nōnne, 213, *b*.
Nouns, 1st declension, 15; 2nd declension, 16; 3rd declension, 17-27; 4th declension, 29; 5th declension, 30; gender of, 13; 15, *a*; 16, *a*; 29, *a*; 30, *a*; predicate, 95, *a*: I, 1, 3; appositive, 95, *b*: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2: II, 2, 3; 3, 11; 9, 11.
nōvī, translation of tenses 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*.
num, 213, *c*; 264, *b*.
Numerals, 47-50.

O

Object, direct, see accusative; indirect, see dative.
oblīvīscor, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.
ōdī, 86.
onager, 36; Plate III, 4.
Optative subjunctive, 184, *a*. See also wishes.
opus est, with abl., 146: I, 42, 19: II, 22, 6.
Ordinal numerals, 47.
ōs, declension, 27.

P

paenitet, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.
Parenthetical relative clauses, 232.
Participles, used attributively, 157; used predicatively, 157; used substantively, 158; tenses of, 205; used for clause 283: I, 4, 3; future active, 285, I; future passive, 285, II: I, 13, 2; 19, 3: III, 11, 10: IV, 22, 18: V, 1, 4; 23, 9; see also Periphrastic; perfect passive 286: I, 15, 3; 18, 9; 44, 38: II, 4, 9; present, 284; see also Ablative absolute.
parvus, comparison, 42.
Passive voice, 181; intransitive verbs in, 115, *d*; dative retained with, 114, *c*: 115, *d*; 116, II, *c*: I, 4, 1; 22, 8; constr. of passive verbs of saying, 279, *a*.
Perfect tense, with force of pres., 193, I, *a*; historical, 193, II.
Periphrastic conj., 75, 76; active, 285, I; passive, 285, II, *a*: I, 11, 13; 14, 7; 23, 4: II, 17, 21; 20, 1; 31, 8; with dat. of agent, 118; with abl. of agent, 118, *a*.
Personal pronouns, declension, 51; uses, 162; as partitive or objective genitives, 51, *b*; with **similis** and **dis-similis**, 106, *b*.
persuādeō, constr., 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9: II, 10, 18; 16, 5.
Phalanx, I, 24, 11.
pīlum, 24.
pīget, with gen., 109.
Place, from which, 134, *a*: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10; in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17; to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4, 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.
plēnus, with gen., 106, *a*.

- Pluperfect tense**, 194; with force of imperfect, 194, *a*: III, 1, 6; in narration, 197, 198.
- plūs**, declension, 34, *a*; constr., 139, *b*.
Pompey, 14.
- Possessive pronouns**, declension, 53; used for possessive gen., 99; position with *causā* or *grātiā*, 99, *a*; with *interest*, 110; omission of, 167.
- possum**, 80.
- postquam**, with ind., 237: I, 24, 1; 27, 5: II, 5, 12; as two words, 236, *c*.
- Potential subjunctive**, 184, *b*; 208; 209.
- potior**, with abl., 145: I, 2, 5; with gen., 111: I, 3, 22; use of gerundive, 289, I *a*: III, 6, 4.
- praefectus fabrum**, 25.
- praesertim**, 245.
- Predicate, accusative**, 126: I, 16, 12; 38, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3; adjectives, 156; 157, *a*, 2; 275, *a*; 276, *a*: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1; noun, 95, *a*; 126; 275, *a*; 276, *a*: I, 1, 3.
- Prepositions, with abl.**, 153, *a*; with acc., 155; with acc. or abl., 154; verbs compounded with, 116, I; 124, *c*; 127.
- Present tense** 190; historical present, 190, *a*: I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1: II, 5, 5; 6, 12; 12, 14; with *iam diū* and *iam pridem*, 190, *b*; with *dum*, 234, *a*: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1.
- Principal parts of verbs**, 65.
- Principal tenses**, 203.
- priusquam**, with ind., 236, *a*; with subj. 236, *b*: II, 12, 1: III, 10, 9; 18, 15: IV, 14, 2: VII, 71, 1; as two words, 236, *c*: III, 26, 8.
- Prohibitions negative in**, 216; expressed by subj., 217; 220; expressed by *nōli* or *nōlite* with inf., 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 26, 17.
- Pronouns**, 51-62; 162-178; in indirect discourse, 271; see also Demonstrative, Generalizing Indefinite, Intensive, Interrogative, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive, and Relative.
- Pronunciation**, 1-12; of proper names, I, 1, 1.
- propior**, comparison of, 43, with acc., 122, *b*.
- propius**, with acc., 122, *b*: I, 46, 2: IV, 9, 3.
- prōsum**, 79.
- Proviso clause** 260.
- prōvincia**, 9.
- proximus**, with acc., 122, *b*: I, 1, 9; 54, 3: III, 7, 7.
- proximē**, with acc., 122, *b*.
- puđet**, with gen., 109.
- Purpose clauses**, 225: I, 3, 4; 4, 7; 6, 14: II, 2, 3; 5, 7; 9, 4; 17, 15: V, 3, 18; substantive, 228: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 19, 11; 28, 9; 31, 24; 39, 24: II, 2, 6-10, 19.

Q

- Quaestor**, 25.
- quam**, with comparatives, 139, *a*; with superlatives 161, *a*.
- quam diū**, with ind., 234, *b*.
- quam si**, with subj., 261.
- quamquam**, with ind., 246.
- quamvis**, with subj., 247.
- quandō**, in causal clause, 244.
- Quantity, of syllables**, 9; of vowels, 1-3.
- quasi**, with subj., 261.
- Questions, introductory words**, 212, 213; modes in, 209; deliberative, 210: I, 40, 6: III, 14, 9; double, 214; indirect, 262-264: I, 12, 3; 15, 4; 20, 17; 53, 20: II, 4, 2; 8, 3; 11, 6; double indirect, 264, *c*: I, 40, 43; 50, 12: IV, 14, 5; rhetorical, 211.
- quī**, relative, 60; indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61. See also Relative.
- quia**, in causal clause, 244.
- quicumque**, 60, *a*.
- quidam**, 62, *b*.
- quilibet**, 62.
- quīn**, in substantive clauses of purpose, 228, *c*: I, 33, 15; 47, 6: II, 3, 14: IV, 7, 5; in substantive clauses of result, 229, *d*: I, 31, 15.
- quis**, indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61; with *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, 174: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, 2: II, 14, 13; 32, 5.
- quispiam**, 62; 176.
- quisquam**, 62; with negatives, 177: III, 22, 7: IV, 1, 20.
- quisque**, 62.
- quisquis**, 60, *a*.

quīvis, 62.

quō, in purpose clauses, 225, *a*, 2: I, 8, 6: II, 17, 15: V, 3, 18.

quoad, with ind., 234, *b*; 235, *a*; with subj., 235, *b*.

quod, in causal clauses, 244: I, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12; 16, 14: II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; 30, 7; in substantive clauses, 248; 248, *a*: I, 14, 8; 19, 2; 25, 6; 36, 14; 40, 36: II, 10, 18; 17, 12; 20, 10.

quōminus, with substantive clause of desire, 228, *c*: I 31, 24: IV, 22, 16.

quoniam, in causal clause, 244.

R

Reciprocal expression, 166.

rēfert, constr., 110.

Reflexive pronouns, declension, 52; use, 163; to express reciprocal idea, 166; direct reflexive, 164: I, 30, 6; 33, 14; 40, 11; indirect reflexive, 165: I, 30, 3; 33, 11; 40, 5.

Relative clauses, adversative, 247: V, 4, 13; causal 245: II, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14; characteristic, 230: I, 6, 4; 14, 6; 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 38, 3; conditions, 250; coördinate, 173, *a*: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; coördinate in indirect discourse, 269, *a*: II, 7, 11; determining, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11; parenthetical, 232; of purpose 225, *a*, 1: I 6, 14: II, 2, 3; result, see Characterizing.

Relative pronouns, declension, 60; agreement of, 173; see also Relative clauses.

reminīscor, constr. 107: I, 13, 11.

Repeated action, 191, *a*.

repraesentātiō, 270, *a*: I, 14, 14; 31, 26; 40, 20: II, 14, 11.

Result clauses 226: I 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; sequence of tenses in, 204, *a*: II, 21, 12; V, 15, 3; substantive, 229: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4; 31, 51; 33, 15: II, 3, 14; 4, 8; 17, 11.

Rhetorical question, 211.

S

scorpiō, 36.

scūtum, 24.

Semi-deponent verbs, 74.

senex, declension, 27.

Sentences, defined, 88; simple, 89; complex 91; compound, 90.

Separation, see Dative and Ablative.

Sequence of tenses, 202, 203: I, 12, 2; 13, 7; 19, 1: II, 12, 14; 17, 2; exceptions to, 204: II, 21, 12: V, 15, 3.

sī, in conditions, 250, see also Conditions; meaning to *see whether*, 264, *b*.

signum, 27.

similis, with gen. 106, *b*; with dat., 122; comparison of, 41.

simul ac, with ind., 237.

sīn, with conditions, 250.

Spain, Caesar's idea of location, V, 13, 5.

Subjunctive:

by attraction, 274: I, 19, 2; 48, 5: II, 11, 15; 27, 2: III, 4, 1; 22, 5.

of desire, 184, *a*; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

of contingent futurity, 184, *b*; in conclusion of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257; 259; in questions, 209; in characterizing clauses, 230, *a*, *b*.

of fact, 184, *c*; in result clauses, 226; in substantive clauses, 229; in characterizing clauses, 230, *a*, *b*.

See also **ac**, **sī**, **antequam**, **cum**, **dōnec**, **dum**, **dummodo**, **modo**, **nē**, **nēve**, **priusquam**, **quam sī**, **quamvis**, **quasi**, **quān**, **quō**, **quoad**, **quōminus**, **tamquam**, **ut**, and **ut sī**.

Subordinate clauses, see Clauses.

Substantive clauses, see Indirect questions, Infinitive clauses, Purpose, **quod**, and Result.

Substantives, agreement of, 95.

Sulla, 11, 12.

sum, conjugation, 66; compounds of, 77-80.

Supine, acc., 295: I, 11, 4; 18, 17; 30, 2; abl., 296: IV, 30, 6.

suus and **suī**, declension, 52; reflexives, 163-168.

Syllables, 8; quantity of, 9.

T

taedet, with gen., 109.

tametsi, with ind., 246.

tamquam, with subj., 261.

Temporal clauses, 233-242; see **cum**, **dum**, **postquam**, **priusquam**, **quoad**, **ubi**, **ut**.

Tenses, stems of, 64; of ind., 190-199; of subj., 200, 201; of infinitive and participle, 205; sequence of, 202-204; see also Sequence of tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future perfect.

testūdō, 33; Plate III, 3.

testūdō arietaria, 35; Plate III, 2.

Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of, 21.

Time, at which, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 12, 13; II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3; duration of, 130; 152, *a*: I, 3, 11; 26, 13; II, 29, 14; see also Temporal clauses.

trēs, declension, 49.

Tower, 33; Plate III, 1.

tribūnus, 26.

Triumvirate, 13; IV, 1, 1.

tū, 51.

U

ubi, with ind., 237: I, 16, 9; II, 6, 6; 10, 9.

ullus, 177.

ūnus, declension, 32.

ut, in purpose clause, 225, *a*, 1: I, 3, 4; II, 9, 4; in result clause, 226: I, 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2; II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; in substantive clauses of purpose, 228, *a*, *b*: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 39, 24; in substantive clauses of result, 229, *b*: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4; II, 4, 8; 17, 11; in adversative clause, 247: III, 9, 16; omitted, 228, *a*: I, 20, 13; III, 11, 2.

ut nōn, in result clauses, 226; in substantive result clauses, 229.

ut sī, with subjunctive, 261.

utinam, with subjunctive of desire, 221.

ūtor, with abl., 145: I, 5, 9; 16, 5; II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10; gerundive of, 289, I, *a*.

utrum . . . an, 214.

V

vāgīna, 24.

velut, with subj., 261.

velut sī, with subj., 261: I, 32, 11.

Verbs, 1st conj., 67; 2nd conj., 68; 3rd conj., 69; 3rd conj., in -16, 71; 4th conj., 70; irregular, 66; 77-85; deponent, 73; semi-deponent, 74; defective, 86; impersonal, 87; act. periphrastic, 75; pass. periphrastic, 76; principal parts, 65; three stems of, 64; agreement of, 179, 180; voices of, 181; modes, 182-185; tenses, 189-205; contracted forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12; II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6; singular with plural subject, 180, *b*: I, 1, 5; intransitive in passive voice, 115, *d*: I, 33, 18; 40, 7; III, 14, 2.

Verbal adjective, 187.

Verbal nouns, 187.

vēscor with abl., 145; gerundive of, 289, I, *a*.

vīnea, 35.

vīs, declension, 27.

Vocative, 132.

Voices, 181; see Active and Passive.

Volitive subjunctive, 184, *a*.

volō, 82.

Vowels, sounds of, 4; quantity of, 1-3.

W

Wishes, subjunctive in, 221; introduced by **utinam**, 221.

Wall, Gallic, 32, 33.

